Anglo-Persian Translation Series—No 3

For I A Students

TRANSLATION

FROM

ENGLISH INTO PERSIAN

BY

SYED HUSAIN ALI B A.

Author of Elementary and [illegible] Translations &c

Second Edition

(Thoroughly re[illegible]d)

CALCUTTA

S C AUDDY & CO BOOKSELLERS AND PUBLISHERS

58 & 12 WELLINGTON STREET

1929

[Price Rs 1-12 only

Printed and published by F C Pal for Messrs S C Auddy & Co ,
At the Wellington Printing Works
10, Haladhar Burdhan Lane and 6 & 7, Bentinck Street, Calcutta

PREFACE

This publication is primarily intended for students who offer Persian as one of the subjects for examination at the Intermediate Examination in Arts of the Calcutta University It is divided into five Sections. Section I contains sixteen passages in English of varied length and difficulty Every passage is re-written in Persian syntactical order with Persian equivalents given within parantheses and the Notes, besides dealing with rules on Grammar and Composition illustrate the idiomatic uses of a large number of Persian words, and contain lists of Prepositional Verbs, English Transitive Verbs requiring Persian equivalents with Prepositions, and Compound Verbs. Section II contains twenty more passages in English, illustrating the rules learnt in Section I with hints for translation, the Notes dealing with the idiomatic uses of a further selection of words. Section III contains over one thousand English idioms and proverbs, alphabetically arranged, with their exact Persian equivalents Section IV gives a collection of specimen letters on various subjects to familiarize the students with the approved method of letter writing now in vogue among the educated Persians. Section V contains passages set for translation into Persian at the Intermediate Examination in Arts of the Calcutta University up to 1915, with hints for translation An Index to the subject matter of the Notes has been added for easy reference.

No pains have been spared to make the book up-to-date and really useful and it is hoped that it will meet the needs of those for whom it is intended.

In preparing the Series of Persian Translations, which this volume is intended to complete, the author is mainly indebted to the following works —

(1) Dr Rosen's Modern Persian Grammar
(2) Clair-Tisdall's Modern Persian Conversational Grammar
(3) Platts and Ranking's A Grammar of Persian
(4) Ranking's A Primer of Persian
(5) Wollaston's English-Persian Dictionaries.
(6) Haji Shaikh Ahmad-i-Kirmani's Persian Translation of Haji Baba of Ispahan
(7) Sayyahat-namah-i-Ibrahim Beg
(8) Haggard and Le Strange's The Vazir of Lankaran
(9) Rogers' Persian Plays
(10) Mizan-ut-Talim Vol. II
(11) Insha-i-Jadid
(12) Manshaat-i Amir i Nizam
(13) Mirza Hairat's Persian Translation of Malcolm's History of Persia

Any suggestion towards the improvement of the book will be thankfully accepted and embodied in future editions

KIDDERPORE,
The 15th February, 1916

S H A

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

This opportunity has been utilized in thoroughly revising the book and in enlarging Section V by adding questions from the various Indian Universities up to 1928

KIDDERPORE,
The 5th February, 1929

S H A

CONTENTS

SECTION I

SECTION II

INSTRUCTIONS TO THE STUDENTS.

1 Try to understand and learn the rules given at the end of each passage.

2 First translate each passage with the help of the hints given.

3 Then translate it without the help of the hints, until the phrases and idioms in it are thoroughly impressed upon the mind.

4 Lastly reproduce in Persian the substance of each passage or story without reference to the original in English.

5 Before the vocabulary of an exercise is thoroughly mastered, never go on to the next.

6. Form sentences of your own, using the Prepositional and Compound Verbs given in the Notes.

7 Construct sentences, illustrating the uses of the phrases and idioms that occur in the Notes.

ENGLISH INTO PERSIAN

SECTION I

1 The Goodness of God

Look at the flowers that cover the field. They spring up everywhere and cover the face of the earth. Who causes them to grow everywhere, and waters them with soft rain and cherishes them with dews? Who gives them colour and smell, and spreads out their thin transparent leaves? How does the rose draw its crimson from the dark brown earth or lily its shining white? How can a small seed contain a plant? How does every plant know its season when to put forth? Every plant produces its like: a peach stone will not produce a mango tree; every one springs from its proper seed. These are some of the wonders of the great Creator. They all speak of Him who has made them; they all tell us He is very good. They who know the most will praise God the best; but who can number half His works?

The flowers (گلها را) look at (نگاه کنید) that (که) over the field (روي صحرا) has spread (فرش كرده است). Everywhere (هرجا) that it may be (باشد) they spring up (برمي آيند) thou wouldst say (تو گوئي) the face of the earth (بساط زمين را) they would cover (بپوشد). Them (آنها را) everywhere (همه جا) who (كه) causes to grow (مي روياند) and (و) with soft rains (از ترشّح باران) water (آب) who gives (مي دهد) and with dew drops (قطره هاي شبنم) who cherishes (مي پرورد) and this (اين) all (همه) colour (رنگ) and smell (بوي) various (گوناگون) who gives (مي بخشد) and

the leaves (برگهاي) thin transparent of them (نازکِ صاف شان را) who spreads out (مي گسترد) ? How (چگونه) the rose (گلِ سرخ) its own crimson colour (رنگِ قرمزيِ خودش را) from (از) the earth (خاک) of dark colour (تيره رنگ) draws (برمي آرد) and the lily (سوسن) its shining white colour (رنگِ سفيد درخشانش) ? How a plant (درختي) in (در) a small seed (تخمکي خرد) is contained (=remains concealed نهان مي ماند), and how every-one of the trees (همهٔ درختها) of its own particular season (از موسم مخصوصِ خود) knowledge (اطّلاع) has (مي دارد) that this (همين) the time of putting forth (وقتِ غنچه زدن) is (است) ? Every plant (هر درختي) its like (مثلِ خودشرا) produces (برمي آرد) and enough (و بس) From (از) a peach-stone (هستهٔ شفتالو) thou canst not produce a mango tree (نمي تواني درختِ انبه پيدا کني) because (زيراکه) every sort of trees (هرنوعي از درختها) except (بجز) from its proper seed (از تخم مخصوصِ خود) springs not (برنمي آيد) This is (اينست) some (برخي) of the wonders of the great Creator (از صنائع کردگارِ جليل) such that (که) all (همه) with the tongue of condition (زبانِ حال) at his being the Creator (به خالق بودنِ او) acknowledger (مقرّ) is, and to His generosity and goodness (به جود و کرمش) confessing (معترف) They who (آنانکه) better knowing are (از معرفتش خبردارترانند) to the praise of God (به حمد و ثناي باري تعالى) the better (بهتر) they attend (مي پردازند) but (وليکن) who can (که مي تواند) except (بجز) a portion thereof (پارهٔ ازين) he may number (شمار کند)

1 The Present Tense (حال) is used to denote— (i) an action *now going on* or a state *now existing* as احمد مي رود Ahmad is going باران مي بارد it is raining (ii) an action recurring *habitually in the present* as هرروز براسپ سوار مي شوم I ride every day سيب سه دانه يک روپيه مي دهم I sell apples three at a rupee (iii) an action in the *immediate* or *definite future* as امروز براسپ سوار مي شوم I shall ride to-day حالا ديگر رخصت مي شوم now I shall take my leave انشا الله در وقت دسترس مي دهم God pleasing I shall repay when I shall be able to do so فردا بشهر مي روم I *am going* to town to-morrow (iv) an universal *truth* as خدا که ميدهد نمي پرسد تو کيستي God who gives does not ask— who art thou آنچه در ديگ است بچمچه مي آيد whatever is in the pot must come out in the spoon (v) a past action in dramatic or direct form of narration after verbs of *seeing thinking* &c. as ديدم اصغر مي آيد I saw Asghar *is* coming يقين دانستم زود مي ميرم I was sure to die soon.

2 Prepositions are often prefixed to Verbs so as to form what are called Prepositional Verbs. Thus —(i) باز آمدن to come back باز آوردن to bring back باز خريدن to redeem ; باز دادن to give back باز داشتن to restrain باز کردن to open باز گرديدن to turn back باز گشتن to return باز ماندن to leg behind باز يافتن to resume باز خواستن to demand back (ii) برآمدن to spring up cope with succeed برآميختن to mix up برآوردن to heave (a sigh) برآويختن to suspend برتافتن to twist برجستن to leap برچيدن to pluck , برخاستن to rise or

arise, برخوردن to meet with, to be benefited by, بردار کشیدن to hang, بر داشتن to raise, carry off, بر شکستن to become bankrupt, to fail (in a business), برگزیدن to choose, select, بر گشتن to return, retreat, بر کندن to uproot, بر هم زدن to confound (iii) پي بردن to enter, penetrate, پي گشتن to wander about, look for any one (iv) پيش آمدن to come before, to occur, پيش افتادن to precede پيش گرفتن to assume, take upon oneself (*the government* &c) (v) در آمدن to enter, arrive, در انداختن to hurl, در آوردن to produce, در آويختن to grapple with, در افتادن to fall in with, در بردن to carry off, در ربودن to snatch away, در کشيدن to draw out, در گذشتن to leave off, در گذاشتن to pass by or over, در گرفتن to take effect, در ماندن to be helpless, در نوردن to travel, دريافتن to perceive

3 The Distributive Pronominal Adjective هر may be affixed to Substantives to form compound Adverbs or Adverbial phrases, as هر جا everywhere, هرگاه every time or whenever, بهرحال in every case, or inspite of, هر آئنه assuredly, هردم or هروقت constantly, or always, هرروز or هرروزه daily, هرطرف on every side, هر نوعيکه in whatever way or to Numerals, as هريک or هريکي every one, هر دو both, هر سه all three or to Pronouns or Adjectives, as هرکه whoever, هرآنچه what-so-ever, هرآنکه who-so-ever, هر چند how-ever-much, هرکدام whichever, هر چه whatever

4 The Particle که is used—(1) as a Relative Pronoun, as برادر شما که بيمار بود حالا چه طور است how now is your brother *who* has been ill? مرديکه آنجا آمد دولتمند بود the man *who* came

hither was rich (ii) as an Interrogative Pronoun as که می آید who is coming? ادب از که آموختی *of whom* did you learn good manners? کرا جاودان بودن امید هست *who* can hope to live for ever? (iii) as a Disjunctive Conjunction, as یوسف آمد که ایوب either Yusuf *or* Ayyub came (iv) to denote a resemblance as در جهان دغاباز که او نیست there is no cheat in the world *like* him (v) in the sense of the Conjunction *that* as وعده دادند که در دیگر هر یک سرگذشت خود را بیان کند they promised, that at the next meeting each would narrate his own story (vi) to denote the *cause* or *reason* as بیرون نروید که هوا گرم است don t go out, *for* the air is hot (vii) in the sense of *nay rather* as در زور نه تنها من از او کمترم که احدی یارای تاب همسری ندارد in strength not only am I inferior to him (but) *rather* not a single person has the power to equal him (viii) to introduce a *sudden occurrence* as سر حوض بود که تب بر وی غلبه کرد he had sat by the reservoir *when on a sudden* he had an attack of fever (ix) in the sense of *than* after به as کوتاه خردمند به که نادان بلند a short wise man is better *than* a tall fool and (x) in the sense of *if* as شخص معزول شده از نابکاری چه کند که توبه نکند what could the dismissed officer do if he did not repent of his misdeeds?

آن (pl. آنها) is also used as a Personal Pronoun referring to inanimate objects and corresponds to the English *it* as آنرا با زمین راست کردند they made it even with the ground چون آقایش آمد یکی از آنها پرواز کرده رفته بود when his master came, one of them had flown away

6 (a) When همه precedes a Substantive it may either take

an *izafat* or not, according as it gives stress upon *the component parts of the aggregate* or draws attention to *its totality*, as همهٔ ممالک بدست وي نهاده بود he had placed every part of the kingdom under his authority, مگر میخواهید که همهٔ شهررا غذا بدهم do you wish me to feed *every individual* in the town? کاش عاقبت همهٔ ایشان اینطور بودی would the end of *every one of them* had been so, همه راه درین حال تفکر مي کرد the *whole* way he kept pondering over this matter, همه دختران پاریس قربان یک موي تو باشد may *all* the girls in Paris be an offering for one hair of your head!

(*b*) همه following a Substantive or a Pronoun simply corroborates or emphasises its significance, as اینها همه حرف مفت است this is *all* idle talk, راه ها همه رفته بود و آب زده the roads were *all* swept and watered

(*c*) همه may also be used independently without any accompanying Substantive, as همه نعره و فریاد حادکا شروع نمودند all (of them) began to utter loud and doleful cries, همه را بردار کردند they impaled all (of them)

7 Interrogation (استفهام) in Persian may be of three kinds (*a*) *Interrogation of Negation* (انکاري), when it conveys a negative significance, as اصل از من بپرسید احمد چه خبر دارد ask the truth from me, what does Ahmad know (*i e*, he does not know anything)? کرا غم تعلیم تو باشد who will trouble himself about your freedom (*i e* none)? (*b*) *Interrogation of assertion* (اقراري), when it affirms something, as طایري که مي بینید اگر بلبل نیست پس چیست if the bird you are seeing is not a nightingale, then what is it (*i e.*, it is nothing but a nightingale)? (*c*) *Interro-*

gation of enquiry (استفهامي) when it asks for some information as ایشان کیستند who are they? کدام خانه را دیدید which house did you see? این چه چیز است what is this?

2 A Lion a Fox and a Wolf

A lion, a fox and a wolf went out hunting together and they pursued and caught three animals—an ass, a gazelle and a hare. The lion said to the wolf "Now friend wolf will you please say how our three hunters are to divide the game we have caught". The wolf replied "We need not divide, that is to say we need not cut the meat up; you take the ass, let the fox take the hare and I will have the gazelle". The lion struck the wolf a violent blow on the head and killed him. That was the wolf's payment for his advice. Then the lion turned to the fox and said "Now my dear friend, what do you suggest?" "Oh Sir," answered the fox with a low obeisance "the case is very simple. You should have the ass for your morning meal, the gazelle for your evening meal and then you can eat the hare as a light refreshment in between." "Very well," said the lion who was well-pleased to have the whole game to himself. "And who taught you such wisdom and justice?" "I learnt wisdom from yonder dead wolf" said the fox slily.

Once on a time (روزی) a lion (شیری) and a fox (روباهی) and a wolf (گرگی) together (باهم) for hunting (بشکار) went (رفتند) and after (بعد از) much pursuit (تعاقب بسیار) three animals, namely an ass, a gazelle and a hare (سه جانور یعنی الاغی و آهوی و خرگوشی را) they caught (گرفتند). The lion (شیر) to the wolf (بگرگ) said (گفت) O friend (ای یار) now (حالا) will you please say (بفرمائید) how ought (باید) we three hunters (=beasts of prey ما سه درنده) the game (شکاری) that

we have caught (گرفته ايم) may divide (تقسيم كنيم) The wolf replied (جواب داد) that we need not divide (نبايد تقسيم كنيم) that is to say (يعني) the meat (گوشتهارا) to cut up (تماح كردن) is not fitting (نشايد) You (شما) the ass (را) take (بگيريد) and let the fox take the hare (روباه خرگوش را بگيرد) and I likewise (هم) the gazelle will take (ميستانم) and enough (و بس) The lion at this (اربن) speech of (سخن) the wolf became angry (برآشفت) and on (بر) the head of the wolf (كلّة گرگ) such (چنان) a blow (ضرب) violent (شديدي) struck (زد) that instantly (الحال) it died (موت شد). That was (بود) the payment for his advice (مزدگاني نصيحتش) that (كه) to the wolf (بگرگ) reached (رسيد) Then (پس) the lion turning towards the fox (رو به روباه كرده) said O my dear friend (اي دوست عزيز من) now thy opinion (فكرت) what thing (چه چيز) is ? The fox, servant-like obeisance (كورنشاب بندگانه) having performed (بجا آورده), answered (جواب داد) that Oh Sir (اي آقا), this a case is (امريست) very simple (بيك سهل) The ass (را) for (براي) morning meal (= breakfast نهار) have (بداريد) and the gazelle (را) for evening meal (= dinner شام) so that (تا آنكه) the hare (را) make use of as a light refreshment in between (صرف عصرانهٔ مختصر بنمائيد) When (چون) the lion the whole of this games (همگي اين شكارها را) in his own possession (بتصرف خود) he found (يافت), he was well-pleased (خيلي خوشش آمد) and said very well (بسيار خوب) but (اما) such (چنين) wisdom (عقل) and justice (= discretion تميز) from whom (از كه) didst thou learn (آموختي) The sly fox (روباه

معطل) answered from that dead wolf (آلي مرده) that you let us (آنها سد)

NOTES

8. (a) When added to Substantives ي is used—(i) to denote *unity* or *indefiniteness* (corresponding to the English Indefinite Article *a* or *an*) as شخصي يعني تصدق رسيد a beggar went to a nobleman طبيبي همراه او بود there was a doctor in his suite مردي را ديدم که بر فرش نشسته بود I saw a man of fifty (seated) on the felt carpet (ii) to *define* the antecedent of the Relative Pronoun (corresponding to the English Definite Article *the*), as اشخاصي را که ديدم کور بودند the people whom I saw were blind مرغاني چند از کنار دريا که نزديک بود از کشتي آمدند from *the* sea-coasts that were near a few small birds came flying to the ship (iii) to show *relation* as کشميري of Kashmere بغدادي of Baghdad هندي of India کرماني of Kirman مصري of Egypt ايراني of Iran چيني of China اصفهاني of Ispahan (iv) to form Nouns denoting *state* or *profession* as گدائي beggary تندرستي health خوشي pleasure happiness بي ادبي impudence تازگي freshness قصابي the profession of a butcher شاعري the profession (or art) of a poet عطاري the profession of a druggist (v) to signify the Conjunctive *Personal Pronoun of the first person singular* (after the Arabic idiom) as مخدومي my master ربي my Lord مشفقي my kind friend خداوندي my lord; (vi) to denote *the agent* as شکاري hunter ميخواري drunkard خياطي tailor خوني murderer حلوائي confectioner لوطي jester buffoon مسخري

grammarian (vii) to give the *form of the Passive Participle*, as سندي established by authority, مهري sealed, لعنتي cursed (viii) to denote *excess* or *greatness*, as خلقي برو گرد آمدند a *whole* people flocked round him, مقدّس مردي است he is a *very* pious man, حود كتابي باشد اگر همه ياد كنم if I were to mention them all, they would themselves comprise a *big* book

(*b*) When added to Verbs ي is used—(i) to denote the *fitness* of an action, as اين طعام خوردني نيست this food is not *fit to be eaten* آنچه كردني بود كرديم we did whatever was *fit* (*or necessary*) *to be done*, تفصيلش شنيدني است يا ديدني is the detail thereof *to be heard* only or *seen*? (ii) to denote *an action habitually recurring in the past*, as پارسائي تمام روز روزه داشتي a devotee *used to fast* the whole day, در رعايت مملكت سستي كردي he was habitually careless in the protection of his dominion (iii) to denote *a past wish*, as كاش رفتمي would to God I had gone, كاش از اوّل دروغ نگفتمي would to God I had not lied from the first

9 The detached form of the Personal Pronouns may be strengthened by a Noun or an Adjective (used substantively) in apposition to it, as ما انسان را for us human beings ما توانگران we rich people, شما زيركان you intelligent ones, بتو نامهربان to thee unkind

10 The Imperative (امر) in Persian is divided into three kinds (*a*) امر حاضر 'the present Imperative,' the command being directly conveyed to the person or persons addressed, as حرف مرا گوش كن listen to what I say, حالا پاشو برو عزيز را صدا كن

now get up go and call Aziz Beg دهانش را ازین شیرینیها بکن fill his mouth with these sweets. [N B The second person plural of the امر حاضر when addressed to a single individual is a polite form of making a request, as لقمة الصباح حاضر است بالاتر تشریف بیاورید the morning meal is ready please, come and partake of it الحال مردم دور عمارت دیوانخانه جمع آمده منتظرند تشریف بیارید بمسند حکومت و جای پدر قرار بگیرید now the people having assembled round the palace of the justice-hall are awaiting (your arrival) please come and take your seat on the carpet of state in place of your father]

(*b*) امر غایب the absent Imperative the command being indirectly conveyed to a person or persons absent and being expressed by the third person singular or plural of the Aorist (مضارع) as زینب خانم هم گوش بدهد let Zainab Khanam also listen اسپهایم را بفروشند let them sell my horses.

(*c*) امر مدامی the continuous Imperative the command being of a permanent or continuous nature and being expressed by the unaugmented Imperative preceded by می or همی as دو بر سر مدرسه مشغول می باش قرآن شریف می خوان *always* read the Quran همیشه قدر خود را می دار do thou *ever* have regard to thy own worth and dignity

11 The Impersonal Verb شایستن is mostly used in the third person singular of the Aorist with or without a negative, as نشاید که نامت نهند آدمی it is not fitting that they should call thee a man سر چشمه شاید گرفتن بیبل it is possible to stop the fountain head with a spade بسر شاه سر خویش در نباید باخت one should not risk one's head for the king's secret.

12 Suffixes denoting *fitness* or *suitability* (لياقت) are (i) وار or واره, as شاهوار royal, سزاوار worthy, گوشواره ear-ring (ii) انه, as شاهانه royal, مردانه manly (iii) گان, as شاهگان any thing great or noble رايگان gratis, خدايگان lord, master

13 An Adjective may be strengthened by placing before it one or other of the following words —(i) بار, as بار خوار very despicable, (ii) پر, as پر دور very far, پر آهسته very slow, (iii) خيلي, as خيلي خوب very beautiful (iv) سخت, as سخت شاد very glad, سخت سست very slack, (v) بي, as بي سهل very easy or simple

14 (a) همگي (the totality, the whole) is used as a مضاف or a تاكيد, as همگي همتش the *whole* of his endeavour همگي زنان *all* the women همگي اشيا *all* the things

(b) It may also be used in the sense of همگان (all of them, they all), as همگي آمدند *all of them* came همگي مى روند *they* are *all* going

15 The most important of the remaining Prepositional Verbs are (vi) زير زدن to throw down (vii) فرا چنگ آوردن to get into one's grasp فرا رسيدن to arrive, فرا رفتن to go, proceed, فرا زدن to open, discover, فرا گرفتن to assume, acquire, فرا نمودن to show, exhibit (viii) فرو بستن to tie down فرو بردن to swallow فرو خواندن to utter فرو رفتن to go down, sink, فرو گذاشتن to quit, relinquish, فرو كوفتن to knock down, bruise, فرو ماندن to be distressed, فرو هشتن to hang down (ix) وا ايستادن to stop, stand still, وابستن to bind, tie, وا جستن to enquire, search, وا چيدن to pick out, collect, وا خريدن to

redeem وا داس to restore وا پس to hold back prohibit وا ستی to gaze at regard وا رسی to obtain information enquire into investigate وا رنگی to wander وا گردی to open let loose وا گذاری to commit to leave to وا گذاشتی to leave behind abandon وا مالی to stay behind وا نگریستی to stare at, وا نمودن to open, show

8. Jamshid—I

Tahamurs was succeeded by his nephew the famous Jamshid a prince who is celebrated as the founder of Persepolis, which is to this day called the throne of Jamshid." To this monarch Persian authors attribute the invention of many useful arts and to him they refer the first great reform in the manners and usages of his countrymen He divided his subjects into four classes The first was formed of learned and pious men, devoted to the worship of God and the duty ascribed to them was to make known to others what was lawful and what otherwise. The second were writers whose employment was to keep the records and accounts of the state. The third were soldiers, who were directed to occupy themselves in military exercises, that they might be fitted for war The fourth class were artificers, husbandmen and tradesmen. Jamshid also introduced the solar year and ordered the first day of it, when the sun entered the Aries to be celebrated by a splendid festival.

After the death of Tahamurs (بعد از رحلت طهمورث) the famous Jamshid (نامدار ج) his nephew (برادرزادهٔ او) on the throne (بر تخت) sat (ن ش ت) and it is celebrated (مشهور است) that Persepolis (اصطخر فارس را) that it (آنرا) to this day (هنوز or تا حال) the throne of Jamshid (تخت) also (نیز)

they call (میگویند) he founded (او بنا نهاد) Persian historians (مورخان ایران) will have it (=are on that برآنند) that many (بسی) useful arts (صنائع مفیده) of (از) his inventions (اختراع او) is, and also they say (گویند) that the first of the great reforms (اوّلین اصلاحات بزرگ) in the manners and usages of his countrymen (در باب آداب و معاشرت زندگی هموطنان خود) from him is and they narrate (نقل کنند or روایت کنند) that his subjects (or رعایای خود را خلق را) into (بر) four (چهار) class (طبقه) he divided (قسمت کرد) first (اوّل), learned and pious men, devoted to the worship of God (علما و زهاد) and their duty (کار ایشان or کارِ ایشان) this was that to people (مردم) the laws and regulations of the state and religion (قوانین و قواعد ملک و مذهب) they may teach (بیاموزند) , second (دوم), the writers (کتاب) who may keep the records and accounts of the state (که ضبط وقائع و محاسبات ملکیه نمایند) , third (سوم) the soldiers (سپاهیان) whose arrangement (انتظام ایشان) thus (چنان) was that in military exercises (به مشق استعمال آلات حرب or به مشق سر بار) having occupied themselves (اشتغال ورزیده) they may be fitted for the field of war (قابل میدان رزم شوند) and the fourth (چهارم) artificers (ارباب حرف و صنائع) and husbandmen (اهل فلاحت و زراعت) and tradesmen (تجار) And it is recorded (نوشته اند) that the fixing of the solar year (وضع سال شمسی) also (نیز) from Jamshid (از جمشید) is, and he ordered (فرمود) that on the first (=opening) day of the year (در روز افتتاح سال) which the time of the entering of the sun (که هنگام تحویل آفتاب) into the zodiacal sign

of the Aries (برج حمل) is they may celebrate a feast (جشن بند کنند)

NOTES.

16 The particle از is used—(i) to denote *the commencement* of anything as این راه از طهران نسبه مشهد میرود this road *commencing at* Tehran goes to Mashed از صبح تا حال نگذاشته دو چنگ پشم شانه بزنم *from* morning till now she does not let me comb two handfuls of wool (ii) to point out *the cause* as از شادی ... سرم رهیا I saw nothing ... جسم من جای را نمی دید ... نمی ... *from* shame and modesty we were unable to raise our heads in the presence of our elders ... از این خبر ... *because* of this dreadful news a terror over-spread among the members of the caravan (iii) in sense of—*of out of* as پدرم کار دکان خود را بیکی از بزرگترین شاگردان خود حواله نمود my father left his business to one *of* his chief apprentices آدم که بترسد ازین بهانها می آرد the man who is afraid brings forward (one) of such excuses (iv) to express the *material* of which a thing is made as ظرفی از مس یا چوب نیست there is no *wooden* or *copper* vessel; دلوچه از پوست در آنجا است there is a *leather* drinking cup in that place (v) to denote *motion from a place thing* &c. as پادشاه بقصد خانه حکیم از ارک بیرون آمد the king came out of (his) palace with the intention to proceed to the physician's house: چون شنید که یکی از ایران آمده است بسیار دلخوش شد when he heard one had come *from* Persia he was very much pleased (vi) to denote *the instrument* as یک راس اسب مرده از تنگنائی که مردها

مي انداختند کشته شد a horse in the cart was killed *by* the shots the robbers fired from their guns, رو بروي كرسئ شاه از برگ گل شکلهاي گوناگون ساختند facing the seat of the king they made various devices with rose leaves (vii) to denote *possession*, as اين كتاب از آنِ كيست whose book is this? از آنِ من است it is mine, فقير پرسيد كه اين خانه اوّل از كه بود the beggar asked, 'whose house was this at first?' گفت از جدم he said, 'my grand-father's'. (viii) to denote '*some out of a whole*,' as قدري از آنرا موش نخورد *a little of* it was eaten by the mouse, يكي از آنيان مرا شناخت كه از دستگانِ حكيم شاهم *one among* them recognised me as *(one) of* the dependants of the king's physician (ix) to show *comparison*, از بهتر آنجا در كارم آنچه مي پنداشتم بالا گرفت there my business prospered much better *than* I expected, البتّه مردن بهتر از زنِ تاروردي شدن است certainly to die is better *than* to be the wife of Tarwardi (x) to mark *the distinction* between two things, as اقاي من مشكل اين است كه از دوست تا دشمن فرق نمی كني از نيک تا بد امتياز نمي كني سفيد از سياه باز نمي شناسي my dear sir! the difficulty lies herein that you do not make a distinction between a friend and a foe, between good and evil, between white and black

17 *(a)* بسي (a great deal, much, many) is used as an adjective, as بسي شكر كردم I expressed *many* thanks, بسي ابليسِ آدم روي هست there exists *many a* devil in human shape, خلق بديدار او بسي فرسنگ مي روند the people go *many a* mile to visit him

(b) It may also be used as an Adverb, as بسی دردمند

که اوّلین تلتل فروشِ مشهد درآمدم ere long I became celebrated as the best vendor of smoke in Mashed

18. *(a)* An Arabic Adjective of the measure of فاعل or فعیل preceded by a Persian substantive denoting rational being of the female sex, agrees with the Substantive in gender but not in number as دختر عاقله the intelligent daughter دختران عاقله the intelligent daughters زنِ جمیله the beautiful woman زنانِ جمیله the beautiful women. But if a word or words intervene, the Adjective will take the masculine form as زنی بسیار عاقل a very intelligent woman

(b) An Arabic feminine Substantive, whether singular or plural, when followed by an Arabic Adjective, will require the Adjective to be in the feminine singular as حکمتِ کامله consummate wisdom قوّهٔ ناطقه faculty of speech تواریخِ معتبره authentic histories انواعِ مذکوره the said species امورِ سیاسیه political affairs وقایعِ مهمّه important events فتوحاتِ جزئیه partial victories اشخاصِ مزبوره the persons aforesaid حالاتِ عجیبه wonderful circumstances خواطرِ متفرّقه various kinds of thoughts

(c) If the Arabic Substantive in the plural denotes *men* or *angels* it sometimes requires the Arabic Adjective to be in the plural form as انبیای اطهار the pure prophets; حکّام کرام gracious governors وزرای عظام great ministers حکمای متأخرین modern philosophers

19 *(a)* The regular plural of Arabic feminine Nouns ending in ة is formed by changing ة into ات as from حرکة (motion) we have حرکات; of those which do not end in

ة by adding ات to the singular, as from مريم (Mary) we have مريمات

(b) The plural of most of the Arabic infinitives; of many masculines having no broken plural, and of verbal adjectives used in the plural as substantives, is formed in this way, as كمالات from كمال perfection, تعريفات from تعريف definition, اصطلاحات from اصطلاح technical term, جمادات from جماد an inorganic thing, حيوانات from حيوان an animal, سماوات from سماء the sky, كائنات from كائن being, مخلوقات from مخلوق created, موجودات from موجود existing

20 Genitive case (اضافت) in Persian may be divided into—(i) Possessive Genitive (اضافتِ تمليكي), as خانهٔ قاضي the house of the Qazi, قصرِ سلطان the palace of the king; كتابِ معلّم the book of the teacher, مالِ مردم the people's property (ii) Genitive of sonship (اضافتِ ابني), as رستمِ زال Rustam son of Zal, محمودِ سبكتگين Mahmud son of Sabuktagin, بو علي سينا Bu Ali son of Sina. (iii) Genitive of authorship, as گلستانِ سعدي the Gulistan of Sadi, شاه نامهٔ فردوسي the Shahnamah of Firdousi (iv) Genitive of place (اضافتِ ظرفي), as مردمانِ شهر the people of the city, اهلِ ايران the people of Persia, آبِ دريا the water of the river, بويِ گل the perfume of the rose: (v) Genitive of Origin, as زخمِ تيغ the wound inflicted by a sword, قافلهٔ بغداد the caravan coming from Bagdad (vi) Genitive of material (اضافتِ بياني), as ساعتِ طلا a gold watch, ديوارِ خشت a brick wall, كاسهٔ بلور a crystal cup (vii) Genitive of amount, as سفرِ يک ماه a month's journey, طفلِ سه ساله a child of three

years age سال پنجاه مدّت a period of fifty years نان یک هفته bread sufficient for a week (viii) Genitive of plenty or want, as کثرت دولت plenty of wealth; عدم توجه want of attention ازدحام مشتریان the crowding of customers قلّت آب scarcity of water (ix) Genitive of specification (اضافت توصیفی) as شهر بصره the city of Bassora بندر جده the port of Jiddah سفر دریا a voyage by sea (x) Genitive of component parts; as رمهٔ گوسفند a flock of sheep رشتهٔ مروارید a string of pearls طائفهٔ دزدان a gang of robbers خریطهٔ نامه a portfolio of papers (xi) Genitive of similitude, (اضافت تشبیهی), as چشم نرگس a narcissus-like eye; کمان ابرو a bow-like eye brow پنجهٔ مرجان coral like hand شیشهٔ دل a glass-like heart (xii) Genitive of metaphorical expression (اضافت استعاره) as دست حسرت the hand of regret سر هوش the head of sense; پای فکر the feet of imagination (xiii) Genitive of the Agent (اضافت فاعلی) as نویسندهٔ نامه the writer of a letter سازندهٔ کار the accomplisher of a work; آرندهٔ پیغام the bearer of a message آفرینندهٔ دنیا the creator of the world (xiv) Genitive of the Object (اضافت مفعولی) as نفرین ضحاک loathed by Zohak رهین جوانمردی indebted to your generosity گزیدهٔ مار bitten by a snake رفتهٔ غم consumed by sorrow (xv) Genitive of slight relationship (اضافت ادنی ملابست) as روز حساب the day of account شب توبه the night of repentance محلّهٔ ما our quarter پادشاه ما our king (xvi) Attributive Genitive (اضافت توصیفی) as روز روشن a bright day دختر خوشگل a pretty daughter اسپ سفید a white horse

21 (a) Aorist (مضارع) is generally used to express a custo-

mary action, or a general truth, as آتش دوست و دشمن نداند fire recognizes neither friend nor foe نشانِ بندگی آن باشد که همه آن کند که خداوند فرماید the mark of a servant is that he should do all that his master commands

(*b*) In modern Persian, unlike English, the Past Tense in the principal sentence may be followed by an Aorist in the subordinate clause, as از حالتِ خود او را آگاهانیدم که از روی بنده پروری مرا از سلکِ بندگانِ خود شمارد I made known to him my situation and entreated him to give me a place in his house-hold منتظرِ اقبالِ حکیم باشي بودند تا از اندرون در آید they were waiting for a sight of the royal physician when he should come out of the women's apartments, پیشتر از آنکه تولد شوم این واقع شد this happened before I was born, عادتم این بود که هر روز قدري انگلیسی بخوانم it was my custom to read a little of English every day

4 The Washerman's Jackass

There was a certain washerman in Benares, who had an ass and a dog in his court-yard, the first tied up, and the last roaming loose One night when he was asleep, a robber entered the house, and began to carry off his goods The ass saw what the thief was doing, and was much concerned "Good dog," said he, "this is your business why do you not bark aloud, and rouse the master?" "Friend ass," replied the dog, "leave me alone to guard our house I can do it if I choose, but the truth is, this master of ours thinks himself so safe lately that he quite forgets me, and I don't find my allowance of food nearly regular enough As our master does this, a little fright will put him in mind of his defenders again"—"You wicked cur!" exclaimed the ass, "is this the way to treat your master?" "You stupid ass! replied the dog, "is this the way for my master to treat me?"

Mean-spirited beast," retorted the ass, "I at least will endeavour to arouse our master" so saying he put forth his very best braying The thief ran off and the washerman sprang up at the noise, and seeing nobody turned in a rage upon the ass for disturbing him, and beat him with a cudgel to such an extent that he died.

In the town of Benares (شهر بنارس) a washerman (رختشوی) was, who among (از) domestic animals (حیوانات خانگی) an ass had (داشت) in the courtyard of his (own) house (صحنِ خانهٔ خود) tied up (= bound with rope رسن بسته) and a dog in that place (در آنجا) strutting (خرامنده) and unbound (گشاده) One night (شبی) when the washerman (رختشو) asleep (درخواب) was, a robber (دزدی) inside the house (درون خانه) entered (در آمد) and his goods (اموالش را) to carry off (برداشتن) he began (آغازید) The ass it (آنرا) seeing (دیده) much concerned (بسیار مضطرب) became (گردید) and said O good dog (ای سگِ نیک خو) ! this is your business (= thou hast to do with it تو کار داری) why (چرا) a loud barking (عف عفِ بلند) thou dost not do (نمی کنی) that our master (آقای ما) may awake (بیدار شود) ? The dog replied (جواب داد) that O yes (آری) the guarding of the house (نگهبانی خانه) that (که) my business is (کارِ مخصص) have a care (زینهار), its disturber (خللِ آن) do not be (مباش) If I choose (اگر بخواهم) I can do it (می توانم آنرا بکنم) but (ولیکن) the truth (حق) this is (اینست) that now-a-days (درین زمان) our master himself (خودش) so safe (در چنین معرضِ بی خطری) thinks (می پندارد) that from (از) the servant (بنده) quite (کلیه) negligence (غفلت) he has practised (ورزیده) and

my allowance of food (ادوقهٔ روزينه ام را) regularly (=as usual حر معمول) he has not caused to reach (نرسانيده) Therefore (لهذا) he ought to be put to a little fright (بايد قدري هراس بخورد) that (تا) us the defenders (ما نگاهبانان را) again (بار) he may remember (بياد آرد) The ass exclaimed (نعره برد) that O wicked cur (سگ بدحو), is it the way of thy faithfulness (اين طريقهٔ وفاداريت) that upon your master (براقاي خود) thou deemest permissible (روا داري) The dog in reply (بجوابش) said O stupid ass (خرِ بيخرد), is it his way of nourishing the servant (طريقهٔ بنده پروريش) that our master on the servants (بر بندگان) deems permissible (روا دارد) The ass retorted (بتيري نگفت), O mean-spirited beast (اي جانورِ بی غيرت و اي حيوانِ دون همت) if (اگر) thou neglect thy business (از کارِ خود غفلت مي ورزي) I (=the servant بنده) at least (اقلاً) shall endeavour (سعي مي نمايم) my master (را) I may arouse (بيدار بکنم) So (چنين) saying (گفته) as loud as he could (هرچه بلندتر بتوانست) a braying (عرعري) he struck (زد) The thief (درد) immediately on hearing his sound (بمجرد شنيدنِ صداش) he ran off (گريخت) Consequently (پس) when owing to (از) this noise and tumult (شور و غوغا)the washerman from sleep sprang up (برجست) nobody he saw (کسی را نديد) and for disturbing him (بسبب تلخ شدنِ اوقاتش or بسبب مکدر ساختن) upon (بر) the ass turned in a rage (بتاخت) and him (آنرا) with a cudgel (به چوبي) beat to such an extent (چنان زد و کوب کرد) that at last (آخر) his life (جانش) from the cage of the body (قفسِ تن) flew away (پرواز نمود)

NOTES

22 **Time when** is expressed in Persian—(i) by using the preposition در as در زمانِ خلافتِ حضرت ابوبکر صدّیق گرانی سخت پدید آمد *in the time* of the Caliphate of Abu Bakr the truthful there occurred a severe famine; مسطور است که بنای شهرِ قم در سنه دویست و سه هجری شد it is narrated that the foundation of the city of Qum was laid *in* 203 A H; در سنِ شصت و پنج سالگی جهان را بدرود کرد *at* the age of sixty five years he bade farewell to the world (ii) by the Accusative, denoting a point of time, as شب دزدی بخانهٔ مفلسی فقیری رفت *at* night a thief went to the house of a poor mendicant; بامداد پگاه از دروازهٔ طاوقچی بیرون شدیم *at* break of day we came out by the gate of Tawaqchi: (iii) by the use of چون as چون شب آمد سفره در کشیدند *when the night came* they spread the table-cloth; چون آمدند او را مرده یافتند *when they came* they found him dead (iv) by the Dative with به as باندک زمانی حاضر می شود *in a little while* it will be ready; پدرش قریب به عید رحلت یافت his father died just *about* the Id

23 The preposition در may be used—(i) to denote *place*, as بنده در شهر کاشان زائیده شدم I was born *in* the town of Kashan; نقدم را در استرِ کلاهِ خود پنهان کردم I secreted my cash *under* the linings of my cap; از گفتار و رفتارش تأثیر کلّی در دلم پیدا شد from his words and behaviour a great impression was produced *in* my mind: (ii) to denote *time*, as در روزِ نوروز خواستم بپادشاه پیشکش کنم *on* Newyear's Day I wished to make a present to the king; بهمراهی شاهزاده در وقتِ معیّن داخلِ مشهد شدیم *at* the appointed time we entered Mashed in the Prince's company (iii) to signify the

Object, as ز تو آیتي درس آموختن from thee the teaching *me* a verse (iv) to form phrases by the repetition of a word, so as to denote *excess* (كثرت), as قطار در قطار آهو a very large number of deer, دشت در دشت مرد a numerous army, کوه در کوه لاله mountain-fuls of tulips. (v) to form adjective phrases, as مسافر پا در رکاب a traveller foot-in-stirrup (i e ready to start)

24. The principal idiomatic uses of the word 'کار' are - (i) بکار نمودن to apply (oneself) to business (ii) بکار خوردن to attend to an affair, to be of use in an affair (iii) چه کار دارم what have I to do with it? (iv) بچه کار or بچکاره to what (profitless) end? (v) تو چه کاره what art thou worth? (vi) دست بکار شدن to undertake a work (vii) کارنداري thou hast nothing to do with it

25 In ordinary speech, the particle که is often *superfluously* used, as من که نمي فهمم I do not understand. بخدا که حالا میروم با همین قمه رودهاش را در می آورم by God! I will at once go and rip out his entrails with this dagger, عیب که ندارد it does not signify

26 Compounds formed with بي (equivalent to the prefix *un* or the affix *less* in English) are بي آبرو— dishonourable, بی اختیار without choice, بي آدب impolite, بي آزار without trouble, بي اعتبار not respected, بي اندازه beyond measure, بی انصاف unjust, بي باک fearless, بي بر fruitless, بي پروا without care, بي تاب faint, بي تحاشا precipitate, بی تمیز without discernment, بي تورکانه irregular, بي توشه without provision, بي توفیق without grace, بیجا improper, بي جان life-less, بیچاره helpless, بیچون incomparable, بي حساب countless, بیدریغ undeniable,

merciless بیزبان dumb بیشمار innumerable ; بیشرم shameless بی غل و غش without deceit بیغیرت spiritless or infamous بی قیاس incalculable بیگاه untimely بیکران immense بیمروت inhuman بیچاره helpless بیوقوف stupid and several others.

27 It is idiomatic to omit است, the third person singular ending of the Present Perfect (ماضی قریب), as تختهٔ نرگس گل کرده the bed of narcissus *has* bloomed سیب هم گل نو آورده the apple also *has* budded

28 The particle را may denote—(i) the Direct Object as ترا زدم I struck you (ii) the Indirect Object as ایشانرا زر بدهم I give them some money (iii) the Dative of the Possessor as این چراغ را چه فائده what is the advantage of this lamp? (iv) the meaning of (*at in*) as شب را به بستان با یکی از دوستان اتفاق صحبت افتاد *at* night I happened to be in the garden with a friend (v) exchange, as پنجاه روپیه را اسب با ساز و یراق خریدم *for* fifty rupees I bought the horse with harness &c and (vi) the cause as قضا را پدرش بمرد by the decree of God his father died

29. There are several Transitive Verbs in English, of which the Persian equivalents require a preposition to express the object; as to abhor—(از) تنفر ورزیدن یا متنفر شدن to accuse—(بر) بهتان بستن یا شکایت کردن to acknowledge—(به) معترف بودن to admire (a thing)—(از چیزی) حیرت بردن to annihilate—(از) دمار بر آوردن to ask—سوال کردن یا (از) پرسیدن to assault, attack—(بر) حمله بردن to befriend—(از) مهربانی کردن (بر) یا دوستی کردن (از) to beg beseech—(از) التماس داشتن to believe—(بر) یا ایمان آوردن (به) عقیده داشتن (از)

to come to know—(از) ملاقمت شدن, to compassionate (به) ترحّم کردن, to conquer (بر) غالب آمدن, to consider (بر) تامّل نمودن, to consult (a person)—(با کسی) کنکاش نمودن, to deride—(بر) استهزاء نمودن, to dust—(از) گرد تکانیدن, to enjoy (از) متمتّع شدن, to envy—(بر) حسد یا رشک بردن, to evade (one's business or duty)—(از کارِ خود) تغافل نمودن, and to excell—(بر) سبقت بردن

5 Jamshid—II

The early part of the reign of this prince was prosperous beyond all example, but immersed in luxury, he at last forgot that source from whence his good fortune flowed, and proclaimed himself a deity, directing his statues to be multiplied that the Persians might adore the image of their king, as the dispenser of all earthly good. This act of daring impiety disgusted his subjects and encouraged the Syrian prince, Zohak, to invade Persia. The unfortunate Jamshid fled before a conqueror, who was deemed by all, the instrument of Divine vengeance The wanderings of the exiled monarch are wrought into a tale, which is among the most popular in Persian romance His first adventure was in the province of Seistan, where the daughter of the ruling prince was led to fall in love with him, and to contract a secret marriage, but the unfortunate Jamshid was pursued through Seistan, India, and China by the agents of the implacable Zohak, by whom he was at last seized and carried before his cruel enemy like a common malefactor. Here his miseries closed, for, after enduring all that proud scorn could inflict upon fallen greatness, he was placed between two boards and sawn asunder with the bone of a fish

In the early part of the reign of (دراوایلِ سلطنت) Jamshid the world (عالم) extremely (نهایت) populous (معمور) and the people (رعیت) exceedingly (نهایت) well-off (آباد) was But in

luxury (عیش کامرانی) and kingly pomp (تجمل شاهی) having been immersed (مستغرق شده) at last (بالاخره) the real source of his good fortune (منبع حقیقی اقبال سعید خویش را) that is (یعنی) the holy essence of God (ذات پاک یزدان را) he forgot (فراموش کرد) and the wind of pride (باد غرور) in the head (سر) having twisted (پیچ داده) he began to lay claim to divinity (دعوای خدائی آغاز نهاد) and commanded (حکم داد) so that (تا) images (تمثالها) in (=from ا) his likeness (صورت او) having made (ساخته) they ordered (امر کردند) so that him (او را) the dispenser of all earthly good (مقسم همه نعمتهای جهان) having considered (دانسته) his images (را) they may adore (سجده و ستایش کنند) This daring impiety (کفر بلاکه) the cause of the distrust of the people (باعث تنفر رعیت) having become (شده) Zohak (ضحاک را) who the sovereign of Syria (فرمانروای شام) was they stirred up (برانگیختند) so that against (بر) Iran (ایران) he led an army (لشکر کشید) The unfortunate Jamshid (جمشید تیره روز) when (چون) the power of resistance against (*با*) that conquering king (طاقت معارضت آن شاه مظفر) that all men (همه مردمان) him the instrument of Divine vengeance (آلت تیغ جبار منتقم) considered (دانستند) in himself (در خویش) he did not see (ندید) having become fleeing (گریزان گشته) face to the desert (رو بصحرا) he placed (نهاد) The tale of the wandering of this exiled monarch (حکایت گردش این شاه غریب الوطن) of the well known fables of Persia is (از افسانه های مشهور ایرانست) The first adventure (=event واقعه) that over him (بروی) passed (گذشت) in Seistan (سیستان) was There (در آنجا) the daughter of the

ruling prince (= governor حاکم) him having seen (دیده) in the net of his love (در دام محبتش) captive (گرفتار) she became (گشت) and contracted a secret marriage with him (درخفیه باستمالة نکاح وی در آمد) But (ولیکن) when the agents of the implacable Zohak (گماشتگان ضحاک بیرحم) pursued him (تعاقبش کردند) from Seistan having fled (گریخته) to India (بهند) and from India to China (بچین) he went (رفت), till at last (احرالامر) him having seized (دستگیر نموده) like (مثل) one of the common malefactors (مجرمان عامة) before his cruel enemy (نزد دشمن خونخوارش) they carried (بردند) Here (درایجا) all his miseries (خواری و شقاوتش) to end (به پایان) reached (رسید), because (چه) after having endured the violence and molestation that (بعد از متحمل شدن جور و جفاهائیکه) from the hand of the proud enemy (از دست دشمن متکبر), it was possible (ممکن بود) that to fallen great people (به بزرگان افتاده حال) may reach (برسد) him between (درمیان) two board (تخته) having placed (نهاده) with the bone of a fish (باستخوان ماهی) they sowed (اره کردند)

NOTES

30 After verbs of '*ordering*' and the like, تا followed by a Preterite (ماضی مطلق) shows that the order given was immediately carried into effect, as فرمود تا غلامرا بدریا انداختند he ordered and they threw the slave into the sea پادشاه امر کرد تا او را در زندانی نهادند the king commanded and they put him into a prison while تا followed by an Aorist (مضارع) implies that the *result* of the order is not to be made known but merely *its object*, as حکم کرد تا پایش سوراخ کنند he gave orders to bore

a hole in his nose بفرمود تا دزد را در زندان محبوس کنند he ordered them to imprison the thief

In the last construction که may be used instead of تا, as حاکم فرمود که دستش ببرند the governor ordered them to cut off his hands.

31 *(a)* Temporal clauses (or clauses denoting time) take the Preterite when the action is to be marked as a *fact* as چون دوست بخانه‌ام در آمد ویرا بجاي صدر بنشاندم when my friend entered my house, I seated him in the foremost place, رفيق چون اين سخن بشنيد بهم بر آمد when (my) companion heard this speech, he grew angry ; انديشناک همي رفت تا روز بلند شد he kept on journeying full of anxious thought till the day was advanced

(b) When the action is to be marked as *prospective (i.e.,* merely contemplated as a future contingency) or *general* they take the Aorist, as اينجا بنشين تا ترا پيش خداوند تير برم sit here until I shall take you before the lord of the arrow تا جان در تن دارم مهر و وفاي شما را فراموش نکنم as long as I shall live, I shall not forget your kindness and fidelity , هر گاه چشم من بر طاهر مي‌افتد از حالت درماندگيش تأسّف مي خورم whenever my eye lights upon Tahir I feel compassion at his afflicted condition هر گاه که خر کباب شود شغال سبلت سيخ کند whenever an ass is roasted the jackal makes a spit of his whiskers.

(c) When the principal clause is *negative* the prospective action being made dependant upon some foregoing condition, both clauses must be negative, as تا گرسنگی برايشان غالب نشود چيزی نخورند until hunger overcomes them they will not eat any

thing, خوش نخورم و خوش نخسپم تا ترا بحقّ تو برسانم I will neither eat nor sleep in peace until I restore you to your rights

32 The particle چون may be used (i) to denote *time*, as چون باز گشت خیّاط را در آنجا ندید *when* he came back he did not find the tailor there, چون روز قدری بالا آمد مردم بآمد و شد شروع کردند *when* the day advanced a little, the people began to stir about (ii) to denote the *cause*, as چون این حالت را شگون نیک نمی گرفتم پیش از پیش رفتن خیلی ملاحظه کردم *as* I did not take this to be portentious of good, I passed a long time before I ventured to proceed, چون چیزی خارج عادت درمیان قوم بنی اسرائیل ظاهر شود پیوسته است البتّه صاحبی برای ایشان ظهور خواهد کرد *as* something extraordinary has taken place among the Jews, a leader is sure to appear in their midst (iii) to show *comparison*, as افسوس که چنین صورت من چون آفتاب و رخسارهٔ من چون گل گلاب از چشم تو پوشیده است alas, that this *sun-like* appearance and *rose-like* cheek of mine are hidden from thy sight (iv) in the sense of why (چرا) in interrogative sentences, as چون نروم که شاه طلب فرموده است *why* should I not go, the king having called me?

33 وي, the Turanian form of the Pronoun او, is more commonly used in the Oblique cases than in the Nominative case, as منوچهر ویرا نیز بنبرد طلبیده آورده ببرادر ملحق ساخت Manuchehr, challenging him also to battle, made (him join his brother (in death)) از قضا دست دلاک خطا کرد و سر وي مجروح گردید by chance the barber's hand slipped and his head was wounded. از وي تفصیل این راز را پرسید he enquired of him the explanation

of this mystery حجّاج دو هزار درهم بوی انعام داد Hajjaj gave a reward of two thousand *dirhams* to him: چرا بوی هنر باشد و بر من عیب why does it constitute an excellence in him while it is a defect in me?

34. **Purpose** may be expressed—(i) by the conjunction تا introducing a subordinate *clause* as ایلچیان فرستادند تا مشورت کنند they sent ambassadors that they might take counsel: (ii) by برای with infinitive, as ایلچیان را برای کردن مشورت فرستادند they sent ambassadors for the purpose of taking counsel: (iii) by the present participle (اسم حالیه) in a future sense as ایلچیان مشورت کنان فرستادند they sent ambassadors taking counsel.

35. (*a*) Final clauses (or clauses denoting purpose) take the Aorist (مضارع) in future time as بفرمایم تا منادی کند I will order that he may make a proclamation به خیاط بده تا رفو کند give (it) to the tailor that he may darn (it) بگو آب تنک بپاشد که زمین گل نشود tell (him) to sprinkle water in small quantities that the ground may not become soft

(*b*) In sentences where the preceding clause refers to past time the final clause may take either a Past tense or an Aorist according as the purpose of the action is regarded as achieved or otherwise, as از زیر بغلم گرفتند تا بسربینه آوردند they took hold of me by the arm-pit so that they brought me to the place of undressing در میان مردم دعوی می انداخت تا خود مرافعه کند he encouraged people to go into disputes so that he might

decide them متحیر ایستادند تا ببینند که چیز ست they stood transfixed in astonishment to see what the affair was

Sometimes, however, the Past Imperfect may be idiomatically used, as یک تن از ایشان زنده نماند که خبر بولایت ایشان بردی not a soul of them remained alive to carry the news to their own country

36 چه may be used (i) as a Relative Pronoun, as هرچه دیر نپاید دل بستگی را نشاید that which is not durable does not deserve attachment آنچه گفتی بکار بیار bring into action that which thou saidst (ii) as an Interrogative, as این چه چیز است what thing is this? در قفس چه جانور است what creature is there in the cage? این چه کارهٔ آدم است what is the business of this man? (iii) to introduce an exclamatory sentence as چه سختیها دیدم what hardships have I suffered! چه صاحب کمال شخصی است how perfect a man he is! (iv) as a conjunction to show *cause*, as محلی نگذاشت چه خود را قابل خطاب او نمی پنداشت he paid no attention, because he did not consider himself worthy of being addressed by him تکلیف مرا پسندید چه خیر خود را در آن دید he approved of my idea (or action) for he foresaw his own gain therein (v) to show *contempt*, as او چه ارزه دارد what is his worth? این چه آدم است what sort of a fellow is this?

6 The Lion and the Hare—I

There was once a fierce lion that lived in a mountain. He was so hungry and so fierce that he was continually destroying the other animals till at last they were afraid that

they would *all* be destroyed. So the animals called a meeting inorder to discuss what measures should be taken to put an end to this dreadful state of affairs After a good deal of talk, they made up their minds to send a deputation to the lion and to point out that it was useless to slay so many animals at a time while he only ate one So after a good deal of hesitation a number of the animals went to the lion s den and begged to be allowed to address him The lion who happened to be in a good temper received them favourably ' What is it, my friends?" he enquired. If it please Your Majesty" they said in humble tones, ' we have come to propose an arrangement for Your Majesty's comfort and convenience." Well, what is it?" responded the lion. "It is this, Your Majesty" they replied. Instead of giving Your Majesty all the trouble of searching for your food, we propose to supply it every day at your house, in future. "That sounds very reasonable, said the lion but I do not quite understand how the matter is to be arranged Will you please explain?" "It is this, Your Majesty" they replied "We shall draw lots among ourselves, and the animal on whom the lot falls will be sent to your Majesty s house where you may deal with him as you please." "This seems an excellent idea," replied the lion "but take care that my wants are properly supplied or there will be trouble. "Your Majesty may rely upon us," replied the deputation. And then, after saluting the lion respectfully they withdrew

Once upon a time (وقتی) a lion fierce (درنده) in the forest of a mountain (بیشهٔ کوهی) lived (منزل داشت) and so (چنان) furious (متغیر) and hungry (گرسنه or گرسنه) he was that continually (دمبدم) the other animals (حیوانات دیگررا) he was destroying (بهلاکت می رسانید) till (تا) at last (بالاخره) a great fear (هراسی) upon them dominant (مستولی) became (شد) lest (مبادا) all of them (را) he may destroy (منهدم سازد) Because of this (بنا براین) a meeting (مجلسی) they arranged (ترتیب دادند), so that with one another (باهمدیگر) consultation

(مشورت) making (کنان) for the purpose of (از براي) the removal of this dreadful state of affairs (مدافعت این صورت هائل) stratagem (حیلهٔ) they may do (سازند) and a remedy (چارهٔ) they may seek (بجویند) After (بعد از) a good deal of talk (قیل و قال بسیار) firm (قائم) on that (بر آن) they became (شدند) that a body of deputed persons (یک دستهٔ مأمورین را) to the presence of the lion (بحضور شیر) having sent (فرستاده) in his service (بخدمت وي) they may submit (معروض دارند) that when more than one game (بیش از یک شکار) he does not eat (نوش جان نفرماید), then (پس) every occasion (هر دفعه) the taking away of so many lives (ستاندن چندین جانها) what use (چه سودي) it may have (دارد). Therefore (لهذا) after a good deal of hesitation (تردد بسیار) a number of the animals (دستهٔ جانوران) having ventured (جرأت نموده) to the lion's den (به مغارهٔ شیر) they went and from him permission of speech (اجازت تکلم) they begged (خواستند) As (چون) that day the temperament of the lion (طبیعت شیر) towards good temper (بخوش مزاجی) happened to be (اتفاق افتاده بود) them with kindness (بنوازش) and liberality (کرم) he received (پذیرفت) and with patronising condescension (با التفات بزرگانه) he enquired (پرسید) that O friends, what is it (چه چیز است) ? With hundred humiliation (عجز) and supplication (نیاز) they submitted, that on the opinion bright of His Majesty (در رائي منیر اعلیحضرت) may it not remain hidden (مخفي نماند) that the coming of us the slaves (آمدن ما بندگان) at the gate of state (به در دولت) with this purpose (باین غرض) is and enough (بس) that for the sake of (براي) the comfort

and convenience of the kingly personality of exalted attributes (آرام و آسایش ذات ملک صفات سرکاری) a proper arrangement (مناسب تدبیری) may appear (بظهور رسد). The lion responding (اجابت کنان) said well (خوب) what is it that you are saying (می گوئید)? They represented (التماس نمودند) that thy sacrifice (مولائی) may we be (شویم)! our object (مدعای ما) this is that for the searching of your own food (برای جستجوی طعمهٔ خود) to Your Majesty (ملک عالم را) it is necessary (باید) hence-forth (بعد از این) any trouble (هیچ زحمتی) may not reach (نرسد), but rather (بلکه) we wish (می خواهیم) in future (از این باز) daily (هر روز) it (را) at the gate of state (بر دولت) we may make ready (حاضر سازیم) The lion said your words (سخنهای شما) very reasonable (خیلی معقول) is appearing (می نماید) but I do not understand (نمی فهم) this matter (امر) how (بچه طور) may come to pass (رو بدهد). More clearly (واضح تر) say ye (بگوئید). They said in this way (بدین طور) that among ourselves (درمیان خود ها) we shall draw lots (قرعه بیاندازیم) and the animal (حیوانی را) that the lot (قرعه فال) upon him they may strike (زنند) to the gate of state we shall send (بفرستیم), so that whatever (هرچه) in the holy temper (مزاج اقدس) will come (خواهد آمد) act you (عمل بفرمائید) The lion said this an idea (خیالی) is excellent (احسن) but take care (خبردار باشید) and properly (بطور مناسب) in supplying my want (برفع حاجتم) endeavour (بکوشید), or (وگرنه) for you (برای شما) very bad (خیلی بد) will pass (خواهد گذشت). All of them with one tongue (بیک زبان) said: thy sacrifice may

we be ! the odoriferous kingly mind (حواطرِ عاطرِ شهرياري) composed (جمع) let be (باشد), we servants (ما بندگان) from our promise (عهدِ خويش) will not turn away (برنمي گرديم), and after that in the service of the lion slave-like obeisance having performed they withdrew (بار گشتند)

NOTES

37 Consecutive Clauses (or clauses showing result) may be expressed—(i) by تا, as بفرمود تا غلام را به دريا انداختند he gave an order (with the result) that they threw the slave into the sea (ii) by كه in the resultant clause, preceded by آن قدر or اين قدر 'to such a degree,' چنان 'so or so great,' همچو 'such, in such a way', or چندان 'to such an extent', as در نفسِ خود آن قدر قوّت و سرعت مي شناسم كه در خدمتِ مردان يارِ شاطر باشم I am conscious of so great strength and activity in myself that I should be an active companion in the service of men, اين قدر شد كه بعد از نيم ساعت حال آمد it was to such an extent that after half an hour he came to himself, بنيادِ عدالت و انصاف را چنان محكم كرد كه نامش تا قيامت برقرار ماند so firmly did he lay the foundation of justice and equity, that his name would endure till the Day of Judgment, حال همچو شده است كه نيم تنهٔ پنجاه و شصت توماني براي زنِ تو سوقات بفرستد now 'such is the case that she sends a jacket worth some fifty or sixty tomans as a present to your wife, نه چندانكه انتقام از حد بگذرد not to such an extent that revenge should exceed due bounds (iii) by لاجرم 'necessarily, as a necessary result', as لاجرم دشمني صعب روي نمود as a necessary result a fierce enemy arose

38. Examples of Compounds formed with پُر full—are پرهش tearful پرباد inflated پربار freighted pregnant پرچانگي fulness of chin boasting پرخطر cautious پرخطر hazardous; پرخوري gluttony پردرد painful پردل intrepid پرزور powerful; پرهنر wise پرفائده edifying advantageous پرقوت mighty پرکار skilful پرکینه malicious پرگو talkative پرهنر skilful.

39 مبادا (may it not be, lest) may be used—(i) with the Doubtful Past (ماضی مشکی), as مبادا تا تو برسي دیگري اين لقمه را ربوده باشد lest before you arrive some one else might have snatched away the morsel (ii) with the Aorist (مضارع) as مبادا آنچه بمن رسيد بجناب عالي لهم برسد lest what happened to me should happen to your honour also (iii) after verbs of *fearing* with the Aorist, as مي ترسم كه مبادا در اين حالت بميرد I fear lest he shall die in this state ترسيد كه مبادا در شب آمده اسبش را ببرند he feared lest they should come at night and carry off his horse (iv) to express doubt in the sense of *perhaps* as مي ترسم كه مبادا درخت از حكم حضرتعالي نيايد I am afraid that *perhaps* the tree will not come at your honour's command.

40 The Reciprocal Pronouns (ضمائر مشترکه) are همدیگر and یکدیگر formed by prefixing هم and یک to دیگر as در عادات آنان باهمديگر بسيار كم مثل بودند in habits they resembled each other very little, ماهم مثل آنها همديگر را دوست خواهيم گرفت we will take each other as friends like them مدتي باهمديگر سرگوشي كردند for a short time they whispered with one another پس و كس يكديگر را كنديم و برباد داديم we plucked out each other's beard and hair and destroyed (them) همه بوديع يكديگر بكنند let all bid adieu to one another

41 The particle با is used—(i) in the sense of '*with*', as در تبریز اسبی با زین زرین خریدم I bought a horse with gilt saddle; در جیب چپ قلمدانی بود با آئینهٔ کوچک و یک شانه in the left pocket there was a pen-case with a small mirror and a comb; با غرور از اسب فرود آمد with pride he alighted from the horse. (ii) in the sense of '*by means of*', as گروهی طفل را با خطبهٔ بلیغ تحریض و تحریک نمودم by means of an eloquent address I excited and instigated a band of youths; با دستار و عبا و شال خود را بصورت آخوندان آراستم by means of a turban, cloak and shawl I dressed myself in the garb of a priest; ما با دست غذا میخوریم ایشان با قاشق we eat food by means of our hands, they by means of spoons. (iii) in the sense of '*although, inspite* of', as با آنکه بسیار فهماندم مگر نفهمید although I explained much (to him) yet he did not understand. (iv) in the sense of '*to, towards*', as حرفهایکه با حاجی صالح میزدید همه را حرف بحرف تا آخرش شنیده ام I have heard all the words, letter by letter, till the end, that you spoke to Haji Salih; گمان کردیم که با ما یار خواهد شد we thought he would be friendly towards us. (v) in the sense of '*possessed of*', as با آن سر و وضع مردی بشمار آمده بودم *possessed of* such a figure and appearance I was evidently a man of distinction; با آن همه رنگ این یکرنگی در تو گمان نمی بردند *possessed* of all that pride and dignity, no one would have expected this amiability from you. (iv) in the sense of '*with, in company of*', as چون با رفیق خویش تنها ماندم گفتم when I was left alone with my friend, I said; پس پریروز در عرض راه تفلیس با جانوران خود می آمده است three days ago he was coming with his animals along the Tiflis road. (vii) in the

'How much is thy monthly salary ?' He said 'Nothing', این همه هیچ است چون نگذرد all these are of no account, since they are fleeting

(e) In this sense هیچ also occurs in composition with Negative Imperatives to from Compound Nouns, as هیچمدان an ignoramus, هیچمیرز a wastrel, good-for-nothing fellow

44 The idiomatic uses of رو *'face'* are—(i) رو کردن or رو نهادن به to turn towards, attend to, (ii) چشم روي هم گذاشتن to let one's eyes come together, to shut one's eyes to, (iii) روي تخت on the throne, (iv) رو بترقي گذاردن to tend towards improvement, (v) رو دادن to appear, happen, (vi) پا روي پا انداختن to cross the feet, (vii) از روي قاعده according to law, lawfully, properly, (viii) از رويم برنمي آيد I have not the face to , (ix) هر رو شرا مى خواهي مي زند he will strike any one's face you like, he is up to anything, and (x) رو برو كردن to confront

45 Examples of compounds formed with بد *'bad'* are — بد اختر ill-starred, بد انديش malicious بد بخت unfortunate, بد خوي ill-tempered, بد ذات a scoundrel بد رفتاري bad conduct, بد عهد traitor, faithless, بد فرجام of evil tendency, بد كيش irreligious, بد گوهر of evil nature, بد مهر unfriendly, بد نام infamous, بد نما bad-looking, and بد نهاد perfidious

46 The uses of همين *(this same* or *very)*, the strengthened form of Demonstrative اين, may be illustrated thus — (i) من ترا براي همين مطلب خواستم I sent for you for *this* purpose, تو همين قدر اقرار كن ديگران تصديق ميكنند give your evidence to *this* effect, others will confirm it, همين طور ناحق است it is

unjust in *this* way (ii) چنانکه بمن گفتند در محکمه موافقه سزاوار همین طور شهادت بدهید in the judgment hall of the court, give evidence in *the same* manner, just as you have said to me ; من هم بهمین مرا بهمین حالت منوال شنیدم I also heard to *the same* effect میگذاری میروی thou art going and leavest me in *the same* plight (iii) من همین یک روشن است ; I am *the sole* light of her eyes (iv) همین که نیم تنه حاضر شد میدهی بزرگر بیست و چهار دانه دکمه طلا *as soon as* the jacket is ready you get a goldsmith to make twenty-four gold buttons.

47 List of English Transitive Verbs which require Persian equivalents with Preposition (continued) —

To fear— (از) ترسیدن to forego— (از) دست برداشتن to forgive (a fault)—(از خطاي) در گذر کردن to give up (a task) — (از کاري) برداشتن to govern— (بر) حکمراني کردن to grudge— (بر) حسد بردن to hate— (از) نفرت داشتن to hear (one's word)— (به سخن کسي) گوش دادن to hurt— (به) آزار رسانیدن to ill-treat— (با) بد رفتاري کردن ; to interrogate— از پرسیدن (از) to invade— (بر) حمله کردن to keep (a promise)— (از عهده) برآمدن to master (a subject) — دست یافتن (برمطلب) to meet (any one)— (بکسي) دو چار شدن , to mistrust— (از) متردد بودن to navigate (a river)— کشتي راندن (به رود خانه) to neglect— (از) غافل بودن to oblige (a person)— (برکسي) منت نهادن to overcome (the enemy) — ظفر یافتن (بر دشمن)

7. Ispahan

Ispahan, once the capital of Persia, and still its principal city, is placed in the happiest temparature Its inhabitants are strangers to the heat felt during some of the summer months at Shiraz, yet their winter is hardly more severe Excepting a few weeks in the year, the sky is unclouded and serene The rains are not heavy, and the snow seldom lies long on the ground The air is so pure and dry that the brightest polished metal may be exposed to it without being corroded by rust The regularity of the seasons here appears extraordinary to a person accustomed to a more uncertain climate When spring commences, there is no spot in the world where Nature assumes a lovelier garb, the clearness of the streams, the shade of the lofty avenues, the fragrant luxuriance of the gardens, and the verdant beauty of the wide-spreading fields, combine with the finest climate to render it delightful and we are almost disposed to agree with the representation which describes it as having an intoxicating effect upon the senses When seen from a distance, the lofty palaces and the domes of the numerous mosques and colleges in Ispahan, derive additional beauty from being half veiled by shady avenues and luxuriant gardens Though the first impression be weakened by a nearer view, and by contemplating the ruins of former grandeur, enough remains to excite great admiration The fine bridges over the Zainderood are still in good repair, almost all the colleges have been preserved, many of the former palaces are yet perfect, and some new ones have been erected by the governor, as if to tempt the monarch to make this city once more his residence

Ispahan (اصفهان را), which once the capital (پای تخت) and still (هنوز) the principal of the cities of Persia is (اوّلِ شهرهای ایران است), in such a way (چنان) they have founded (وضع کرده اند) that its climate (آب و هوایش) better (بهتر) than (از) all of the cities of this country (جمیع بلادِ این ملک) may be (باشد). The inhabitants of that city (اهلِ آن شهر) with (از)

the heat of Shiraz (گرمي شيراز) that in some of the days of summer (در بعضي از ايام تابستاني) there (در آنجا) may be quite (محض) strangers (نا آشنا) are and its winter (زمستانش) also (نيز) probably (غالب) from that place (از آنجا) more severe (سخت تر) is not (نمي شود) The whole year (همه سال) excepting a few week (بجز هفتة چند) the sky (آسمان) uncloud ed (= clear صاف) and serene (روشن) is. Its rain (بارانش) never heavy is (هرگز سنگين نيست) and snow (برف) seldom (كمتر) on the ground (بر روي زمين) long (مدتي) lies (= remains بماند). The air (هوا) to such an extent (بقدري) pure (صاف) and dry (خشك) is, that every kind of polished metal (هر قسم از فلزهاي صيقلي را) in that they may expose (گذارند) and rust (زنگ) it will not catch (نخواهد گرفت). The regularity of (نظم و نسق) its four seasons (فصول اربع آن) happens to be such (چنان واقع است) that to inhabitants of the countries of more various and uncertain climate (به ساكنين بلادهاي آب و هواي مختلف و غير معين تر) extraordinary (نادر) appears (مي نمايد) In the beginning of the spring (در اوايل بهار) the natural appearance of this spot (صورت طبيعي اين موضع) of the kind of clear streams (از قبيل رود هاي صافي) and shining avenues (خيابانهاي درخشان) and gardens (باغهاي) replete with odoriferous herbs (مملو از رياحين) and wide fields (مزارع وسيع) green (سبز) and pleasant with (با) a climate than all better to such an extent (بنوعي) growth (نشو و نما) is susceptible of (پذيرد) that than all the spots of (مواضع) the surface of the earth (روي زمين) lovelier (مرغوب تر) it becomes (گردد) and one might say (ميتوان گفت) that on human sense

(درحواس انسانی) intoxicating effect (اثرِ خمر) it has (دارد) From distance (از دور) the lofty palaces (سراهای عالی بناهای) and the domes of mosques and colleges (گنبدهای مساجد و مدارس) numerous (کثیر العدد) somewhat (قدری) veiled (پنهان) behind (در پسِ) the trees of shady avenues (اشجارِ خیابانهای سایه دار) and verdant gardens (باغهای سبزه زار) has an additional beauty (نمایشی دیگر دارد) From near (نزدیک) the same appearance (نمایش را) it has not (ندارد) on account of (بسبب) the many ruins (خرابهای بسیار) that from ancient remains (آثار قدیمه) exists (برجاست) but (ولی) still so much as (بقدریکه) the cause of wonder (موجب تعجب) and the focus of admiration (مورد تحسین) may be (شود) is remaining (باقیست) The fine bridges over the Zaindarood (پلهای خوش وضع زاینده رود) yet (هنوز) in good repair (بر وضع سابق) remaining (باقی) and all the colleges (جمیع مدارس) preserved (برپا) and many of the former palaces (بسیاری از سراهای قدیم سلطنت) still perfect (بالتمام) properly placed (برجا) is (است) and the governor of that city (حاکم آن بلد) some (چند) new lofty palaces (ایوانهای رفیع نو) also has erected (بنا کرده است) as if (مثل اینکه) he wishes (میخواهد) the monarch (پادشاه را) may incline (بر سر میل آرد) that this city (را) once more (بار دیگر) his residence (= capital دار الخلافت) he may make (بسازد)

NOTES.

48 The uses of هنوز may be illustrated thus (1) شام هنوز حاضر نیست the dinner is not *yet* ready, سرم هنوز درد می کند my head *still* aches, هنوز ادعائی هم با من دارد he *even* claims

something more of me امّا هنوز آن علامات باقی است و من باقی نشده ام but *still* the symptoms continue and I am alive (ii) امّا دریا چون هنوز تلاطم زیاد داشت هر قدر می توانستند آن کشتی را پهلوی ما متصل کنند نمی شد but as the sea was *still* very rough however much they tried they could not bring the steamer side by side with ours ; (iii) هنوز راه خود طی نکرده بودم که شام به نزدیک رسید I had not *yet* finished traversing the road when the evening approached.

49. The idiomatic uses of اهل are — (i) اهل اسلام a true believer , (ii) اهل بیت (or اهل خانه) family ; (iii) اهل حرفت و صنعت the artisans and craftsmen (iv) اهل علم the learned (v) اهل لندن the people of London (vi) اهل مجلس the members of an assembly (vii) اهل مجالس the dramatis personae (viii) اهل قلم the functionaries (especially of finance) (ix) اهل این کار نیستم I am not the person to do this thing

50. (*a*) The Arabic Cardinals especially the units, are generally used in Persian with Arabic words only , as الانجیل اربعه the four gospels.

(*b*) The Arabic Ordinals are more commonly used with names of kings , as اکبر اول Akbar I عبّاس ثانی Abbas II '

51 'Modest assertions are introduced by—(i) توان گفت or اگر باینحال میتوان گفت که کلیهٔ هوای خراسان خوب و سالم است as میتوان گفت but inspite of this *one might say* that after all the climate of Khorasan is fine and healthy ارتفاع زمین بحدیست که می توان گفت که زمستان آنجا با پائیز بلاد دور و حوالی در یکوقت شروع می شود the elevation of the land has such an effect, that *one might say that*

its winter begins just when the autumn of the distant and neighbouring countries does or (ii) گویا از سواحل عربستان کوه ریگ کوه رملهای خفیف می آرد چنانچه گویا ابری بر روی هوا ایستاده است from the Arabian coasts it brings mountains of light sands, such that *as though* a cloud is hanging by the air, نزدیکتر شدم دیدم که گویا از پیش دیده ام when I approached nearer, I found that *as though* I had seen him before, گویا کاریکه خان با نزدیکانش می کند بچشم خود نمی بیند *as though* he does not observe with his own eyes the Khan's treatment of his relatives or (iii) تو گفتی or تو گوئی as تو گفتی فیلان شیرافکنند thou wouldst have said, they were lion-defeating elephants, چنان بسرعت رسید تو گوئی که بر مرکب باد آمد so soon did he reach, thou wouldst say, that he came riding on the wind

52 The particle 'بر' may be used—(i) in the sense of '*on, upon*', as براسب سوار شدم I got *on* the horse تاج برسرش نهادند they placed the crown *upon* his head, عاقبت از آنچه می ترسیدیم بر سر ما آمد at last all that we feared came *upon* us, این سخن بر من بسیار اثر افتاد this word produced a great effect *upon* me دل بر آن نهاده است he had placed his heart *upon* that, اگر باور ندارید برایشان حمله آورید if you do not believe, make an attack *upon* them (ii) in the sense of '*to, towards*'; as سگ را بر دزد سر دادم I let loose the dog towards the thief, صیاد باز را بر کبک سر می دهد the hunter is letting loose the hawk towards the partridge (iii) to show '*quantity or measure*'; as این جامه ایست که بر قامت او دوخته شده است this is a garment sewn to fit the measurement of his stature; (iv) to form adverbial phrases of the form of دوش بر دوش گرد

سربازها دوش بردوش جنگیدند as *etc* زنی برزنی — برکرد the soldiers fought shoulder to shoulder (v) to form attributive phrases (being inserted between two nouns) as کلاه برسر having the cap on the head جان برلب having the soul on the lip, کفش برپا having the shoe on the foot سر برکف having the head on the palm (vi) as a Substantive, as صبر تلخ است ولکن بر شیرین دارد patience is bitter but has a sweet *fruit*, جامهٔ ابریشمین در بر a silken garment on the *breast*

53 Two or more Impersonal (or inanimate) Subjects take the Verb in the singular as فوارها و باغها و خیابانهای خوب زیاد بود the fountains, the parks, and the beautiful avenues *was* numerous تلخی و خوشی و زشت و زیبا بگذرد bitterness and happiness, the ugly and the beautiful, (all) *passes* away بلندی بالا و فراخی شانه و باریکی میانش آشنا بنظرم آمد his tall stature broad shoulders, and thin waist appeared to be known to me

54. The letter ب (or بِ) is used—(i) to denote *place* or *receptacle* as صبح بحمام رفته دست و پا و ریش را حنا بستم in the morning I went to the bath and tinged my hands feet and beard with *hena* گویا شما تازه بطهران آمده اید you are evidently newly arrived in Tehran? این مژده را بخانم رساندم I gave this good news to the lady دیگر بزبانش نیاوردند they did not bring him any more on the tongue (ii) to denote *purpose* or *cause* as من بدیدنش رفتم I went to see him من به هیچ وجه براضی نمی‌شوم I would never consent to his death آبادانی ملک به عدالت است the flourishing of a country depends on justice (iii) to point out *attendant circumstances* as در آنجا بخیریت رسیدم I arrived

there in safety , باري بهمراهيش قرار دادم at last I settled to accompany him , كدخداى ده بنفسه بخدمت پرداخت the chief of the village himself attended upon us (iv) to signify the *instrument* or *means* , as ضعيف است به عصا راه ميرود as he is weak, he walks with the aid of a stick , دولت انگليس ملك هند را به شمشير گرفته the English Government has conquered India with the sword , همه براههاي ديگر بنصب رسيده اند they all have attained to fortune in other ways (v) to express an *adjuration* or *oath* , as آغا ترا بخدا براي من بيچارا كن O agha, for pity's sake, have compassion on me, an unfortunate man , ترا بمحاسن پيغمبر حقيقت واقع را بيان كن by the beard of the prophet, tell the real truth بسر من بنان و نمك پادشاه بگو به بينم چه قدر گرفتي by my head, by the bread and salt of the king, tell me how much you took , مرا بقبر پدرت ببخش by your father's tomb forgive me , بمرگ خودت كه من درين خصوص به هيچ وجه تقصيركار نيستم by your death, in this matter I have done no wrong in any way , بارواح پدرم كه هرگز نخواهم بخشيد by the soul of my father, never will I forgive him (vi) to show *nearness* , as هرچه زود تر خود را بدار السلام بغداد رسانده سلامت مانم having made myself reach Baghdad, the abode of safety, as early as possible, I may remain safe , هر دو بايستي بيك ده وارد شويم both of us must happen to arrive at the same village , تا بسرحد ممالك شمالي برسي چها برسرت آيد till you reach the frontier of the northern kingdom how many things may happen to you . (vii) to couple words together , as قدم بقدم step by step , روبرو face to face , روز بروز day by day ; دم بدم every moment , رنگ برنگ of various colours , در بدر from door to door , سربسر

entirely دست بدست from hand to hand, successive: (viii) to indicate *the commencement* as بنام خدا مي كنم ابتدا in the name of God I begin اوّل دفتر بنام ايزد دانا و حدي توانا the first book (is) in the name of the wise and mighty God بنام جهاندار جان آفرين in the name of God, the Creator of the world (ix) to signify *the end* as ز مشرق تا مغرب from the east to the west عرش تا بفرش from the highest heaven to the earth از دهن آنها آب بحوض ميريزد from their mouths water flows into the basin (x) to show *the Indirect Object* as باقي را بمن واگذاشت he made over the remainder to me همه را بفروختم و بدو دادم I sold it all and gave (the price) to him اسب را فروخته بهايش را بتو مي دهم having sold the horse, I will give you the price (xi) to signify *exchange*, as اسب و زين را بهر قيمتي كه باشد بفروشم I will sell the horse and saddle for any price they may bring يک شعرش به ديوان ديگران مي ارزد a single verse of his is worth a whole Diwan of others اين اسب را بدو صد روپيه خريدم I purchased this horse at two hundred rupees: (xii) to show *resemblance* as باقبال تو در عالم نيست none in the world resembles thee in fortune من خود را بدولاب باري تشبيه كرده ام I have likened myself to the movement of the water-wheel: (xiii) in the sense of *to according to* as همه عالم بمراد تو باد may all the world be to thy wishes نتيجه اش به اميد ما بر نيامد its result did not come up to our expectations (xiv) to show *direction*, as چون نزديک رسيد روي بمن كرد when he came near, he turned towards me احمد به دهلي رفته است Ahmad has gone to Delhi.

55 The uses of همان the strengthened form of the demonstrative آن may be illustrated thus (i) بلكه معالي اين اسپ را همان

طور نگاه داشته اند as an example of justice the mill has been preserved in *the same* condition, در پنهان هرچه بود در میدان همان بود he was *the same* in public as well as in private (ii) دیدم همان طور است که خیال کرده بودم I found, it was *even* as I had imagined (iii) حلاجه را تصور این شد که درس گفتن همان سر جنبانیدن است the weaver thought that teaching was *nothing but* nodding the head (iv) بیرون آمدن خون همان مردن برادرم همان as soon as blood flowed out my brother died, گفتن همان بود و اورا از هم دریدن همان as soon as he said this he tore him to pieces

56 The idiomatic uses of the word جا are —(i) بیجا out of place (ii) کار بجا رسانیدن to finish up a matter, to bring a thing to such a pass (iii) جا انداختن to establish (iv) بجا آوردن to fulfil (v) در همچو جاي at such a place

57 List of English Transitive Verbs which require Persian equivalents with Prepositions (continued) —to over-look—اغماض کردن (از) to pass (a river)—گذشتن (از رود خانه) to permeate—سرایت نمودن (در), to persecute—(بر) دست درازي کردن, to pity—ترحم یا شفقت نمودن (بر), to question (از) استفسار نمودن, to regret (an act) پشیمان شدن (از کاري), to relish (a thing)—(از چیزي) مزه بردن to require—(از) محتاج بودن to resign (a post)—رخصت گرفتن (از خدمت), to shirk (one's duty)—طفره زدن یا تغافل نمودن (از کار خود) to shun—(از) دوري یا اجتناب نمودن, to slander (a person)—(بر کسی) بهتان بستن, to subdue (بر) نصرت یافتن; to surpass—(بر) سبقت بردن to trust (any one)—(بر کسي) اعتماد کردن to wonder—(بر) عجب ماندن

8 The Lion and the Hare—II

So the new arrangement came into force and every day the beasts drew lots and sent one of their number to the lion who was good enough to devour him At last it came to the turn of an old hare to furnish the lion's dinner So off he set But on the way he said to himself As I have got to die what is the good of being in a hurry? I may as well take my time So he sauntered along in a very leisurely way and when at last he reached the lion's den he found him in a very bad temper at having to wait so long for his dinner "What is the meaning of this?" roared the lion. Why are you so late?" Please Your Majesty replied the hare it is not my fault. As I was coming along I met a lion who stopped me and would not let me go on till I promised to come back to him after letting you know "What!" said the lion "who dares to defy me in this way? Take me to the villain at once and I will teach him a lesson. This way Your Majesty said the cunning hare. And he led the lion to a deep well. "He is down this hole." The lion was too angry to be very wise. He looked down into the well, and seeing his own image reflected in the water took it for another lion instantly sprang at it, and was drowned in the well.

In this way (بدین طور) that arrangement (= instruction دستور العمل) new (تازه) came into force (اجرا یافته). Then (پس) every day (روز بروز) the beasts (حیوانات) among themselves (مابین خود شان) used to draw lots (قرعه انداختندی) and that one (آن یکی را) in whose name the lot happened to fall (که قرعه بنام او اتفاق افتاد) to the presence of the lion (بحضور شیر) used to sent (ارسال میداشتی) and the lion as a mark of royal favour itself (از روی الطاف خسروانه) it (را) used to devour (بلعیدی) till (حتی که) at last (آخر الامر) the turn (نوبت) to (به) a hare old (دیرینه) in his own affair (در کار خود) wise (فرزانه) fell (بیفتاد) that the lion's morsel (لقمهٔ شیر) he may become (بگردد)

Then helplessly (ناچار) he set off (راهي شد) , and on the way (در اثناي راه) to himself (باخود) thought (انديشيد) that as (چون) I have no escape from death (مرا از مرگ گريز نيست) to my being in a hurry (زود دويدنم را) what a profit (سودي چه) It befits me (مرا شايد) that I may take my time (تمهل نمايم) and reach as late as possible (هرچه دير تر بتوانم برسم) Then in a leisurely way (آهسته آهسته) sauntering (تماشاي اطراف و جوانب نموده) on his way (براه خود) he advanced (پيش رفت) , and when at last (آخر كار) to the lion's den (به مغارهٔ شير) he reached (رسيد) him very angry (خود عصبناك) he found (يافت), because (كه) for a long time (ديرها) he had waited for food (انتظار طعام كشيده بود) The lion roared (بغريد) that such-like (همچو) delay (درنگي) what (چه) meaning (معني) has (دارد) ? So much (چنين) delay (تاخير) why (چرا) hast thou done (كردهٔ) ? The hare replied, that round thy head (دور سرت) may I turn (بگردم), Your Majesty (جهان پناه), in this my fault (هيچ تقصيرم) is not (نيست) because (زيراكه) on the way with another lion (باشير ديگري) we met (دو چار شديم) who stopped me (كه سر راهم را بگرفت) and would not let (نمي خواست بگذارد) I may come (بيايم) here (اينجا) till from the servant (از بنده) a promise (وعدهٔ) he took (بگرفت) that after giving information to the holy presence (بعد از اطّلاع دادن بحضور اقدس) to him (بنزد وي) I may go back (باز بروم) The lion in a loud voice (بآواز بلند) said what art thou saying (ميگوئي) ! who has the daring (كرا جرأتي باشد) that with me (بامن) the power of this opposition (تاب اين مزاحمت) he may have (دارد) At once (الان) me to that wicked villain

(به آن قلب شریر) take (از بنده) that (تا) him such a chastisement (چنان گوشمالی) I may give (بدهم) that an example of the time (عبرت زمانه) he may become (بگردد) That cunning hare (خرگوش مکّار) said this side (جانب) bring your nobility (تشریف بیاورید) and the lion (را) to a deep well (به چاهِ عمیقی) having brought (برده) he said down this hole (زیر این نقب) he is. The lion who from excess of anger (از شدّت خشم) his own understanding (عقل خویش را) had lost (گم کرده بود) down into the well (پائین چاه) looked (نگاه کرد) and his own reflection (عکس خود را) in the water (در آب) having seen (دیده) thought (خیال کرد) that another lion it is and instantly (فی‌الفور) at it (بروی) sprang (جست) and at the bottom of the well (در تکِ چاه) he was drowned (غرق شد)

NOTES

58. Some of the idiomatic uses of the word تازه may be illustrated thus (i) حرفِ تازه نیست که گفتنش دشوار باشد it is not a *new* word that it should be difficult to say it یک دسته تیغ تازه یادگارم داد he gave me a case of *new* razors as a keepsake: (ii) ملازم تلگرافخانه نانِ تازه حاضر کرد the servant at the telegraph office brought *fresh* bread جانِ تازه بمن دادی thou hast given me a *fresh* life; باغیست مثل بهشت و تازه تر از گلِ ارم it is a garden like paradise and *fresher* than the rose-garden of Iram (iii) چشم من بدستهٔ زوّارِ تازه رس بود I was always on the watch to discover a set of *newly*-arrived pilgrims صد تا باجاقلی تازه سکّه در آورد he brought out a hundered *newly*-coined Dutch dollars; یک ماده گاوِ تازه زاد بخودت می دهم I will present thee with a *lately*-

calved cow (iv) یک ستونی دیده شد که تازه بیادگار فتح فرانسه می سازند we noticed a column *recently* erected in commemoration of the victory over France , چه حرفی است که مثل تو تازه جوانِ با کمال در تفلیس خدمتی پیدا نکند what words are these that a perfect *youth in his prime* like you cannot find service in Tiflis ? با این سن و سال دختر تازه جوان برای تو شایسته نیست with your age and years a *youth-ful girl in her prime* is not a fit wife for you

59 Some of the idiomatic uses of the word 'روز' may be illustrated thus (i) روز بروز , as دردِ کمرم روز بروز شدت گرفت the sprain on my back increased *day by day* (ii) روزِ روشن , as روزِ روشن بخانهٔ مثلِ من آدمی می آید *in broad day light* he comes to the house of a man such as I am (iii) روزِ تنگ , as درمیانِ پنبهٔ آن برای روزِ تنگ پنجاه عدد اشرفی دوخت as a precaution for a *tight day* he sewed fifty ducats into its cotton wadding (iv) سیاه روز , as او کنیزی است سیاه روز she is an *unfortunate* slave girl (v) روز همه روز , as درمیانِ کاروان روز همه روز ذکرِ ترکان بود among the caravan *the whole day long* there was talk about the Turks (vi) روز افزون , as در شیراز موردِ احترامِ روز افزون گشت at Shiraz he became the focus of *daily-increasing* honour (vii) روز نامه نویس , as روز نامه نویسانِ این ولایت بسیار آزاد هستند the *editors of the newspapers* of this country are extremely free , (viii) بروز دادن یا کردن , as اگرچه بمذهب اقامت در ایران بروز نمی داد امّا در باطن دشمنِ شیعیان بود although during his stay in Persia he did not *give out* (his views), yet at heart he was a hater of the Shias حالا من با بدرفتاریهائیکه در ایّام اقتدار نسبت برعیت و نوکر از شما بروز کرده است نباید در بارهٔ شغلِ وزارت را بشما رجوع کنم still I bearing in mind the evil practices which *have been committed in the light of day*

in the affairs of the peasants and officials by you, during the time of your power must not entrust to you a second time the charge of the Vazirship

60. (*a*) The Reflexive Pronoun خود may be added for the sake of emphasis to any of the Personal Pronouns (either the detached or affixed form) as من خود or خود من or من خودم or خودم &c.

(*b*) It may also be used to strengthen a Substantive or a Demonstrative Pronoun as دشمن خود the enemy himself آن خود it itself پادشاه بذاتِ خود the king himself من بنفسِ خود I myself or it may even be used to intensify itself as خود بخود quite of himself spontaneously

(*c*) It may often be used as equivalent to English *very* denoting identity as آن خود مالِ گم شده بود that was the very property lost.

61 یکی may either be used as a Substantive, or as an Adjective and in all the cases as یکی از مقربانِ خود را بدستِ خود گردن زد with his own hand he beheaded *one* of his courtiers یکی روز پلنگش بدرد *one* day a leopard will rend him از اینان یکی سر برنمی دارد not *one* of these holds up his head یکی را دوستی بود a *certain one* had a friend

62 ماضی استمراری formed by affixing ی to the Past may be used for actions habitually recurring in past time, as یکی از حکما پسر را نهی کردی از خوردنِ بسیار one of the philosophers used to forbid his son from eating too much حاجتِ کریم النفس را شنیدم هرگاه بنامِ غلام بخشش کردی مستِ حق را بجدی I heard of a

generous lord that whenever he gave away something in the name of God, he would kiss his own hand.

63. Two or more compound Adjectives or attributive phrases may be used after Substantives or Verbs without being connected by *izáfat* or coupled by a Conjuction, as نیاز مرد طماع کار شیطان خیال ست Niaz in an avaricious man, devilish in ideas, باید یک نیم تنهٔ زری آبی درشت بدهی بدوزند you must get a blue gold-embroidered jacket made in Rasht, آنجا تیمور آقا تازه جوان - بیست و پنج ساله - خوشگل - پر قوت - همه بیگزادها را زمین زده there Timur Aqa, in the bloom of youth, twenty five years old, handsome, (and) powerful, threw down all the young nobles, در زیر طاق شکسته زنی دیدم نیم مرده برروی زمین دراز کشیده under a broken arch I found a female, half dead, stretched upon the ground, ولی روی همرفته آدمی است در خانه اش باز - سهل القول - پاکیزه اخلاق - صحبت آرا - خندان - زنده دل - عیش دوست - خوش صحبت - خوش گذران on the whole he is a man, hospitable, obliging, well-behaved, sociable, eloquent, full of life, pleasure-loving, amiable, (and) leading a happy life

64. The various uses of the Infinitive Mood (مصدر) in Persian may be illustrated thus (i) بی این دو نفس کشیدن بر من حرام است without these two (things), it is impossible for me to live, در همچو کاری مزد خواستن خوب نیست it is not proper to ask for reward in such a case as this, خوب کشتن نباشد well, there shall be no killing, دزدی کردن برای ما چه شایستگی دارد what aptitude has robbing for us? (ii) جهت آمدن من بخانهٔ شما آن بود که من خواهر زن تو ساعتم را درست داشته و می دارم the cause of my coming to your house was this, that I loved and still do love your

sister-in-law Nisa Khanam شما بر حقّ من بدگمان شده بخیال کُشتن من افتاده بودید having an evil suspicion of me you fell into the design of killing me ایلچی در وقتِ خوردنِ آنها حاضر بوده است The ambassador has been present at the time of eating them (iii) بیک خون گرفتن اورا از زحمتِ خرجِ بیجای شش ماهِ دیگر خلاص کردهام with one blood-letting I have freed him from the trouble of six months' further needless expense: (iv) از صبح تا شام بنوشتنِ عزائم و نسخه مشغول شدم from morning till night I was engaged in writing out charms and prescriptions زبان بریدن را بنشان دادنِ آن بفرنگی ترجیح می دهند they would prefer to cut off their tongue to showing them to a European (v) مزد طی نا کرده خود را ناخوش کردن کار عاقل ندیدم I did not think it wise to make myself ill before settling the recompense: (vi) دریغ باشد کلمهٔ حکمت با اسافل گفتن it would be a pity to speak words of wisdom to them او بنا کرد بعرق ریختن و نگاهِ نیاز آمیز کردن he began to perspire and cast pleading glances (vii) از جواب دادن قاصر نیست she is not wanting in ability to answer

65 Some of the phrases and idioms formed with the word پیش are: (i) پیش از وقت prematurely (ii) کارِ خود را پیش آوردن to bring one's affair forward (iii) پیش خانه camp equipage sent on before: (iv) این ساعت را پیشِ کش توست I make thee a present of this watch: (v) پیش خدمت a body servant or waiter: (vi) پیشنماز a person presiding at prayers (vii) پیشنهاد intention: (viii) پیشواز going out to meet a person of distinction (ix) پیش لنگ کردن to trip up (in wrestling) putting the leg forward and throwing the adversary over the head.

66 The uses of چه in forming Interrogative and Exclamatory sentences may be illustrated thus (i) چه مي دانم what do I know? چه نقشي زدة what tricks have you played? چه مي خواهي بكني what do you want to do? ميانِ صندوق ميمون چه مي كند what is a monkey doing in the box? (ii) اسم و رسم بچه چيزِ من لازم است for what are name and fame necessary to me? تو بي تقصيريِ خود را بچه دليل اثبات مي كني how dost thou prove thy innocence? (iii) اي مرد بتو چه O man what is it to thee? فال گير و رمّال از براي چه what for (is) a soothsayer or astrologer (necessary)? در صورتيكه كارِ تقدير است بر من تقصيري چه when it is the work of destiny, what fault is there to me? (iv) در طرفة العين پاريس خراب شود يعني چه is Paris to be destroyed in the twinkling of an eye or what? شاعر يعني چه is it a poet or what? (v) چه شگوفهاي خوبي what beautiful flowers! چه قدر عطرِ خوب دارد what a delicious scent they have! اين چه خالِ عنبرين است what an amber-coloured mole this is!

67 List of Compound Verbs in Persian with English equivalents —

(i) آب شدن to melt (ii) گوشهٔ ابرو خم كردن to raise the eyebrow (as a sign of contempt) (iii) آبله كوبيدن يا كوبيدن to inoculate, vaccinate (iv) آتش كردن to light a fire; آتش گرفتن to take fire آتش زدن to set fire to (v) با تمام رسيدن to come to end (vi) اثر كردن to make an impression, to understand · (vii) احترام گذاشتن to pay respect to (viii) احتمال رفتن يا داشتن to be probable (ix) احتياط كردن to suspect, fear (x) اخراجِ بلد كردن to exile (xi) ادّعاي داشتن to have claim against (xii) اذن دادن to

authorise (xiii) ارزانی کردن یا داشتن to give, bestow (xiv) استحقار نمودن to hold in contempt (xv) باسیری بردن to make a capture (xvi) اشاره کردن to beckon (xvii) اشاره کردن to point to make a sign (xviii) اشتباه کردن to be mistaken (xix) اصرار کردن to insist (xx) باصلاح آوردن to reform, bring into proper order (xxi) اطلاع دادن to inform اطلاع یافتن to learn, gain information (xxii) اعتبار داشتن to have confidence in (xxiii) افسوس خوردن to regret (xxiv) شهود اقامه کردن to confirm an evidence (xxv) التماس کردن to beg earnestly (xxvi) آماسیده باد افتخار بودن to be puffed up with pride (xxvii) آمد و رفت کردن to have intercourse with to resort to آمد و شد کردن to come and go (xxviii) انجام دادن to make an end of accomplish بانجام رسیدن یا انجام گرفتن to be finished to end (xxix) اوقات تلخی ، بس to have a bitter time of it (xxx) آه کشیدن to sigh

9 Time.

Time is often said to be money but it is more—it is life and yet many who would cling desparately to life think nothing of wasting time. Not that a life of drudgery should be our ideal. Far from it Time spent in innocent and rational enjoyments, in healthy games, in social and family intercourse is well and wisely spent. Games not only keep the body in health, but give a command over the muscles and limbs which cannot be over valued. Moreover there are temptations which strong exercise best enables us to resist. It is the idle who complain they cannot find time to do that which they fancy they wish. In truth people can generally make time for what they choose to do it is not really the time, but the will that is wanting. Idleness is the greatest prodigality in the world it throws away that which is invaluable in respect of its present use, and irreparable when it is past, no power of art or nature being able to recover it. There is a Turkish

proverb that the Devil tempts the busy man, but the idle man tempts the Devil Time, indeed, is a sacred gift, and each day is a little life Know the true value of time, snatch, seize, and enjoy every moment of it.

Often (اکثر) they say (میگویند) that time (وقت) money (زر) is, but (امّا) than this more (بیشتر) is, because (زیراکه) in reality (في الواقع) it is synonymous with life itself (عبارت است از عین حیات) and yet (ولیکن) many persons (بسا اشخاصي) who even (هم) in the state of entire despair (درحالتِ مایوسيِ تام) do not wish (نمي خواهند) the hand (دست) from life (از زندگي) they may wash (بشویند) the precious times (اوقاتِ گرانمایه را) ungrudgingly (بیدریغ) they waste away (ضایع کنند) and any (هیچ) care (پروائي) they do not have (ندارند) I do not say (نمي گویم) that it is necessary (باید) a life purely full of labour (زندگيِ محض پُر مشقّت را) we should follow (اقتدا بنمائیم), nor (نه) my object (مقصودم) this (این) The times (اوقاتی) that them (آنهارا) in pure and rational enjoyments (در مسرّتهاي پاک و بجا) and healthy games (لعبهاي صحت افزا) or in family intercourse (اختلاطِ عیالداري) and social intercourse (معاشرتِ مدني) they spend (بسر مي برند) one might say (میتوان گفت) that well and wisely (بطورِ احسن و به طریقِ معقول) was spent (صرف شد) Manly games (بازیهاي مردانه) not only (نه تنها) bodily health (صحتِ جسماني را) firm (برقرار) keeps (دارد) but (بلکه) to man (انسان را) over (بر) his muscles and limbs (اعصاب و اعضاي خود) such a command (چنان قدرتي) gives (ببخشد) that I am unable (نمي توانم) its uses (فوائدش را), as it ought to be (کما ینبغي), I may explain (شرح بدهم) Moreover

(ملازم بودن) many (بسي) temptations (ابتلا و اغواها) such is that the power of resisting them (قوت باب آوردن آنها) by means of (بواسطهٔ) strong exercise (ورزش سخت) better (خوبتر) is obtained (بهم رسد) The idle are (تنبلانند) who about the shortness of time (از قصر وقت) complain (شكايت مي برند) and they say (مي گويند) that we cannot find time (نمي توانيم فرصتي در يابيم) that the works (كارهايرا) that we wish to do (مي خواهيم بكنيم) we may accomplish (انجام بدهيم) but (وليكن) this is their mere thought (محض مظنّهٔ ايشانست) The truth (امر اين) that is, that when people (مردمان) firm intention (قصد قاطع) on a work (بركاري) make (بكنند) generally (عموماً) for the purpose of accomplishing it (براي انجام دهي آن) they can make time (مي توانند فرصتي دريابند) because (كه) the final cause of that (علّت غائي آن) paucity of time (كمي وقت) not is, but (بلكه) want of desire (عدم خواهش) Idleness (تنبلي) the worst of all prodigalities of the earth surface (بدترين همه اسرافهاي روي زمين) is, because (كه) such a thing (چنان چيزي را) wastes (تلف مي سازد) that in respect of present use (در بارهٔ فوائد موجوده) quite (بس) invaluable (بي بها) and when it passes (بگذرد) a recompense thereof (پاداشي از او) invisible (ناپيدا) inasmuch as (از بسكه) neither the power of art (نه قوّت هنر) nor (نه) the natural power (اقتدار طبيعي) can bring it back (بتواند آنرا باز بيارد) The Turk say (ترك گويند) that to the busy man (مرد مشغول را) from the devil (شيطان) a temptation (وسوسه) and to the devil (شيطانرا) from the idle man (مرد تنبل) Certainly (آري) time one of the sacred gifts is

(یکی از نعمتهای قدسی است) that every day thereof (هرروزی از آن) as though (گویا) a model (نمونهٔ) is of (از) life Of its true value (از معرفت بها و صحیحش) be knowing (با خبرباش) and every moment (لمحه را) snatch (بدست آر) and seize it (غنیمتش شمار) and from it an enjoyment (تمتّعی) take (بردار)

NOTES

68 The Adversative Particles (حروف استدراک) in Persian are امّا - بلکه - لاکن or لکن or لیکن or ولی - and مگر Their uses may be illustrated thus (1) حرفهای شما راست است امّا چه فائده که دل من آرام نمی گیرد your words are true but of what profit are they when my heart is not satisfied ? این حیوان دیروز جو خورده است امّا امروز کاه می خورد this animal ate barley yesterday, but to-day it eats grass , اگر چه سرگذشت من سرگذشت مردی گمنام و کم پایه است امّا منافاتی ندارد although the history of my life is that of an obscure and ordinary individual, still it has no incompatability (ii) میرزای بیمار را دیدم نیم مرده بلکه تمام مرده I found the sick Mirza half dead, nay rather quite dead تیغ و تیر بدو کارگر نمی شود بلکه برنده و اندازنده برمی گردد no sword or arrow would be effective against him, but rather it would turn round against the striker or shooter thereof (iii) زبان فارسی خیلی دشوار است لاکن عجب زبان شیرینی است Persian is a very difficult language, but it is a wonderfully sweet one , مقدّر بود که خزانهٔ بیکران بدست آن دیگری بیفتد لکن از شامت معصیت بیک کیسه پول عوض گشت it was destined that an immense treasure should fall into the hands of that other man but by the adversity of his sins it became changed into a single purse

لیکن این کار را خدا بر نمی دارد but God will not permit this affair دلم برای تو می سوزد ولی چاره نیست my heart burns for thee, but there is no help for it (iv) لی — لو کاری که نکند خویش و قومی نه بر آید مگر دستش که کامرد جوانی دارد she has neither relative nor tribe that the affair should come off through their hands, but the girl has a young man affianced to her همایون با یک لک سوار به استقبال جنگ پیش آمد مگر بخت چنان آب تلخ در جام ریخت که معامله طول کشید Humayun with one lac of horsemen came forward to meet them in battle, but fortune was so deadly against him that the affair became complicated

69. The uses of the word عین may be illustrated thus (i) پسرم در عین طفولیت مرده شد my son died in his very infancy در یکی از خرابها که در عین آبادانی هم بسیار است اسپان را بپاسبانی یکی بگذاشتیم we left our horses in the care of one in one of the ruined houses that were found in numbers even in the inhabited parts themselves, پادشاه از عین رحمت فرمود the king said in great condescension آنوقت دروغ تو عین راست خواهد شد on that occasion your false statement would appear as truth itself; (ii) اسپ شما بعینه همچو اسپ من است your horse resembles exactly that of mine; آن درویش در سر و وضع بعینه مانند من بود the darvish was just like me in figure and appearance (iii) پاریس را در طرفة العین زیر و زبر می توانم کرد I can destroy Paris in the twinkling of an eye (iv) در حضور اعیان دهانم را با طلا انباشت in the presence of the nobles he filled my mouth with gold

70 Examples of the uses of بس and بسا are (i) بس نامور بزیر زمین دفن کرده اند many famous men have been buried

beneath the earth , صد تا کلاغ را یک سنگ بس است one stone is enough for a hundred crows , جوابِ من این است و بس this is my answer and enough , این قدر حریص و راغبِ دزدي و دلکي شدن بس است to have been so far covetous and given to robbery is enough از دیدنِ کنیزک بگذرید که کاري بس دشوار است give up the idea of seeing the slave for it is a very difficult task (ii) بسا نام نیکوي پنجاه سال many a good name of fifty years

71 Arabic Comparatives and Superlatives are formed on the measure of اَفْعَل , as from حسن we have احسن , from جلیل we have اَجَلّ (for اجلل) more or most glorious , from کبیر we have اکبر greater or greatest

72 The particle هم may be used—(i) in the sense of '*too, also*', as تو هم ایستادهٔ تماشا ميکني you, too, are standing and looking at , عجوزه او هم راضي شده بشعور قول داده است she, too, having foolishly consented, has given you pormise (ii) in the sense of '*again*' , as پرسیدم زود هم رفتم I asked and went out again immediately , فرّاشها قدري هم نزدیکتر مي آیند the farrashes again come a little nearer (iii) in the sense of '*even*' , as از آن وقت تا حال هم پيِ غابیر مي گشتم from that time even to this I was going about after that sieve , فردا باز ازین هم سخت‌ترش را خواهم گفت to-morrow I shall talk to her even more severely than this (iv) in the sense of '*as well*' , as بقولِ شما باید این مرد مبلغ دیگر هم باز بشما تعارف بدهد to your saying this man should give you some extra sum as well , بفرمائید این مرد یک خلعتي هم باز بدهد command this man to give him a robe as well (v) for the sake of *emphasis* , as من دیگر مثلِ تو پسرِ برادر را هم نخواهم I have

no further need of such a nephew as you هم درآن حال مرباز شده سيرزا آقا داخل مي شود at that very moment the door opens and Timur Aqa enters (vi) in the sense of *both and* as هم سعادت هم حرمت و هم صواب است it is both a duty and a pleasure هم سعادت درحسب و هم سهرياري درنسب you possess both a descent from the Prophet and royal blood (vii) to form several compounds as همخوابه a bed fellow همراه a fellow-traveller همسايه a neighbour همسر equal همشهري a fellow citizen همشيره a sister همدم a companion همپايه colleague همقدمت a fellow servant همراز a confidant همزاد twins همسبق a class fellow

73 When the same Preposition governs two or more Nouns, it is usually expressed before the first Noun and remains understood before the others as من مي مانم باآه و نال و درد و غم I shall be left with sighs and lamentation and pain and grief ما خواستيم با رشوه و التماس و الابه دفع بلا كنيم we wished to ward off this misfortune by bribe and entreaty and penitence

74. In modren Persian the plural termination may be added to the last word of a string of two or more words joined together by the Conjunction و or by an *izáfat* as ديده و ... ها things seen and thought of اين گرسنه چشم لقمه رباي بي شرم و حياها these hungry-eyed, morsel-robbing shameless ones ديده و شنيدها things seen and heard.

75. The Preterite is often used to express an action just completed as گفت حاجي ترا دلاك باشي خود كردم he said 'Haji, I appoint you my chief barber' من براي ديگري چاه كندم خودم بچاه افتادم I dug a pit for another and have myself fallen into the well.

men of the district my enemy حالا بگو به چهرم ما که را وکیل معیّن بکنیم now tell me whom we shall appoint our pleader

78. *(a)* The Dative may depend (i) upon a Transitive Verb as ایشانرا مدد کردند they assisted them حکیمی پسران خود را پند همی داد a philosopher continually advised his sons: (ii) upon an Intransitive Verb as پدرم بهشت رسیده باشد my father will have reached paradise ملک را حسن تدبیر او موافق آمد his excellent plan seemed suitable to the king

(b) The Dative may denote *for* as مرا این قطع زمین خرید he bought this plot of land for me دختر بچّه ها را زیبنده نیست پیش بزرگان همچو حرف بزنند it is not becoming for young girls to speak in this way before their elders.

(c) The Dative may denote *possession* as مرا یکی آشنا هست I have an acquaintance این چراغ را فائده چیست what is the advantage of this lamp?

79 List of Compound Verbs (continued) (i) بار کردن to load (a beast of burden) (ii) باطل کردن to frustrate باطل شدن to be in vain: (iii) بدگمان بردن to think evil of بدنام کردن to defame: (iv) بزرگی کردن to make a show of importance (v) بنا کردن to begin to do: (vi) بیان کردن to explain, بیان شدن to be explained: (vii) برپا شدن to stand up پا کشیدن to go off (on foot) (viii) پا پوش برای شیطان دوختن to sew slippers for the devil, to deceive the cleverest (ix) پاک باختن to lose all: (x) پنهان کردن to hide پنهان شدن to be hidden (xi) پیدا کردن to discover (xii) تازه کردن to refresh (xiii) تأمّل کردن to reflect (xiv) تبسّم کردن to smile (xv) تجاهل فرمودن to pretend ignorance (xvi) تصدیق کردن

to verify. (xvii) تصدّق کردن to forgive (xviii) تصدیق نمودن to agree with (xix) تعارف فرستادن to send a present (xx) تعهّد کردن to bind oneself. (xxi) تغیّر دادن to change تغیّر یافتن to be changed (xxii) تفنگ انداختن to fire a gun, to shoot (xxiii) تکذیب کردن to give the lie (to any one) (xxiv) تکان دادن to give a shake, to push, تکان خوردن to be pushed, to receive a shock (xxv) تکمیل کردن to perfect, complete (xxvi) تکیه نمودن to rely upon: (xxvii) تلافی مافات کردن to make up for a loss (xxix) تلف کردن to dissipate (xxx) تمارض کردن to feign (illness) (xxxi) تن درضا دادن to submit to fate. (xxxii) تهمت بستن یا انداختن to throw suspicion, accuse. (xxxiii) تهنیت کردن to congratulate (xxxiv) ثابت کردن to establish, prove, بثبوت رسیدن to be established

10 The Barber of Baghdad—I.

In the reign of the great Khalifa Harunur-Rashid, there lived in the city of Baghdad, a celebrated barber of the name of Yusuf He was famous for the steadiness of his hand, and could shave or trim a beard or whiskers with his eyes blindfolded There was not a man of fashion at Baghdad who did not employ him, and he had such a run of business that at length he became very proud and insolent Fire-wood was always scarce and dear at Baghdad, and it happened one day that a poor wood-cutter, ignorant of the character of Yusuf, stopped at his shop to sell him a bundle of wood which he had just brought from a distance on his donkey Yusuf immediately offered him a certain price for *all the wood* that was upon the donkey The wood-cutter agreed, unloaded his beast and asked for the money "You have not given me all the wood yet," said the barber "I must have your wooden pack-saddle as part of the bargain that was our agreement" "How!" said the other in great amazement, "who ever heard of such a bargain? It is impossible"

But after many words the over-bearing barber seized the pack saddle, wood and all and sent away the poor peasant in great distress The wood cutter then ran to the Qazi and stated his grievance, but the Qazi was one of the barber's customers and refused to hear the case Then he went to a higher judge he also patronised Yusuf and made light of the complaint. The poor wood-cutter was not disheartened but forthwith employed a scribe to write a petition to the Khalifa himself which he himself handed over to the Khalifa on Friday the day when he went in state to the mosque The Khalifa's punctuality in reading petitions was well-known and it was not long before the wood-cutter was called to his presence When he approached the Khalifa, he knelled down and kissed the ground and then folding his arms before him he respectfully awaited the decision of his case. "Friend' said the Khalifa 'the barber has *words* on his side your have *equity* on yours. The law must be defined by words and agreements must be made by words. The law must have its course, or it is nothing and agreements must be kept, or there would be no good faith between man and man. Therefore the barber must keep all the wood that he took from you Then calling the wood-cutter close to him the Khalifa whispered something in his ears and sent him away quite satisfied.

During (در) the time of (ایام) the caliphate of (خلافت) the great Khalifa (خلیفهٔ معظم) the noble Harunur Rashid (هارون الرشید مکرم) in Baghdad (در بغداد) a barber (دلاکی) was of the name of Yusuf (یوسف نام) a skilful and expert master (استادی ماهر و چیره دست) such that (که) blind folded (چشم بسته) he used to shave (سر تراشیدی) and used to trim the whiskers (موچه می زدی) No man of fashion in Baghdad remained (هیچ قشنگی در بغداد نماند) whose head (که سرش را) he did not shave (نتراشد). From (از) the excess of (کثرت) buyers (مشتریان) and the crowding at (of) the shop (ازدحام دکان) at length (آخرکار) pride (مغروری) and insolence (گستاخی) in

(ده) the superlative degree (صیغهٔ تفضیل) to him (درار) happened (عارض شد) May it not remain hidden (مخفی نماند) that fire-wood (هیزم) always (همیشه) in Baghdad scarce (کمیاب) and dear (گران) was It so happened (=by chance از قضا or قضا را) one day (روزی) a poor wood-cutter (هیزمکشِ غریبی) of the character of Yusuf (از عادتِ یوسف) ignorant (بی خبر) a load of fire-wood (بارِ هیزمی) upon the ass (برخر), from a distant road (راهِ دور) in front of (بمقابلِ) his shop (دکانش) stopped (را ایستاد) that his woods (چوبهای خود را) to him he may sell (بفروشد) Immediately on seeing him (بمجرد دیدنش) Yusuf said O such a one (ای فلان), a certain sum (فلان مبلغ) I am giving (می دهم) and whatever (هرچه) wood (چوب) upon thy ass is (برپشتِ خرِ توست) I am buying (می خرم) The wood-cutter agreed (قبول کرد) and having unloaded the ass (بارِ خر را بر زمین نهاده) the price (بها) he asked (خواست) Yusuf said thou yet all the woods (هنور همهٔ چوبها را) didst not give (تحویل ندادی) The pack-saddle of thy ass (پالانِ خرت را), which of wood (از چوب) is, thou must give (باید تحویل بدهی) for that too (هم) is included in the transaction (داخلِ معاملهٔ ما ست) The wood-cutter amazed (سراسیمه) cried out (بانگ برآورد), that the pack-saddle of the ass, that is (یعنی) what (چه) ? It can never be (هرگز نمی شود) The timber of the burning-wood (چوبِ هیزم) where (کجا) and the timber of the pack-saddle of the ass where Such bargain (بیع و فروخت) not seen (ندیده) and not heard (نشنیده) ! After many words (گفتگوی بسیار) and high contention (مناقشهٔ بسیار) that

barber oppressive (ستمگر) both the load of the ass and the pack-saddle of the ass (هم بارِ خر و هم پالانِ خر را) seized (بگرفت) and the wood-cutter (را) distressed (پریشان حال) and empty handed (دست تہی) sent away (روانه کرد) The wood-cutter before the Qazi ran (دوید) and against (بر) the barber com- plained (تظلّم بر آورد) But (امّا) the Qazi who one of the buyers of Yusuf was, did not give him justice (بداد او نرسید) Then the wood-cutter near (بنزد) the chief Qazi (قاضی القضات) went. He also (نیز or هم) a buyer of Yusuf was he did not pay any attention (هیچ التفاتی ننمود) The wood-cutter was not disheartened (= did not give up the contest از میدان بر نرفت) but rather (بلکه) without losing a moment (بی توقف یکدقیقه) near a scribe (نزد محرری) ran, and a petition (عریضه) in the name of (بنام) the Khalifa caused to be written (نویسانید) and on Friday (روز جمعه) at the time of Khalifa's going to the mosque (در وقت تشریف بردن خلیفه به مسجد) himself (بالذات) to (به) Khalifa's hand he gave (داد) The Khalifa's administering of justice and equity (دادرسی و معدلت خلیفه را) being heard (شنیده) comes (آمد) and it was not long (بسی بر نیامد) that the wood-cutter (را) to the presence (بحضور) he called (طلبید) The wood-cutter when to the presence of the Khalifa came, kneeling down (زانو زده) the ground of servitude (زمین خدمت) kissed (بوسید) and respectfully (مؤدب), hand upon the breast (دست بر سینه) awaiting the order of the Khalifa (منتظرِ حکم خلیفه) he stood (بایستاد) The Khalifa said O friend (ای یارِ عزیز) in this claim (دعوی) as to the wording (لفظا)

the right (حق) with (با) Yusuf and as to the signification (معنا) with thee is (توست) But as (چون) the commandments of (احکام) the law (شریعت) by word (بلفظ) standing (قایم) and the knot of (عقد) sale (بیع) and buying (شری) with word current (جاري) becomes (مي شود), then word in place of (در محل) esteem (اعتبار) is; and it is necessary (باید) the law may have its course (اجرا یابد) and agreements (شرط و پیمان) to fulfilment (به ایفاء) may reach (برسد), otherwise (و گرنه) the commandments of the law (احکام شرع) without support (بي قوام) and the affairs of the people (امور عامه) without order (بي نظام) becomes, and good faith of (اعتماد) individuals (افراد و احاد) with one another (بیکدیگر) does disappear (از میان برمي خیزد), therefore (لهذا) the barber ought to keep all the woods that he has taken from thee (باید همهٔ چوبهایرا که از تو گرفته است بدارد) Then at that time (آنگاه) the Khalifa the wood-cutter (را) by his own side (در نزد خود) called (خواند) and whispered a few words to him (سرگوشي نمودی چند باو بگفت) and the wood-cutter (را) cheerful (خرم) and satisfied (خرسند) he sent away (روان کرد)

NOTES.

80 Some of the phrases and idioms formed with the word 'دست' are (1) تهي دست indigent, چیره دستي expertnees, victory, دراز دست tyrant, زیر دست a subject, subordinate, سبک دست expert, سردست ready at hand (11) دست افزار a tool, دستاویز a voucher, bond, دست برد victory, superiority, دست برنجن a bracelet, دست پاچه precipitately, دست تنگ indigent, دستخط signature, دست درازي

tyranny دست رس power close at hand دست رامع hire, pay دست فروس a pedlar دست کار an artificer دستگاه power a factory دستگاه مکر فریبی a factory of cheating and tricks دستمال a handkerchief دستمال گردن neck-cloth دست مایه stock-in-trade دست مزد wages دستیاب procurable (iii) اگر دستش باید if it is possible for him, if he obtains it از دستم چه بر می آید what can I do ? علي دير دستگرفته هيد است thou art harking counsel very late اين قدرها دستگير تان بشود که show yourselves at least sufficiently warned to

81 (*a*) The Imperative stem may sometime has the force of an *Agent* as دزد (a robber) from دزديدن to rob : or of the *Passive Participle*, as الشال (scattered) from السالیدن to scatter or more generally of the *Verbal Noun* as سوز (burning) from سوختن to burn شکیب (patience) from شکیب دین to be patient رامع (dist ess) from رامع ش to be distressed

(*b*) It may be used to form compound words (i) by connecting it with the Past Stem as گفتگو conversation جستجو search (ii) by annexing the Negative Imperative (نهي) of the same Verb as [illegible] tumult دارمدار hesitation (iii) by connecting two Imperative Stems by و as پیچ و تاب writhing گیر و دار bustle خورد و برس food and raiment (iv) by connecting two Imperative Stems by an الف as تکاپو bustle, hurry (v) by ann xing it to a Preposition or Adverb as پيس کش a present زیرانداز a *hukka* carpet (vi) by annexing it to a Noun or Pronoun as آتش انگیز fire-raising دلاویز heart-enticing خود فروش conceited.

82 In modern Persian the ي of indefiniteness is sometimes added to the qualifiying word, or to the مضاف اليه, as اختلاف عظيمي a great dis-agreement, ميل غريبي a strange inclination, حاكم مملكتي a provincial governor, آب خوش‌گواري a wholesome water, حكيم خوبي a good physician درد عجيبي an extraordinary pain, حرف بشماري a word to be counted, شهرت و شان عظيمي a great reputation and sensation

83 The particle تا is used—(i) to introduce a subordinate clause, expressing a hope or enquiry, as ببينم تا خدا باري چه كند let me see what God does with him, بگو تا چه خواهي گفت ask (him) what he wishes to say (ii) to denote a sudden event as تا موش سر از سوراخ بر آورد گربه اش در ربود the mouse raised its head out of the hole when suddenly the cat carried it away, هم چنان برسر پا ماندم تا روشنائي روز در گذشت I continued thus upon my legs, when suddenly the light of day disappeared (iii) to signify a beginning, as تا از تو جدا شدم بخودش بيگانه ام I have become a stranger to myself since the time I was separated from thee (iv) to mark an end, as تا چشم كار مي كرد سياه چادر بود as far as the eye can reach, it was black with tents. ملك الشعراء تا باستراباد صحيح و سالم رسيد the royal poet reached sound and safe as far as Astrabad, از ديروز تا كنون خرج اسب را كشيده ام since yesterday till now I have borne the expenses of the horse (v) to show cause or purpose, as كتابهاي خود را بعاريت داد تا از آنها مستفيد شوم he lent me his books that I might be benifited by them بدر خانهٔ ملك الشعراء رفتم تا به بينم چه خبر است I went to the entrance to the royal poet's house that I might find out what the news was, خنده وكلاهش

را برداشت تا برود he took up his cloak and cap in order to go out (vi) to denote the immediate compliance with an order or the realisation of the purpose in view as فراشِ باد صبا را گفت تا فرش زمرّدین بگسترد he told the chamberlain of the east wind and it immediately spread out the green carpet بحار و معالجه لمحه تا در اندک مدّتي پر و بالم وصله و بسته باشت he applied remedies and in a short time my feet and limbs were restored (vii) to convey a warning as زنهار تا از پشتِ بام با همسایگان گفتگو و مراوده نکنند beware lest they hold conversation and communication over the roof with the neighbours (viii) to convey the meaning of *between* as گفتن تا کردن خیلی فرق دارد there is a good deal of difference between saying and doing میان هر دو از زمین تا آسمان فرق است between these two there is a difference of heaven and earth (ix) to introduce Numerals before certain Nouns as میان این جنگل دویست تا رفیقهاي من دله افتاده اند In the midst of this jungle two hundred of my comrades are lying in wait توي مزرعه دو تا صندوقِ گُنده است there are a couple of heavy chests in the earth

84. (*a*) As an Adjective فلان precedes the Substantive as شاید بطرفِ فلان ده رفته باشد perhaps he has gone to such and such a village چه گفت ترا در فلان امر what did he say to thee on such and such a matter? بگویند که تاروردي هم ! ب فلان هنر است they will say Tarwardi is too a man who has done so and so

(*b*) As a Substantive it is applicable mostly to persons and is indeclinable, as خیری کن ای فلان do some good, O so and so خاطرِ عزیزِ فلان the respected feelings of so and so, فلاني خود را ببهاي ... کرده است such a one has bid herself في فلان dated such and such

89 The Passive Participle (اسم مفعول) is used—(i) to form the Compound Tenses, and in the formation of the passive Verb in all its parts, as آمده است he has come, نوشته بود he had written, ساخته باشد he may have made, کشته شدن to be killed (ii) in place of a Statical Participle (اسم حالیه) as a Predicative Adjective, as همه ایگان دویده آمدند the neighbours came running او را خفته افتاده یافتند they found him lying asleep, کلاه را در گوشهٔ چادر بخاک سیاه افتاده دیدم I found the cap lying on the ground in a corner of the tent (iii) as the Conjunctive Past (ماضي معطوفه), as آنگاه در گوشهٔ آسیا افتاده مردم را مي فريبد then having set up for himself in this corner of Asia he has been cheating the people, بانو آستین بر زده چشم براه من نشسته بود the chief wife, having pulled up her sleeve, was waiting for me with great impatience. (iv) as a Noun Substantive, as در باب دیده و شنیدهاي خود بمحض اشارت نمودم as regards things seen and heard by me I contented myself by only referring to them, از آن کرده پشیمان شد he repented him of that deed; خفته را خفته کي کند بيدار how can one sleeper awake another? (v) as an Adjective, as دزد نا گرفته سلطان است an uncaught thief is a king; دالانش تاریک و دراز و نروفته its courtyard was dark, long, and unswept, خاگینهٔ شب مانده an omelette remaining of the previous night, زن سر کرده the chief wife (vi) as an Affix to form compounds, as جهان دیده experienced, صاحبزاده of good birth, noble, جنگ آزموده tried in war

90 List of compound Verbs (continued) (i) جا انداختن to establish, arrange, set in order, بجا آوردن to fulfil (ii) جاروب کردن to sweep (iii) جاری ساختن to allow to flow, to start (iv) جهان

آمدن to be reduced to extremities جان کلاشدن to sacrifice one's life جان کندن to harrow the soul (v) جدا ساختن to separate (vi) جسارت رفتن to report back (vii) جلوی کسی رفتن to go before جلو گرفتن to stop (viii) جمع کردن to assemble collect جمع شدن to be reassured جمع زدن to add up figures (ix) جنگ آوردن to wage war (x) جوش خوردن to solder بجوش آمدن to become heated or excited (xi) چاپ کردن to print (xii) چادر زدن to pitch tents (xiii) چارت زدن to take siesta (xiv) چاره کار را جستن to seek a remedy in the matter (xv) قلیان چاق کردن to light the pipe or *hukka* (xvi) چراغ گرفتن to snuff the candle, چراغ کشتن to put out the light (xvii) چرک را گرفتن to clean off dirt (xviii) چشم داشتن to hope چشم دوختن to fix the eye on چشم زدن to injure by the evil eye چشم برهم زدن to close the eye to (xix) چخماق سرپا کردن to cock a gun (xx) چوب خوردن to be beaten (xxi) بچیزی نشمردن to hold cheap; (xxii) حاضر شدن to be present or ready حاضر کردن to prepare bring (xxiii) حال آمدن to come to oneself; (xxiv) حالی شدن to become clear حالی کردن to make clear or present to the mind of another; (xxv) حرام کردن to make unlawful, نمک حرامی کردن to be faithless (xxvi) حرف زدن to speak حرف مفت زدن to speak nonsense بحرف بودن to be at the word of obey; (xxvii) حساب بردن to treat with consideration بحساب آوردن to pay attention, take into account (xxviii) حظ کردن to enjoy (xxix) حفظ کردن to protect (xxx) حق داشتن to have a right; (xxxi) حکمرانی کردن to govern (xxxii) حلیت را کردن to beg leave to go (xxxiii) حوصله کردن to have patience, contain oneself.

11. Animals of Arabia

Arabia, in the opinion of the naturalist, is the genuine and original country of THE HORSE, the climate is most propitious, not indeed to the size, but to the spirit and swiftness, of that generous animal The merit of the Barb, the Spanish, and the English breed, is derived from a mixture of Arabian blood The Beduins preserve, with superstitious care, the honours and the memory of the purest race, the males are sold at a high price, but the females are seldom alienated, and the birth of a noble foal is esteemed, among the tribes, as a subject of joy and mutual congratulation These horses are educated in the tents, among the children of the Arabs, with a tender familiarity, which trains them in the habits of gentleness and attachment They are accustomed only to walk and gollop, their sensations are not blunted by the incessant abuse of the spur and the whip, their powers are reserved for the moments of flight and pursuit, but no sooner do they feel the touch of the hand or the stirrup, than they dart away with the swiftness of the wind, and if their rider be dismounted in the rapid career, they instantly stop till he has recovered his seat In the sands of Africa and Arabia, THE CAMEL is a sacred and precious gift That strong and patient beast can perform, without eating and drinking, a journey of several days The larger breed of camels is capable of transporting the weight of a thousand pounds, and the dromedary, of a lighter and more active frame, out-strips the fleetest courser in the race Alive or dead, almost every part of the camel is serviceable to man, her milk is plentiful and nutritious, the young and tender flesh has the taste of veal, a valuable salt is extracted from the urine, the dung supplies the deficiency of fuel, and the long hair, which falls each year and is renewed, is coarsely manufactured into the garments, the furniture, and the tents of the Beduins

Those who (آنانکه) with (از) the science of animals (علم حیوانات) a connexion (سررشته) have (دارند) are upon it (برآنند) that for the horse (اسب را) birth-place (مولد) genuine (اصلي) and home (زاد بوم) original (حقيقي) Arabia (عربستان) is, because (چه) the climate of that country (آب و هواي آن ولايت)

upon the spirit (همّت) and swiftness of (تیزي) that noble animal (۲ ۸ آن حیوان) an effect (اثري) has (دارد) than all (از همه) more propitious (موافق تر), although (اگرچه) indeed (في الواقع) upon its size (بر جسامت) not so (نه چنان) The merit that (۲ ۱۱ بد) for the breed of the horses of Africa or Spain or England (نسل اسپهاي افريقه يا اسپانيا يا انگلستان را) obtainable (حاصل) is the stock thereof (مايهٔ آن) mixture of Arabian blood (خلط نژاد تازي) is The Beduins (بدويان) the pedigree of (نسبنامه) the blood horse (اسپ اصيل را) memorising (بحفظ آورند) for (براي) preserving of their honours (نگاه داشتن اعتبار نسل آنها) an attention (اهتمامي) bordering on superstition (معروف به تعصّب) make use of (بكار مي برند) The male (نريان را) at a high price (بمبلغ خطيري) they sell (مي فروشند) but seldom (كمتر) it is (مي باشد) that the female (ماديان را) they alienate (از دست مي دهند). Among the tribes (مابين قبائل) the birth of a noble foal (پيدائش كره اصيلي) the cause of (۲ و ۳ -) joy and mutual congratulation (شادماني و مباركبادي يكديگر) becomes (مي گردد) The horses in the tents of the tribe (چارپايان قبيله) in the company of the children of the Arabs (در - ده بچه‌هاي اعرابيان) with (با) such (چندين) familiarity (انس) and tenderness (شفقت) training (تربيت) they obtain (يابند) that the habit of gentleness and attachment (خوي ملايمت و مصاحبت) in their disposition (طبع ۲ را) occupier (جاگشتي) becomes. Them (ايشانرا) only (محض) in (به) walking and golloping (قدم و سرهلو رفتن) habit (عادت) they give (مي دهند) and with (با) untimely (بيگاه) using of the spur

and nutritious (مقوّی) is and the tender flesh of (گوشتِ ملایم) the young camels (شتر بچّه‌ها or بچّه شترها) like veal (مثلِ گوشتِ گوساله) From its urine (از بولِ آن) a valuable salt (نمکِ نفیس قیمتی) they extract (بر می کشند) and its dung (پشکلِ آن) supplies the deficiency of fuel (تقصیرِ هیزم را تلافی می نماید) and from its long hair (از پشمِ دراز آن) which each year (هر سال) falls (می افتد) and is renewed (بارِ دیگر بر می خیزد) the Beduins their garment and furniture and tents (رخت و اسباب و چادرهای خود) they manufacture (می سازند)

NOTES

83 Some of the phrases and idioms formed with the word سر are (i) دکاندار سراپایم را نگریست the shop-keeper stared me from head to foot (ii) سرآمدِ اقران prominent among contemporaries: (iii) ترکی سرت می شود do you know Turkish? (iv) آمدید سرِ من you fell upon me (v) به سرِ من فرستادی you set (him) at me از سرِ ما رد شد he has left us (vii) سرِ شام at the evening meal (viii) سرِ ناهار at breakfast time (ix) در سرِ دو سال at the end of two years; (x) سر و برگ means of subsistence (xi) سرِ وقت a convenient time

84. (*a*) Noun Clauses expressing that something *is* or *should be* may be illustrated thus: (i) گفت با تو حرفی دارم he said, (that) he had (lit. has) something to say to me کسی نگوید دوغِ من ترش است no one says that his butter milk is sour (ii) دیدم که هنرش از قبیلِ اسرار نیست I saw that he made no mystery of his knowledge دیدم با آن حال جای مقال نیست I found, (that) under the circumstances there was (lit. is) no opportunity of a talk (iii) یقین می‌دانم

جهلش بعلمي نيفزود I know for certain, (that) he has not improved (lit did not improve) his ignorance by a bit of knowledge, ندانست که وي بهرام است he did not know that he was (lit is) Bahram: (iv) پنداشتم که رانم شکسته است I thought, that my thigh was (lit has been) broken, خارش پنداشت احترازِ وی از زخم سنانِ اوست the thorn-bush thought (that) his avoidance of it was (lit is) due to its thorn wounds (v) ترسیدم که دهان بخون آلایند I feared that they would pollute their mouth with blood, ترسم نرسي بكعبه اي اعرابي I fear, (that) thou wilt not reach the Ka'ba, O Arab! (vi) امیدوارم که بنده نیز ازین نعمتها بی بهره نشوم I hope, that I also may participate in these bounties, تو توقّع داشتي غير ازين شود did you expect, (that) other than this would be? طامع مدار کزو کام دل بدست آري do not expect that thou wilt gain thy desire from him (vii) حاکم فرمود که دستش ببرند the judge ordered them to cut off his hand, اشارت فرمود تا پیشم بردند he made a sign and they brought me before him (viii) خواستم تدبیر و تزویر بیفزایم و اشرفی دیگر ازو بربایم I wished to continue the deceit a little longer and to extract another gold piece from him, مي خواهند که این دولت بدختره وصال ندهد they desire that this wealth may not be obtained by the girl: (ix) التماس آن دارم که در خدمتِ سرکار کارم معیّن و مواجبم مشخّص و بریده باشد I humbly request, that my duties in your honour's service should be made known and my wages defined and fixed, ملک را شاید که گناه کار را زنده نگذارد it is right that the king should not leave the criminal alive, نگر تا مرا برخویشتن نگزیني see to it that you do not prefer me to yourself.

(b) Noun Clauses introduced by Interrogative or Exclama-

tory words, may be illustrated thus نميدانم چرا جواب نداد I do not know why he did not answer نميدانيم آيا مرده است يا زنده we do not know whether he is alive or dead كسي نمي داند كه انجام كار چگونه باشد no one knows how the matter will end بسر برادر شما تيمور آقا به نبين چه قدر از شما بي واهمه است see how much unmindful of you your nephew Timur A ja is نفهميديم چه شد كار ساي بكجا رسيد we have not understood what has happened nor how matters have gone with them نميدانم چه بكنم I don't know what I should do نميدانم با چه زباني شكر الطاف و احسان او كنم I do not know how shall I express my gratitude for the kindness and favour he shows me.

85 The paces of the horse are expressed by—(i) نرم رفتن to walk (ii) لك رفتن to trot (iii) يرقه رفتن to amble (iv) يورطمه رفتن to canter (v) سرشور رفتن يا دويدن to gallop.

86. **Time till when** is expressed by G till as تا حال شنيده نشده است G اين دراي this has not been heard in Persia till now

در گوشهٔ باستادم تا غلغله و هايهوي كاروانيان فرو I stood in a corner till the noise and out-cry of the people of the caravan *had* subsided تا اورا نكشم ولايت آرام نمي گيرد دل حويم هم بجا نمي آيد till I have not killed him the province will get no rest, and my mind too cannot settle down بيست سال است تا ما اين خر را بار ببينيم it is twenty years that we have seen this ass in his possession

87 Sometimes **the Plural** conveys the idea of *many* or *excess* as مدتها سر او را بدلخواه او تراشيده بود during an excessively long space of time he had shaved him to his heart s satisfaction بعد از اظهار شادمانيهاي بي اختيار after an enthusiastic expression

of excessive transports on his part , سالها سوداي آن در دماغ مي پختم for many years my brain was filled up with this idea , رنگها پرید زهرها درید colours of many were paled, and the biles of many were rent asunder

88 Modern Persian admits of adding the plural termination to the end of *genitive phrases* which have lost their connecting *izáfat*, as from بچهٔ سگ we have بچهٔ سگها or بچهٔ سگان 'puppies', from سیخ کباب we have سیخ کبابها 'spitted kabobs', from تخم مرغ we have تخم مرغها 'eggs', from بچهٔ گربه we have بچه گربها 'kittens', and from شاگرد آشپز we have شاگرد آشپزان 'scullions'

89 The Particles expressing *comparison* are—(۱) چون or چو - همچو and چنین, as از سقف خانه اش دانه‌هاي گندم چون شهاب ثاقب از آسمان زیران گشت from the roof of his house grains of wheat, like glittering stars from heavens, poured down, در پاي آن کوه چشمهٔ آب بود بصفا چون رخ ازهٔ تازه رويانِ گلعذار و بحلاوت چون سخن شکرلبانِ شیرین گفتار at the foot of that mountain there was a spring of water, in purity like the countenance of the fresh-faced and rosy-cheeked, and in sweetness like the words of the honey-lipped and sweet-speaking, بجثّه چو پیل و بحمله چو شیر in bulk like an elephant, and in attack like a lion, همچو ابریشم زرد شود she will become yellow like silk, هرگز نه ایران را چنین شاهي و نه هرگز شاهِ ایران را چنین حکیمي بوده است never has there been in Persia a King like this, and never has the King of Persia had a physician like this (ii) مانند and مثل, as سلاحداران مانندِ جوجگانِ کبک بدیستري و آنسوي پراگنده شدند the armed guards like young partridges dispersed themselves in all directions, هر روز پارچه‌اي یخ زیاد مانندِ کوه از شمال

مي آرد it (the river) brings down daily many pieces of ice like mountains, from the north ماه پاره مثل کوچکي دارد طفلِ يک he has a little son like a piece of the moon مثل بسي دیوانه است مانده کم little remains to make me go mad like Majnun to turn my head towards the hill and the desert و بیابان لیم سر بکوه (iii) بسان آسا سار مثل رنگ کردار and ... برق بسانِ it flashed like the lightning رعدوید بسانِ it roared like the thunder سرمه آسا collyrium-like شیر آسا like a lion خاکسار (like earth) humble گرگسار wolf-like دیوسار demon-like ماهوش moon-like ; به رنگِ سبزه بر خود دمید it دهلي غنچه وش a mouth like a rose-bud shone forth like the verdure فرشته کردار angel like in action بکردارِ شیر حمله آورد he made an attack just like a lion خواجه وار بر سر مسند نشاند he made him sit at the head of the throne like a lord غلام وار بخدمت استاد he stood in attendance like a slave

90 When the Principal Clause in a Conditional Sentence makes a direct statement, its Verb may either be in the Present Tense or in the Aorist as (i) اگر دنیا عبارت ازین است بجز خواب و خیال نیست if the world means this it is but a dream or a fancy اگر تو روباهي ما پدرِ روباهانیم if thou art a fox, we are fathers of foxes اگر یار اهل است کار سهل است if the friend is worthy the undertaking is easy : (ii) اگر ما مردان پنجاه تومانی بدست آریم خود را مالکِ کوه نور مي شماریم if we men scrape up some fifty tumans, we consider ourselves the possessor of the Mountain of Light اگر تقصیر ندارند چرا میگریزند تا کم مي شوند if they are not in fault why do they run away and hide ? اگر صدا برآید شکمت را مي درم if thou utter a sound, I will tear thy bowels.

91 In a Conditional Sentence, referring to Present or Future time, when the statement made in the Principal Clause is *conditional* or *suppositional*, then (i) an Aorist in the Conditional Clause may be followed by an Aorist or Future in the Principal Clause, as اگر گم شود تاوانش بدهم if it were lost, I should compensate for it, اگر همه یاد کنم خود کتابی باشد if I were to mention them all, they would themselves be a book, اگر این کار آن طوری که من می گویم سر بگیرد جز اینکه پولِ زیادی گیرم خواهد افتاد در شهر شهرتِ من بعرشِ برین خواهد رسید if this business turns out in the way I say, in addition to my getting more money, my renown in the town will reach the highest heavens (ii) or a Past in the Conditional Clause may be followed by an Aorist or Present (both in a future sense) in the Principal Clause, as اگر برادرم آمد بگویم if my brother comes (lit came) I will tell him, اگر ممکن شد اقرارِ [illegible] را [illegible] سرِ شاهدها می اندازیم if it is possible, we will postpone the woman's statement till after the witnesses, اگر بخت یاری کرد هرچه آوردی باید برابرِ خودت بمن [illegible] بدهی if fortune attend thee, whatever thou bringest thou must share equally with me (iii) or a Past (or Past Imperfect) in both the Clauses, as اگر رفتی جان بسلامت بردی و اگر خفتی مردی if thou shouldst proceed, thou wouldst preserve thy life, and if thou shouldst sleep, thou wouldst die, اگر هرکس پرده از کارِ خود برمی داشتی و چنانچه هست می نمودی آنوقت معلوم شدی که دنیا چیست و اهلش که if each man were to lift up the veil that hideth his own action, and show himself as he really is, then it would be known what the world in fact is and what the men of the world are ! (iv) or an Aorist in the

Conditional Clause may be followed by an Imperative in the Principal Clause as الرنعطانا بمبرن بعد به وحِ شرعي من بدهيد if I should die at any time give it to my lawful heir الر رحم رحم نكني نلري بر پدر و مادره رحم بش if thou pity not thyself have compassion on thy father and mother

92 When the condition expressed in the Conditional Clause refers to Past Time the Past Imperfect or the Conditional Past is used in both clauses (implying that the antecedent condition is un-fulfilled) as اگر چشم و نمي كرد تا مباحه از بمدارس بيدا بر نمي كنم if she had not opened her eyes I would never have withdrawn my *gaze from her* الر باي رك مرسلي سي بد اجتناب مهب جنگ مي بيلد if there were no dying in the case how the Persians would have fought! الرنصف ساير دروس سفر را داشتمي الدس اسباب سفر دراس ه كها لهبه بودمي if I had possessed half the inventions of the darvish Safar I should have been already packing up my things in these trunks الرآنها كه مي دانمي كردمي نيكو سيرت و پارسا بودمي if I had performed those duties which I know, I would have been virtuous and pious اگر بس نبودي رخت خود باس مرس لمي كردي if it had not been thus (ordained) he would not have changed dress with me.

93. Sometimes in familiar conversation the الر of the Conditional Clause may be omitted as *if* ميل بكند بعقد مي كنم she is inclined, I will marry her باس كلاريي اس بلنك را سر دلت خالي خواهم كرد *if* thou turnest back thy foot, I will empty this gun into thy heart ; هر ه از دست برمي آيد كوتاهي نكني كوتاهي نكني نامردي do not hold back your hand from whatever it can

attain to, *if* you hold back, you are a coward , دخترمیل نداشته باشد چه طور مي توانند شوهرش بدهند *if* the girl does not desire it, how can they give him (to her) as husband

94 Examples of the uses of خواه خواه (i) خواه این بگیري خواه آن whether you take this or that , خواه این خواه بزرگی دیگر آنچه بدستشان مي افتد واپس نمي دهند whether he or any other man in power, they do not restore that which falls into their hands (ii) خواه ساختة خواه راستین whether real, or affected (iii) خواه ناخواه بادست خود شیریني بدهانم گذاشت whether I would or not, she thrust sweatmeats into my mouth with her own hands

95 List of Compound Verbs (continued) —(i) خاطر افتادن to be remembered , خاطر خواستن to be favourable , خاطر نشان کسي کردن to assure any one , از خاطر محو شدن to be obliterated from one's mind (ii) خالي افتادن to happen to be empty , تفنگ خالي کردن to fire a gun (iii) خانه خراب شدن to be ruined (in fortune) (iv) خبر داشتن to have news, be informed خبردار یا خبر کردن to inform , خبر یافتن to get news (v) ختم را برچیدن to complete the obsequies of a dead person (vi) خجالت کشیدن to be ashamed (vii) خدمت کردن to serve (viii) خراخر زدن to snore (ix) خرج کردن to expend, pay (x) خس خس کردن to sob breathlessly (xi) خطاب کردن to address, speak (xii) خفه کردن to strangle (xiii) خلاص کردن to release, deliver , خلاص شدن to be freed (xiv) خلاف کردن to go contrary to, oppose , خلاف عرض کردن to falsify, misrepresent (xv) خلوت کردن to retire to a private place , to have a private interview (xvi) خمیازه کردن to indulge in a yawn (xvii) بخواب دیدن to dream , بخواب رفتن to go to sleep , خواب کردن

(xxxvi) دل پیدا کردن to take courage, دلداري کردن to console, دلخوش شدن to rejoice, دلها یافتن to capture hearts, دل بجا آمدن to get peace of mind. (xxxvii) دم برآوردن to draw a breath, دم زدن to boast, دم در کشیدن to hold one's breath. (xxxviii) دمار از روزگار کسي بر آوردن to seek the destruction of or exterminate anyone, (xxxix) دین بدنیا فروختن to sell the next world for this, to be dishonest for the sake of worldly gain

12 The Barber of Baghdad—II.

A few days afterwards the wood-cutter applied himself to the barber, as if nothing had happened between them, requesting that he and a companion of his from the country might enjoy the dexterity of his hand, and the price, for which both operations were to be performed, was settled When the wood-cutter's head had been properly shaved, Yusuf asked where his companion was "He is standing just outside," said the wood-cutter, "he shall come in at once" Accordingly he went out and led in his donkey by the halter "This is my companion," said he, "shave him" "Shave *him*!" exclaimed the barber in a rage, "is it not enough that I should degrade myself by touching *you*? Must I be further insulted by your asking me to shave your donkey? Away with you, or I'll send you both to hell", and forthwith he drove them out of his shop The wood-cutter immediately went to the Khalifa and told him what had happened. "Bring Yusuf and his razors to me this instant," exclaimed the Khalifa to one of his officers, and in the course of a few minutes the barber stood before him "Why do you refuse to shave this man's companion?" said the Khalifa to the barber, "was not that your agreement?" Yusuf, kissing the ground, answered "It is true, O Commander of the Faithful that such was our agreement, but who ever made a companion of a donkey before?" "True enough," said the Khalifa, "but who ever thought of insisting upon a pack-saddle being included in a load of wood? No, no, it is the wood-cutter's turn now Shave his donkey immediately, or you know the consequences" So the barber was compelled

to prepare a great quantity of soap, to lather the beast from head to foot, and to shave it in the presence of the Khalifa and of the whole court, whilst he was jeered at and mocked by the by-standers. The poor wood-cutter was then dismissed with an appropriate present of money and all Baghdad resounded with the story and celebrated the justice of the Khalifa.

A few days afterwards (بعد از چندی) the wood-cutter like a person who (مانند کسیکه) might not have any expostulation and annoyance with the barber (هیچ نقار و سکراتی با دلّاک نداشته باشد) to his shop came, saying that (که) well (خوب) O master barber (استاد دلّاک), now (الحین) I and one of my companions (رفقایم) from (از) the country (اطراف) we wish (می خواهیم) the pleasure of thy mastery and dexterity (لذّت استادی و مهارت را) we may perceive (دریابیم) Our head (سر را) for how much (بچند) wilt thou shave (بتراشی) ? Yusuf unmindful (بی خیال) with him in settling the price for both operations (بطی مُزد هر دو عمل) arose (برخاست) When the wood-cutter's head clean and neat (پاک و پاکیزه) was shaved (تراشیده شد) Yusuf asked (پرسید) that thy companion (رفیقت) where (کو) ? The wood-cutter said, here (اینک) just out-side the door (دم در) standing (استاده) he is at once (فی الفور) I am bringing him (آوردمش) accordingly (پس) from the shop he came out (بیرون آمد) and the halter of the donkey (افسار خر را) having taken hold of (گرفته) him into the shop (بدکّان) he pulled (کشید), saying that (که) here (اینک) my companion (رفیقم) come (بیا), his head (سرش) shave (بتراش). Yusuf got angry (برآشفت), saying that am I to shave his head or what (سرش را بتراشم یعنی چه) ? The head of

one like thee (سر مثل توي) to shave (تراشيدن) for me not enough was (کم بود) that I must shave the head of thy ass also (بايد سر خرت را هم بتراشم), go (برو), be off with you (گم شو) or (و گرنه) thee (ترا) with this little ass (با همين خرک) to the pit of hell (بدرک) I will send (مي فرستم) This he said (نامبرد) and the wood-cutter (را) out of (از) the shop he drove (براند) The wood-cutter immediately (في الفور) to the Khalifa went and what had happened (چگونگي را) he told (عرض نمود) The Khalifa one of his officers (سرهنگان خود را) ordered (بفرمود) that (تا) Yusuf (را) with his shaving requisites (با اسباب سرتراشي او) soon (بزودي) they brought (بياوردند) The Khalifa turned towards him (روي بدو نمود) saying that why (چرا) the head of the companion of this man (مرد) didst thou not shave (نمي تراشي)? Yet (مگر) thy agreement (قرار تو) for shaving of (بتراشيدن) two head has not been (نبوده است)? Yusuf the ground of service (زمين خدمت) kissed (ببوسيد), saying that O Commander of the Faithful (امير المؤمنين)! true (راست) it is that our engagement (قرار ما) such (همچو) has been (بوده) but till now (تا كنون) the ass the companion of man (انسان) where (كجا) has been (بوده است)? The Khalifa said it is true enough (بس راست است) but till now the pack-saddle where part of fire-wood (جزوِ هيزم) have been (بوده است) No, no (نه خير), now (حالا) the turn (نوبت) with (به) the wood-cutter is So the head of his ass (سرخرش را) thou must immediately shave (بايد في الفور بتراشي), otherwise (و گرنه) thy punishment (سزاي خويش) thou shalt see (خواهي ديد) So the barber

from fulfilling the agreement (عاجز از معاوضه) having seen no escape (هيچ گريز نديده) with a great quantity of soap (با صابون) in the presence of (در حضور) the Khalifa and all of the spectators and courtiers (حاضرين و اعيان) with their jeering and mocking (در تمسخر و استهزا) the ass (خر) totally (بالكل) he shaved (تراشيد). The Khalifa the wood-cutter (خاركش) with a reward (با انعامي) suitable to his condition (موافق حال او) sent away (روانه كرد) and the renown of the justice of (آوازه عدالت) the Khalifa throughout Baghdad (در همه بغداد) resounded (پيچيد)

NOTES

95 (a) چند as an Interrogative Particle may be used for both animate and inanimate objects with or without a following Substantive as بگو چند روس كشتي say how many Russians didst thou kill? مواجب چند است how much (or what) monthly wages hast thou? خوب اي حرامي چند بدهي well what will you give?

(b) As an Indefinite Numeral Adjective چند may either precede or follow a Substantive in which case the Substantive must have the ياي تنكير annexed to it but in both cases the Substantive is generally used in the singular number as مي خواهم چند كلمه عرض كنم I will say a few words اتفاقا چند نفر راهزن سر راهش گرفتند by chance some high-way men attacked his cart چند نفري از دختران از دور اين حال را مشاهده كردند some of the maidens saw this from a distance بعد از دمي چند پك به قليان زده رو به كدخدا كرد after having let off several whiffs from his pipe he turned towards the head-man

Sometimes, however, in modern Persian it may follow a plural noun, as من شاهدهاي چند دارم I have several witnesses, ادّعاهاي چند مي كند كه تا حال كسي در ايران نديده و نشنيده است he pretends to the knowledge of several things, which no one in Persia has yet heard of or seen.

(*c*) چندي more commonly occurs in the sense of '*a short time, a few days, for sometime*', as چندي از مريم بي خبر در آخر شنيدم كه در ايروان در سراي سردار است having no information of Mariam for sometime at length I heard that she was at Erivan in the seraglio of the Sardar, نياكانِ ما و پدرم تا چندي پيش از اين در كوههاي ممالكِ كردستان چادر نشين بودند our fore-fathers and my father till a short time before this lived encamped in the mountains of Kurdistan, چندي بعد از اين عزمِ طهران كردم a few days afterwards I started for Tehran

(*d*) It may be formed into compounds such as چندان - چندين چند آنكه and هرچند, as چندين دروغ چرا گفتي why did you tell so many lies? آن هم چندان پيدايش نيست that also is not so palpable, چندان تازگي ندارد it has no such novelty, بعد از خواندنِ چندين غزلِ موزون و پيمودنِ چندين ساغرِ گلگون كيسه از اشعار خالي و شيشه از شراب تهي گرديد after having sung so many melodious songs and having measured so many cups of rosy wine, the purse became void of verse and the bottle of wine, چند آنكه شتر مرغ آهن مي گوارد تو نقره و طلا مي گواري you can digest as much silver and gold as an ostrich can digest iron, هرچند بعمارتِ ايشان كوشي در خرابيِ تو مي كوشند inspite of thy trying to contribute to their prosperity, they would endeavour to ruin thee

(*c*) It may also be used idiomatically as باکسانکه او حدو .... چونو مي حود ندانستند سامی و افراسیابي مي مرزحت he made himself out to be a Sam or an Afrasiyab before those who did not know his real character فرزند ! هد حه حددانی لبود my son it was not much of a service بی ه مي حدد و ووي آن سفت در بغل نفهلم without ascertaining its real nature I concealed it tight under my arm-pit.

97 (*a*) کس (کسي and کسان) is declinable as کس در سرای .... there is no one in the house درون کس مخراش do not wound the heart of anyone در تفلیس یا سهرهاي دیگر کسی مرا نمي .... in Tiflis or other cities no one knows me دیگر براه زنی نمي روم کسي را لخت نمی کنم I will never again be a highway man nor rob any one

(*b*) کس is also used in the sense of *a person of worth consequence* to which is opposed ناکس *a no-body* as ناکس بتربیت .... نسود کس a worlth-less person will not, by education, become a person of worth کس و ناکس noble and plebeian high and low every body

(*c*) It forms the Compound Relatives کسیکه and کسانیکه as مکر نمي سنوید بکسیکه مي خواهي بده give to whom-so-ever you wish کسانکه دزدي و دلکي نمي کنند و بصنعت و تجارت مشغول اند چه قدر آسوده و خوش گذرانند ? do you not hear how those, who do not rob nor commit crime and are employed in trade and commerce lead happy and contented lives?

98 The idiomatic uses of the word شکر (sugar) are (i) شکرخنده a sweet smile (ii) شکرآبي a falling out coolness

between friends ; (iii) شکر بار raining sweet, mellifluous , (iv) شکر خواب a sweet sleep , (v) شکرریز طرب tears of joy , (vi) شکرلنگ some-what lame

99 ماضي احتمالي (the Past of Probability) is used (i) to denote a *conviction* in the mind of the speaker as to the occurrence of a Past event , as تصور نفرمائید ازین مژده چه قدر باید خرسند شده باشم conceive how great must have been my joy on hearing these glad tidings , لهذا بالضرورت باید مرده باشد therefore he must have been dead necessarily , خلاصه بقول او هر صفتي که باید اسب نداشته باشد داشت in short according to his assertion it had every quality that a horse ought not to have (ii) to denote the *probability* of an event having occurred , as هیچ نومید نبودم که روزي یکي از اهل مشرق زمینیان برخورم که سرگذشت خود را چنانچه باید نوشته باشد I was quite sanguine that some day or other I would meet with a native of the East who might have written out his own story properly , شاه خواسته بود که تا مراجعت او از اردو زینب قابل حضور او شده باشد the king had wished that till his return from the camp Zainab might be made fit to be brought to his presence , (iii) to denote the *possibility* of an event having occurred , as حکیم چوب خورده باشد the physician might have been flogged , چارهٔ درد من دیدار کسي است که از ایران آمده باشد the remedy for my pain is a sight of the person who might have come from Persia . (iv) to signify an *indirect* or *implied condition* , as هرکه این تعویذ طلسمات را با خود داشته باشد رویین تن است every one who might have on his person such a talisman is invulnerable , کارهائیکه عادي طبیعت کسي شده باشد محال است که از ذهن او بیرون رود it is impos-

sible that the deeds which might have become habitual to a person be eradicated from his nature, (v) in Conditional Sentences where the Conditional Clause deals with something *improbable* or *uncertain* as اگر واقعاً رفته باشد خبر پيش باليوز فرستاده باشد if he should really have gone, he would have sent word to the Consul.

100. The Vocative is formed (i) by prefixing اي to the Nominative, as اي مردان بكوشيد O men! make an effort or (ii) by affixing an الف to it, as خدايا جانش بستان O God! take away his life بلبلا مژده بهار بيار O nightingale! bring good tidings of the Spring or (iii) by simply using the Nominative as سعدي ره كعبه رضا گير Sadi! take the path of the Kaba of Divine favour, رفيق واقف اين است كه اگر پول نقد نداريد بيهوده زحمت مكشيد friend! the real fact is this that unless you have money in cash do not disturb yourselves for nothing

101. The uses of the Passive Construction which is comparatively rare in Persian may be illustrated thus (i) كم مانده بود كه كارش ساخته شود little had remained that his work (or life) would have been finished اگر مي رفتم شايد كشته مي شدم if I had gone, perhaps I would have been killed تفصيل قصه را مطابقه واقع شده نه بلكه چنانچه گفته شده بود گفتم I described the details of the occurrence not as it had really happened but rather as it had been (already) told (ii) گرهيكه از دست گشوده مي شود چرا بايد بدندان زحمت داد why must one take the trouble to apply the teeth to a knot which could be opened by the hand? آنچه بايست از جانب دولت داده شود that must be supplied by (or on the part of) the

(ii) to represent the Accusative or the Dative case as يكي از رقيبان زهرش داده one of her rivals has administered poison to her در لباس ارمنيش ديدم I saw her in the dress of an Armenian بهترين زنانش يافتم I found her to be the best of women (iii) as an affix to the Imperative to form Verbal nouns as بخشش charity آسايش ease آرايش adornment سوزش burning and كوشش endeavour

105 اينك is a strengthened form of the demonstrative اين by suffixing ك to it and means 'lo I here' (is) or 'here' (is) or 'behold this' (is) &c. as (i) اينك من آن سگ behold, I am that dog اينك اين فرشته پسر فلان قمشلوي behold this angel is the son of so and so of Qamshalau (ii) اينك شرح حال علي العموم this is a statement of things in general اينك سرگذشت من this is my story اينك سبب فرستادن من this is the cause of sending me اينك وقت آنست كه باعتقاد خود عمل كني this is the time when thou shouldst act according to thy belief (iii) اينك من و اينك او here am I and here is she.

106 The uses of the particle وگرنه may be illustrated thus as اگر دهان داري بر آر وگرنه چشم بپوش و بصبر بكوش if you have the power enjoy it, otherwise give it up and try to be patient as راستي خوب است كه با شخصي مطابق باشد وگرنه چه فائده از آن truth is an excellent thing when it suits one's purpose otherwise of what use is it? تاريكي شب هم بفريادم رسيد وگرنه پريدگي رنگ و دست پاچگي و نالش بخطر مي انداخت the darkness of the night also helped me, otherwise the paling of my countenance, my precipitation and anxiety would have endangered me.

107. (*a*) The letter ک as a Diminutive Suffix is applicable to both animate and inanimate objects, as این دخترک بدقماش نیست this girl is not a bad bit of stuff (*familiarity*), میمون جانورک معضیست the monkey is a disgusting creature (*contempt*), مگر این بزک شما سحر می کند does this wonderful goat of yours perform any magic (*surprise*)? چند از این تصنیفکهای هرزه به بچه‌ها یاد داده است he has taught the boys some of these low vulgar songs (*contempt*), سوادکی پیدا کردم I acquired a little education (*small amount*)

(*b*) It may also be added to Adjectives, as شیرینک sweetish, کمترک a little less, آن طرف ترک a little more that way, فراترک a little higher, مزد حمام را بدک ندادم I paid rather a good sum to the manager of the bath.

108 (*a*) In Persian the Direct form of Narration is more commonly used, but in connection with Verbs of '*ordering*' the Indirect form is preferred to the Direct, as instead of saying پادشاه فرمود تا غلام را بدریا بیندار (the King ordered, saying, 'throw the slave into the sea') we should say پادشاه فرمود تا غلام را بدریا بیندازند the king ordered to throw the slave into the sea

(*b*) Further instances of the use of the Indirect form of Narration are (i) سوگند خورد که چون بیابد بیک درم بفروشد he swore an oath that when he should find it he would sell it for a diram, (ii) باید اقرار بکنی تاجری thou must confess that thou art a merchant (iii) از سگ کمترم می گویند they say that I am less than a dog, (iv) یکی از آن میان دساخت که از ۰ تکاب حکیم شاهم one

among them recognised me as one of the dependants of the King's physician

109. The uses of مگر as an Interrogative Particle may be illustrated thus (i) مگر شما دیوانه شده are you gone mad? مثل او جوان is there any such honourable youth like him, and so true in what he says in all our village? (ii) مگر لقمهٔ زیاد سرمی شکند will a little extra morsel break your head? مگر گران بنظر آمد does it appear to be dear to you? (iii) مگر جوان are you not young men? مگر من هم am I not a Musalman like you? مگر این مثل شما مسلمان نیستم hast thou not heard this verse of Hafiz? شعر حافظ را نشنیدهٔ don't you know how self willed he is? مگر او را نمی شناسی که چه قدر لجوج است

110 List of Compound Verbs (continued) (i) در ذهن نماندن to be obliterated from memory (ii) راست گفتن to speak the truth (iii) راضي كردن to satisfy راضي شدن to be satisfied (iv) راه افتادن to set out راه انداختن to set going راه بردن to manage راه خود پیش گرفتن to pursue one's journey راه دادن to admit راه رفتن to walk راه زدن to commit high-way robbery راه نمودن to point out the road to guide (v) رجوع كردن to consign refer, appeal to (vi) رحم كردن to have pity on (vii) رخت از جهان بستن to die (viii) رخت بجاي كشيدن to remove to a place (ix) رد كردن to reject رد شدن to be rejected (x) رستگار فرمودن يا نمودن to liberate, set free (xi) رشوت خوردن to take a bribe (xii) رقم زدن to write (xiii) رم كردن to run away (*horse*): (xiv) رنگ از رو پريدن to grow pale رنگ دیگر گرفتن to wear another aspect (*business*) رنگ ریختن

to feign (xv) روا داشتن to allow, sanction (xvi) رواج داشتن to be current (xvii) رونما شدن to be made public, روي درهم کشیدن to frown, رو گردانیدن to desert (xviii) روزه گرفتن to fast, روزه خوردن to avoid fasting (xix) روشن کردن to light up, render clear (xx) رها کردن to release (xxi) رهن دادن to give in pledge (xxii) ریز ریز کردن to tear into pieces (xxiii) دریشِ خود خریدن to accept as one's due (xxiv) زالو انداختن to apply leeches (xxv) زائده شدن to be born (xxvi) زبان دادن to promise, دربان آوردن to speak, say, زبان کشادن to open one's mouth, speak (*polite*), زبان کوفتن to stammer, زبان گرفتن to hold one's tongue (xxvii) زحمت دادن to give trouble, زحمت کشیدن to take trouble (xxviii) زمین زدن to throw down (xxix) زن خواستن to wish to marry, زن گرفتن to marry (xxx) زنده کردن to animate, enliven, زنده گشتن to revive, come to life (xxxi) زوزه کشیدن to howl (*jackal*) (xxxii) زور زدن to hit hard, زور کردن to force, بزور گرفتن to seize by force (xxxiii) سبقت بردن to excell, surpass, سبقت گرفتن to take precedence of, to anticipate (xxxiv) سپر انداختن to submit (xxxv) سراپا گوش بودن to listen with absorbing attention بسرآب رفتن to go to the lavatory (*polite*), سر از پا نشناختن to be utterly confused, سر برداشتن to raise the head, to rebel سر بر زدن to happen, occur, سر پائین انداختن to hang down the head, سر در کشیدن یا سر بپیچیدن to disobey سر دادن یا سر کردن to let loose, to discharge (*a fire arm*), سر دست افتادن to be in a rage, سر فرو بردن to be ashamed, سر فرود آوردن to bow the head سرِ قولِ خود ایستادن to keep to one's word, بسر زدن to put on the head (*hat*), از سر گرفتن to begin at the beginning سر و صورت دادن to accom-

plish سرزنش کردن to be angry at, rebuke (xxxvi) سرپوش از روی کار بر داشتن to lift up the veil from an affair (xxxvii) سرما خوردن to freeze (xxxviii) سکه زدن to strike coins (xxxix) شرط کردن to stipulate سودا در دماغ پختن to entertain desire for a thing (lx) سوگند خوردن to take an oath سوگند یاد کردن to vow (lxi) سیاه شدن to become black, to be afflicted (lxii) سیر کردن to go for a promenade, to go on (*foot*) سیر آمدن to be tired disgusted (lxiii) سینه سپر کردن to stand in the foremost ranks without flinching سینه گشادن to be happy

13. Socrates—I

Socrates was born at Athens 498 years before Christ. He received the best education which an Athenian could obtain. He first learnt sculpture, in which he acquired some reputation. He then served his country as a soldier according to the duty of all Athenian citizens He displayed much fortitude and valour in all the expeditions in which he was engaged He was as brave as a Senator as he had been as a soldier He possessed that high moral courage which can brave not only death but adverse opinion. He could defy a tyrant as well as a tyrannical mob When the admirals were tried after the battle of Arginusae, for not having rescued the bodies of the slain, Socrates stood alone in defending them The mob were furious He was dismissed from the council, and the admirals were condemned Socrates then devoted himself to teaching He stood in the market places, entered the workshops, and visited the schools, in order to teach the people his ideas respecting the scope and value of human speculation and action He insisted upon moral conduct as alone guiding man to happiness here and hereafter Socrates went about teaching Wise men and pupils followed him Aristippus offered him a large sum of money but the offer was at once declined. Socrates did not teach for money but to propagate wisdom He declared that the highest reward he could enjoy was to see mankind benefited by his labours. He was of opinion that the only valuable

philosophy is that which teaches us our moral duties and religious hopes

Four hundred (چهارصد) and sixty (شصت) and eight (هشت) year (سال) before (قبل از) the birth of (ولادت) Christ (مسيح) Socrates (سقراط) in the city of Athens (شهر اثانيه) was born (زائده شد), and an education and training (تعليم و تربيتي), that during that time (در آن زمان) for the Athenians (اهل اثانيه را) possible (ممكن) was, in the highest degree (بدرجهٔ اولی) obtained (يافت) First (ابتدائيں) the art of (صنعت) sculpture (كالبدگري را يا نقّاشي را) he learnt (بياموخت) till (تا) in that some reputation (شهرتكي) he acquired (حاصل كرد) Then (بعد ازآن) as a soldier (بحيثيت سرباري) which one of the bounden duties of (يكي از تكليفهاي لازمي) every one of the people of Athens (هر اهل اثانيه) was, in the service of his own Government (بخدمت دولت خود) connected (منسلك) he became (گشت), and in every one of the battles in which (در همهٔ كارزارهايكه) in that (در آن) his participation (شركتش) happened (اتّفاق افتاد) the dues of fortitude and valour (داد شجاعت و مردانگي) he gave (بداد), and when he was given a place among the senators (در سلك اركانِ مشورت داخل شد) the same (همان) intrepidity (دليري) and zeal (غيرت را) he made use of (بكار برد) because (چه) man (مردي) was so (چنان) possessed of constancy (اولو العزم) and full of courage (پر همت) that not only (نه تنها) from death but (بلكه) from adverse opinion (رائ مخالف) also (هم) a fear (باكي) he used not to have (نداشتي) and against (در) the actions of every oppressor

(خواه از) whether he be a single individual (از رهاي هر رهسپاري) (شخصي باشد فريد) or a numerous mob (جماعت انبوهي مزيد) the power of resistance (تاب مقاومت) he used to bring forward (حاضر مي) Such as (چنانچه) at the time when (وقتيكه) after (بعد از) the battle of Arginusae (جنگ ارگنوسه) the admirals (دريا بيگيان را) for the crime of leaving behind the dead bodies of the slain (بجرم ترک نمودن لاشهاي مقتولين) they were trying (محاكمه با مرافعه مي كردند), Socrates all alone (تک و تنها) pleaded for them (براي ايشان حجت بر آورد), so that (تا) mob of the common people (انبوهي از عوام الناس) furious (از ... سخت) becoming (شده) at length (آخركار) Socrates (را) from the council (مجلس) they dismissed (معزول ساختند) and upon (بر) the admirals they condemned (حكم نمودند) Then (پس) at that time (آنگاه) Socrates in teaching and guiding of the people (بتعليم و هدايت الناس) became engaged (مشغول گشت) In the market places (جهارسو ها) he would stand (با ستادي) and inside the workshops (درون كارگاه ها) he would go (رفتي) and to the schools ([illegible]) he would frequent (آمد و شد كردي), so that the questions of the limits of the speculations and actions of men (تا مسائل حدود تفكرات و معاملات انساني) and their results and uses (نتايج و فوائد آنها را) according to his own idea and belief (حسب خيال و عقيده خود) to the people (به مردمان) he might teach (بياموزد) and with most decided injunction (با تاكيد اكيد) he used to say (مي گفت) for happiness here and hereafter (خوشبختي دنيا و آخرت را) except (بغير) moral conduct (= holy living and continence (پارسائي و پرهيزگاري) there is no other way

(هیچ طریقی دیگر نیست). Socrates teaching (هدایت کنان) went about (دور می نمود) and men of wisdom (ارباب خرد) and pupils (تلمیذان) used to follow him (در پئ او می رفتند) Aristippus (ارسطیفس) wished (می خواست) a large sum of money (مبلغ خطیری) he may offer him (پیش کش بیارد) but Socrates quickly (سریعاً) refused (انکار کرد) saying that (که) my desire (مدّعای من) by (از) this teaching and instruction (تعلیم و تعلّم) not (نه) the getting of money (تحصیل زر) but (بلکه) pure (محض) propagation of wisdom and philosophy (انتشار دانائي و حکمت) is The reward (مزدي) which to me (نزد من) than (از) all more precious (عزیز تر) is, this is that I may see (ببینم) by my labours (از جدّ و جهدم) for mankind (بنی نوع انسان را) a benefit (منفعتي) obtained is (حاصل شود), and also (نیز) he used to say (می گفت) only (تنها) that which (هرچه) from the knowledges (علوم) and sciences (فنون) purity of morals (پاکیزگي اخلاق) teaches (بیاموزد) and religious aspiration (حوصلهٔ دیني) and religious zeal (اشتیاقِ مذهبی) originates (پیدا کند) for us valuable (مفید) is and enough (بس)

NOTES

111 The following examples illustrate how to express '*Time how long before or after*' (1) پنجاه سال قبل ازین fifty years before this, هفت و هشت ماه قبل از وبا seven or eight months before the plague, چند روز قبل از ورودِ او a few days before his arrival یک هفته پیش از فوتِ حاجي غفور a week before Haji Ghafur's death شبِ پیشِ روزِ سفر on the night before the day of starting (ii) چند روز

بعد از آن a few days after that بعد از چاردہ روز در ساعت معین after fourteen days at the appointed hour بعد از وفات او بصد سال after his death by a hundred years.

112 Relative Clauses (or Clauses introduced by a Relative Pronoun) may be classified into —

(a) Attributive Relative Clauses مثل آنکه حرف آنا و

مردی نمیبینم که حریف آقا مردان I can point out no man who could oppose Aka Mardan در پشت آن نقشه در روی گلهای دنیای نو که در باغ عجائب پاریس میرویند کشیده شده on its back are drawn the forms of the flowers of the New world which grow in the Garden of Wonders in Paris هر چه روی بر سرم می آید every thing which happens to me if thou approve of it is right مطابق آغاز کرده ام باید با تمام I must end the crime which I have begun اول کسیکه دیدم چهرهٔ نسقچی بود the first sight which I saw was the face of the Nasaqchi هرچه میگویم درست میگویم whatever I say I say correctly که دلش ماهی بخواهد خودش را باب سرد می زند he whose heart desires a fish would throw him elf into the cold wat

(b) Temporal Relative Clauses as لعنت بر آن روز که من شاه را بخانهٔ خود مهمان کردم cursed be the day on which I invited the King to my house روزیکه این اتفاق افتاد سه نفر سوار مسلح را دیدند که از دهٔ شما پائین میرفتند the day on which this took place three men on horse back well-armed were seen as they went down from your village

(c) Adverbial Relative Clauses as در دکانی درآمدم که کتابی در آنجا نگاه میداشت in the shop there was h

cup-board wherein the roast-meat-seller kept the uncooked meat اطاقي كه همانجا مرده است ديده شد we saw the very room where he died , از راهي كه آمدهٔ برگير go back by the way thou camest

(*d*) *Continuative Relative Clauses*, as قفس هاي متعدد ديدم كه در هريك انواع حيوانات بود we saw numerous cages in which (or *and in each*) were various animals , رسيديم بفوارهٔ بزرگي كه سي ذرع آبِ آن مي جهيد we came to a large fountain the water of which (or *and its water*) shot thirty ells into the air , ناگاه مردي مهيبِ بلند قامت كه از ديدارش بابا عبدل را سراپا لرزه گرفت داخل شد all on a sudden an awe-inspiring person of tall stature entered, at whose sight (or *and seeing him*) Baba Abdul began to tremble all over

(*e*) *Causal Relative Clauses*, as من كه مثلِ تو يارِ زيبا دارم حورياںِ بهشت بچشم نمي آيد I, who (or *because I*) have such a lover as thou, would not look at the nymphs of paradise , پادشاه امر فرموده بود سر آغاي ينكچيرياں را كه آنروزها فسادِ بزرگ مي كرد ببرند the King ordered and they took off the head of the Agha of the Janissaries who (or *because he*) was creating a great disturbance in those days , يكي بمن بده كه سخت درمانده ام give one to me who (or *because I*) am in great distress

(*f*) *Consecutive Relative Clauses*, as كسي نباشد كه موتِ خود در زندگي ترجيح دهد there cannot be any one who (or *such that he*) would prefer death to living , كم كس است درين شهر كه اين خر را نشناسد there are few people in this town who (or *such that they*) would not recognise this ass.

• Abstract Substantives may be formed (1) by adding

ـه at the end of certain Adjectives as گرما warmth heat (from گرم) (ii) by adding ـاک to the Imperative stem of certain Verbs as تپاک palpitation (from تپیدن) خوراک food (from خوردن) (iii) by adding ـش after the Imperative stem of certain Verbs as افزایش increase (from افزودن) پرورش nurture (from پروردن) (iv) by adding ی to Substantives, Adjectives, Pronouns Participles &c. as دوستی friendship (from دوست) دزدی robbery (from دزد) خوبی beauty excellence (from خوب) دشواری difficulty (from دشوار) منی egoism (from من) گم شدگی the being lost (from گم شده) نشستگی (from نشسته) هستی existence (from هست) هنروری cleverness (from هنرور) بندگی service (from بنده) زندگی life (from زنده living)

114 Phrases and idioms formed with the word دولت are (i) دولتخانه or دولت سرا a house (polite) (ii) دولتخواهی well wishing (iii) دولت پناه the asylum of the Empire (sovereign) (iv) دولت برانداز destroying the Government (v) دولت معتدبی a considerable fortune (vi) دولت عالیه the exalted state (vii) دولت عثمانیه the Ottoman Empire (viii) دولت علیهٔ خود مان our own exalted Government.

115. Adjectives of Possession are formed by annexing the following suffixes (i) مند as خردمند intelligent wise (from خرد) دانشمند learned, wise (from دانش), برومند fruitful (from بر fruit) تنومند stout, strong (from تن body) (ii) ور or ور as امیدوار hopeful (from امید hope) هنرور skilful, clever (from هنر skill) رنجور afflicted (from رنج pain) (iii) یار as بختیار fortunate happy

(from بخت fortune) شهریار a king (from شهر town), (iv) ناک, as دردناک painful (from درد pain) ترسناک timid (from ترس fear)

116 The uses of the word "تنها" may be illustrated thus (i) چون تنها ماندم با خود گفتم when I was left alone, I said to myself, ما تنها نیستیم رئیسی داریم we are not alone, but have a chief روزی نور جهان را دیدم تنها بازار روان one day I saw Nurjehan going out alone to the market (ii) دیدارش تنها برای بدخواهان را رانی the mere sight of him is sufficient to bring the evil minded to order, تنها جواب "بلی بلی" می گفت he was merely saying in reply "Yes! yes!", راست است تو حکیمی امّا حکیم تنها نه, it is true you are a physician but you are not a mere physician (iii) شاهزاده تن تنها بر صف دشمنان زد the prince all alone rushed upon the enemies' rank راهب تک و تنها در آمد the monk came out alone and unattended, بعد از طی دو فرسنگ راه خود را تنها و وارسته دیدم after having traversed a distance of two parasangs, I found myself alone and saved (iv) چون که سواد اعظم و بلاد معظّم استنبول را دیدم نه تنها متحیّر بلکه دلگیر و متاثّر گردیدم now that I had seen the great and magnificent city of Constantinople, I not only became astonished but also mortified and affected, برای تشخیص مرض نبض گرفتن تنها نیست باید زبان بیمار هم دید in order to judge of an illness one must not only feel the pulse (but) also see the tongue of the patient (v) تنها وارثش تو هستی thou art his only heir, تنها محرمان بدانجا راه داشتند only intimates were allowed access to that place

117 The Turkish termination "بیگی" (from بیگ a thousand) is used in Persian to form certain compounds, as ایلبیگی the

the chief of a nomadic tribe ايلبيگي the chief *Beg* or a provincial Governor دريا بيگي a naval commander ديوان بيگي a police agent.

118 Phrases and idioms formed with the word "ديوان" are (i) ديوان خاص the privy council (ii) ديوان خانه a presence chamber (iii) ديوانيان officers of justice (iv) ديوان همايون the august or imperial court (v) دست ديوانت مي دهد he hands thee over to justice (vi) ديوان بلغ كردن to give an unjust sentence.

119. Compound words and phrases formed with the word چهار or چار are (i) چار بالش a throne (ii) چار پايه or چهار پايه quadruped (iii) چار تكبير بر زد he repeated four *takbirs* over him (i. e. abandoned him as dead) (iv) در چار سو on all sides (v) چهار حدود جهان the four quarters of the globe (vi) چار طاق a tent with four doors (vii) چار چشم meeting, interview (viii) چهار دانگ the four quarters of the world, (ix) چارسو or چهارسو a square or market-place (x) چهارسوق a place where four roads meet, (xi) چهار يار the four friends (i. e. Abu Bakr Umar, Usman and Ali).

120. The uses of the word "ديگر" may be illustrated thus (i) آدم ديگر را كه او را بياورد send another man to bring him اين حرف ديگر است this is another matter وزراي ديگر در خلوت گفتند the other ministers said to him in private (ii) ديگر دل من چه مي خواهد what more (or else) should my heart desire? ديگر عرضي ندارم I have nothing more to say گويا كه ديگر در ولايت حق و حساب نيست may be that in the country there is no more right or reckoning بار ديگر لشكر تاب ايستادن نياورده bearing a

look of meditation, I once more felt the pulse of the Banou (iii) گناهکاري بس است ديگر وقتِ توبه در نشستِ ديگر at the next sitting, there has been vice enough, next is the time to renounce wicked ways (iv) من هرگز باين حرفها ديگر ساکت نمي شوم I will never again be silent over such words, بعد از تو من چرا بايد ديگر در دنيا زنده بمانم after thee why should I remain longer alive on earth? اصفهان مرا ديگر نخواهد ديد مگر با قوّت و قدرت باشد Ispahan shall never again see me unless I come as one bearing authority (v) اين گلها رنگ و بوي ديگر دارد these flowers have brighter colour and sweeter perfume, نفسِ طايفهٔ اناثيه تاثيرِ ديگر دارد the words of women have a greater effect (vi) مادام که اين يکي در خواست آن ديگري در پاس so long as the one is quiet, the other is astir, يکي بحيرت مي نگريست و ديگري فحشم مي داد the one was gazing with surprise while the other was abusing me, دست و بازوش از دست و بازوي ديگران مگر کوچکتر است dost thou think his hand and arms are smaller than those of others?

121 The Imperfect Statical Participle (اسم حاليه), ending in ان, is used as a Descriptive Adjective expressing the continuance of the action implied by the Verb from which it is derived, as تفکّر کنان بگردش رفتم I went out for a walk, pondering, ديدندش گريزان و افتان و خيزان مي رفت they saw him going along running and stumbling, ترسان و هراسان با حالتيکه جاي رشک نيست آمدند they came, fearing and dreading, in no enviable state of mind, لنگان لنگان داخلِ اطاق شده he enters the room, limping

122 The idiomatic uses of the word "محض" are (i) محضِ خاطرِ شما purely for your sake, هر اهانتي که در حقِّ حقير

هرچه‌اید محض عاطفت و التفات است whatever kindness you will be pleased to bestow upon this humble one would be pure favour and condescension (on your part) (ii) بمحض دیدن موسیو ژوردان و استماع محاوراتش از همه رسوم آنها بلدم from merely seeing Monsieur Jourdan and hearing his conversations I have become acquainted with all their customs (iii) بمحض دیدن تو همه فرار خواهند کرد they will run away as soon as they see you بمحض دیدن دست در گردنم انداخته و در کنارم گرفت as soon as she saw me she threw her arms round my neck and drew me to her embrace پدرم بمحض پدیدار شدن اصل مطلب را دریافت as soon as they were seen, my father understood the matter

123 Compound Verbs (continued) (i) شاخ زدن to butt with the horn شاخ و برگ بافتن to embellish with details (ii) شرط کردن to make a stipulation, to promise (iii) شروع کردن to begin (iv) شدت کردن to increase (*pain* or *illness*) (v) شام خوردن to dine (vi) شعر خواندن to recite poetry (vii) شکار کردن to hunt (viii) شکایت بردن از to complain against (ix) شک زده شدن to feel suspicion (x) شکست دادن to defeat, شکست خوردن to be defeated (xi) شنا کردن to swim (xii) شوخی کردن to jest (xiii) بشوهر دادن to give in marriage شوهر کردن to take a husband (xiv) شهادت دادن to give evidence شهادت آوردن to bring in evidence (xv) شهرت دادن to divulge, spread abroad (xvi) تلخ را شیرین خوردن to make the best of a bad job (xvii) ضیافتی کشیدن to give an entertainment (xviii) شیون کردن to mourn lament (xix) صادر شدن to arrive, occur (xx) صبر کردن یا نمودن to have patience (xxi) صحبت کردن to converse (xxii) صدا کردن to call out (xxiii) صدمه زدن to

beg ; (xxiv) صرافت انداختن to get out of a person's mind (xxv) صرف شدن to be spent , صرف کردن to spend (xxvi) صف کشیدن to draw up in a line (xxvii) صلح کردن to make peace , (xxviii) صورت دادن to carry into effect or arrange , صورت پذیرفتن to assume shape, to be carried out (xxix) صهیل کردن to neigh (xxx) ضایع شدن to be spoiled, destroyed or lost , ضایع کردن to spoil, destroy (xxxi) ضرب خوردن to get a strain (xxxii) ضرر خوردن to suffer wrong (xxxiii) طاقت آوردن to be able to bear (xxxiv) طرح افکندن to lay the foundation of , to practise (xxxv) طفره کردن to make a pretence, to evade, put off . (xxxvi) طلب داشتن to send for (xxxvii) طناب انداختن to strangle, to bow-string (xxxviii) طول کشیدن to be delayed, protracted (xxxix) طي کردن to fold, to travel (xl) ظاهر شدن to appear ظهور آوردن to create, make (xli) ظفر یافتن to be victorious

14. A Sailor and a Shop-keeper

A sailor, who had lived a long time in foreign parts, at last returned to his native land Once there he soon wasted all the money he had saved from his earnings, and was reduced to extreme poverty and impecuniosity One day he entered a small village where he went to a well-known shop-keeper and asked him for a dozen cooked eggs on credit Having got the eggs, he dined upon them, and next morning went off to his own village Sometime elapsed, and the sailor would not pay his debt The shop-keeper, therefore, laid a complaint in writing against him to the head-man of that village to the effect, that such and such a sailor had bought on credit from him a dozen cooked eggs, and until then had not given the money for them Thereby the sailor had caused him a great loss, for from those twelve eggs he would have got twelve chickens and every chicken on becoming a hen, would have ere this laid at least some hundreds of

eggs, from which a large number of other chickens would have come into existence. Thus the covetous shop-keeper claimed an enormous sum. When the impecunious sailor heard this, he went into a wine-shop to forget his ill-luck in drink. There he happened to meet a clever attorney who having come to know of the state of affairs said to him "Dear friend, let your mind be at ease for if you put your affair into my hands, every thing will turn out all right." The sailor thanked him heartily and then went to the head man and told him that such and such a person was his attorney who would soon be present to answer in his stead. The head-man waited for him for a long time and when he did not come, he sent for him When the attorney came, the headman said to him "Well, gentleman, why have you wasted my time? I have been looking out for you for sometime." The attorney replied "Sir, I was cooking peas, for I want to plant them in my garden and to see what will come of it." The head-man laughed aloud and said "You fool, don t you know that cooked peas never grow?" He said "Sir if it is so then when does a chicken come out of a hen s egg that has been cooked?" On hearing this, the head man rejected the shop-keeper s complaint.

A sailor (ملّاحي) who a long time (مدّتِ مديد) in distant countries (ممالكِ بعيده) and foreign climes (اقاليمِ غريبه) had lived (بسر برده بود) at last (آخرالامر) to his familiar native land (بوطنِ مالوفِ خود) returned (مراجعت نمود) and in that place soon (بزودي) all the money (تمام پولهارا) which from his earnings (مداخلِ خويش) he had saved ([illegible]) having wasted (تلف كرده) to the extremity of poverty and impecuniosity (بحالتِ مفلسي و بي‌پولي) he reached (رسيد). One day having entered a small village (داخلِ يك دهكدهٔ كوچكي شده) to a well known shop-keeper (نزد بقّالِ معروفي) he went, and from him a dozen (دوازده دانه) cooked eggs (تخم پخته) asked on credit (نسيه خواست) That eggs (را) having taken (گرفته) at the time of dinner (در وقتِ شام)

he ate (بخورد) and the next morning (بامدادان) having set out (راه افتاده) to his own village (بدهِ خود) he went When sometime elapsed (بگذشت) and that sailor his own debt (قرضِ خود را) was not paying (ادا نمی کرد) that shop-keeper before the head-man of that village (پیشِ کدخدائي آن ده) in writing (مکتوباً) against him (از وي) to this effect (بدین مضمون) laid a complaint (شکایت برد) that such and such (فلان) a sailor from the slave twelve cooked egg has bought on credit (نسیه یابان کرده است) and until now (تاکنون) the money of it (پولِ آنرا) has not given (نداده) and on that account (از آن سبب) to the humble one (بحقیر) a great loss (خسارتِ بلیغی) has caused (رسانیده است) for (زیراکه) from that twelve egg for me (براي من) twelve chicken (جوجه) was being produced (پیدا مي شد) and every chicken becoming a hen (مرغ گردیده) at least (اقلاً) some hundred egg (چند صد دانه تخم) had brought (آورده بود) that from them (آنها) a large number of other chickens (بسا جوجه هاي دیگر) was coming into existance (پدید مي آمد), and in this manner (بدین طور) that shop-keeper of covetous habit (دکّان دارِ طامع کار) an enormous sum (مبلغِ خطیري) was claiming (ادّعا مي نمود) When that impecunious sailor (ملّاح بینوا) this (را) he heard, having gone into a wine-shop (داخلِ میخانه شده) he desired (خواست) that having drunk wine (شراب خورده) his own ill-luck (بدبختي خود را) he may forget (فراموش کند) There by chance (اتّفاقاً) a clever attorney (وکیلِ زرنگي را) he met (ملاقات کرد) who of the state of affairs (از چگونگی) apprised (مطلّع) having become (شده) to him said O dear friend

(اي درستي من) thy mind (خاطره) be at ease (جمع باشد) for (چه) if thy affair (امر شخص را) to me (بمن) then thou entrustest (بسپاري) every thing (هر چيز) to good (بخير) be ending (مي انجامد) The sailor sincerely (مخلصا) having thanked (اظهار ممنونيت كرده) to the head-man he went and said ... and such a person (فلان شخص) my attorney (وكيل من) is and in my stead (بعوض من) soon having become present (با زودي حاضر شده) answer (جواب) will give (جواب خواهد داد) The head-man till a long period (تا مدتي دراز) having waited for that attorney (منتظر آن وكيل شده) when he did not come (نيامد) after him (عقب او) he sent (فرستاد) and when he came (آمد) from him he asked (پرسيد) that O such a one (اي فلان) why (چرا) my time (وقت مرا) thou hast waisted (ضايع كردي) because it is some time (مدتي است) I have been looking out for thee (انتظار ترا مي كشم) He said O sir (اي آقا) I (= the slave) pea (نخود) was cooking (مي پختم) for (زيرا) I wanted (مي خواستم) it (آنرا) in my own garden (در باغچه خود) having planted (كاشته) I may see (به بينم) what (چه) will be (خواهد شد). The head-man a loud laughter (قهقهه بلندي) he struck (زد) again that, O fool (اي احمق) dost thou not know (مگر نمي داني) that cooked pea (نخود پخته) never grows (هرگز نمي رويد) He said O Sir if it is so (اگر چنين است), then from a hen's eggs (تخم مرغ) that cooked (پخته شده) is (باشد) chicken when (كي) does come out (بر مي آيد) The head man this (را) having heard (شنيده) that shop-keeper's complaint (شكايت آن دكاندار را) rejected (رد كرد)

NOTES.

124 (a) *'Place where'* is expressed by the preposition در, as من در شهرِ کاشان زائیده شدم I was born in the city of Kashan, در ورشو زبانِ فرنگ آموخته بود he had learnt French in Warsaw, در خانهٔ حکیم بغیر خاموشی چیزی نبود there was nothing but silence in the house of the physician, آخر میسّر شد که در زیرِ این درختِ بلوط ترا ببینم at last I have managed to see thee under this oak-tree

(b) *'Place whence'* is expressed by the prepositon از, as از سمنان شادان بیرون آمدم I came out of Samnan with a light heart, کسی از اصفهان خربزهٔ گرگانی برای شاه آورده است some one has brought for the King some Gurgan melons from Ispahan, از طهران باستانبول رفتم from Tehran I went to Constantinople

(c) *'Place whither'* is expressed by the preposition به, as لشکر بهرات کشید he led an army to Herat, اوّلین عزم بمصر بود my first journey was to Egypt, بی‌چشم زخم بطهران رسیدیم we reached Tehran without any mis-hap, پیر زن مرا از حیاطِ کوچکی باطاقی برد the old woman took me through a small courtyard to a room

125 The uses of the word 'زود' may be illustrated thus (i) تو زود آنهارا بشکن break them open quickly, زود سکینه خانم پنجره را پائین می کند Sakinah Khanam quickly lowers the lattice زود برخاسته فرار می کند he runs away, rising in haste (ii) دعا کن برای ما زود تر تمام بشود pray that our suit may soon come to an end, زلیخا را زود تر روانه کن send off Zulaikha quickly (iii) بزودی سرِ معامله را بهم بسته راهِ بازار گرفتم concluding the bargain quickly I took the road to the market, دعا کنم بزودی بآرزوی خود برسی I pray that you may soon attain to your hope (iv) عزم ... به این زودی سر

عروسی روزی does thy bridal take place soon or not ? می کنی یا نه
که در صحت امروز در فراغی گشت when at ease it dir in sh d a rapid
as it had increased while in pain (۲) مخاصی دارد که هرچه زود تر
شما را به بلند he wishes to see you as quickly as possible ! زود زود
تعاطا باسد پاسد quick, quick ! be cautious

126 (a) As a Substantive سلم may b u ! (i) as a سالی
with or without an i fat as لدطه برسلم وجود ملاحد دارد as it
prises all of the phrases of equity این نام در سلم عمر با من می بد
this name has stuck to me through the whole of my lif
سلم کوه و زمین تاکستان است the whole hill-si le and the plain is
one (continuous) vineyard or (ii) as a تاک a دل بدو بدادند
ید و دلم ترسایان سلم the Christians, all gave their heart to him ,
دردد ماید و مرغ هوا را سلم لبیدالصد جز حرص حرص بدام wild and rapa
animals and fowls of the air all naught but greedine
into the snare.

(b) As an Adjective it usually follows the Substantive a
پاسلیان سلم آلو لحم بر حرمیم we ate it half-cooked with perfe t
appetite بامرار تمام آنرا در پیش روی حکیم لهاد they placed it very res-
pectfully in front of the physician اسانی حرام را بامرار تمام گرفته ! I
I received the Order with the utmost respect and sat down

(c) It may also form a part of a Verb , as بسلط ما برامن ده
سلم شد this completed our party تا سلم نکلی خواب حرام است
till you have not finished the work you shall have no sleep
بیک تیرباران ترکمانان کار ما سلم شد on one shower of arrows from
the Turkomans, it was all up with us هنوز تا تمام است it is
yet unfinished

127. The Ablative is formed with the preposition از, and may be used (i) with verbs denoting *removal*, *taking away* or *separation*, as اسب را ارجا برانگیختم I made my horse start from the place, تا کي از با مربوط گفتن دست بر نمي داري how long will you not take away thy hand from using improper talk? سرت را مثالِ سرِ گنجشک ارجاي بر مي کنيم we will separate your head from its usual place just as that of a sparrow, شش هفت تن ار ایشان جدا شدند six or seven persons separated from them (ii) with verbs denoting *delivering*, *freeing*, *bringing* or *fleeing*, as بدين تدبير گريبانم را از چنگش برهانم I will thus free my neck from his clutches, بايد بيرون کشيدن ازين ورطه رختِ خويش one must drag out his own chattels from this whirl-pool, بهزار مشقّت از دستش گريخته است with thousand efforts he has fled from his hands, از آنجا کاسهٔ چيني بروم برم I will take China cups from there to Rum, من از بام فرار کردم I fled by the roof (iii) with verbs denoting *inability* or *defect*, as از آن کار عاجز ماندم I was unable to perform that work, سمند بادپا از تگ فرو ماند the fleet horse could not keep up the pace, کاري از دستم بر نمي آيد I cannot do anything (iv) with verbs denoting *with-holding*, *leaving behind*, or *abandoning*, as دست از طعام کشيد he drew back his hand from the food, برو بگو از اين خيال بيفتد go and tell him to abandon this idea, مدّتيست از وکيلي دست کشيده است for a long time he has given up pleading (v) with verbs denoting *informing*, *displeasing*, *committing*, *revolting against*, *abstaining from*, &c, as آمدم سکينه خانم را از خيالِ آنها خبردار کنم I have come to inform Sikinah Khanam of their thoughts

روحِ همهٔ مُردهاي ما را از خانهٔ ما بیزار کني you will displease the spirits of all our dead relatives against our house-hold, چه تقصیر از من صادر شده است what fault has been committed by me? بر آن پادشاه خروج کرد he revolted against that monarch, زنهار این سخن کوتاه کن abstain from uttering such words, من از او خرسند نیستم I am not in good terms with him من دو سال است از مکتب بیرون آمده ام it is two years that I have left school از دهنت بوي شیر مي آید the smell of milk comes from your mouth درین روز تنگ اعانت خود را از من مضایقه نکني in this evil day you will not refuse me your assistance زنانِ ما همیشه خود شان را از مردها پنهان مي کنند our women always conceal themselves from men ممکن است این تقصیر از زیبا خانم سر زده باشد it is possible that this offence might have issued from Ziba Khanam

128 The uses of the word غایت may be illustrated thus (i) مشکي در غایتِ بزرگي پُر از آب بر دوش an immense sack full of water on the back (ii) در آن منزل مندبه از غایتِ کوفتگي و مفارقت شنبه در گذشت at that stage Mandabah from excess of weariness and separation from Shanmbah expired; (iii) تا روزیکه بحکمِ غایت و ضرورت بنهایت رسد از آن فائده تواند گرفت so that when extreme need and utmost necessity should arise he could reap benefit therefrom (iv) آن کوهي بود بغایت بلندي و رفع that was a mountain of extreme height and elevation (v) امروز مورد عنایاتِ بغایتِ جهانداري گشتم to-day I have become the object of endless royal favours

129 The Locative is expressed by the preposition در بر or به as بر در آن مکتب گذر کردم I passed by the door of that school; مي ترسم وقتِ مرافعه قادر بر اقرار نباشد I fear lest at the time of

یکروز از دروازهٔ طاوچی بیرون شدیم one morning at dawn we went out by the Tawarqchi gate با طلوع - راز بر استر خود یک نیزه آفتاب بلند شد مسافتی از راه قم را پیموده بودم having mounted my mule at break of day I was considerably advanced on my way to Kum ere the sun had risen to the height of a spear (ii) بامدادان بمحض ری رفتم next morning I went to see him

132 While translating an English sentence in the Indirect form of narration it should be first changed into the Direct form of narration, and then rendered into Persian as he asked who that person was (= he asked who that person is) پرسید که آن شخص کیست they said that they wanted to wait (= they said we wanted to wait) گفتند که می خواهیم صبر کنیم he said that he would come to-morrow (= he said I will come to-morrow) گفت فردا می آیم

133 Examples of the uses of the word الحال are (i) الحال بسمت مقر حکومت خود مشهد مقدس می رود now he is proceeding to Mashhed the seat of his government الحال در خود انرژی جوانی در می یابم now I find in me the strength of a youth الحال اینم که می بینی now I am such as you see me (ii) الحال ... روز که در مشهدم it is now sometimes that I have been at Mashhed, تا الحال هم در سایهٔ ... زندگانی می کنم I am still living upon the shelter of thi (reputation)

134. In Concessive Clauses the concession is expressed—(i) by اگر - اگرچه or الرغم, as اگر یک چشم ما در خواب باشد دیگری باز است although our one eye is asleep, the other is open اگر خوب ... و الحساب ... آنرا چگونه ... است

although the blood of Turaj or Afrasiyab is cold, the descendants of Changiz or Halaku still survive, اگر چه در عالم کم خُلقی از چوب و ملک مضایقه ندارد امّا شیرین زبان و دلخواست although in times of ill-temper he is nothing loath to make use of flogging, yet he was sweet-speaking and amiable, با آن کس همان کنم که با این سگ کردم اگر هم فرزند و برادر من باشد I will treat that man exactly as I have treated this dog, even though he were my child or my brother (ii) by باوجود or چندانکه, as باوجود این صفاتِ پسندیده بعدم رحم و قساوتِ قلب مشهور بود, inspite of these laudable qualities he was notorious for mercilessness and hardness of heart, چندانکه ملاطفت کردند آرام نگرفت inspite of all their attempts to soothe him, he received no comfort

135 Arabic Nouns in the Accusative (ending in *tanwin*) are frequntly used in Persian as Adverbs as غالباً probably, حقّاً truly, عمداً or تعمداً intentionally, احیاناً at times, دائماً continually, اصلاً never, انصافاً justly, اولاً firstly, ثانیاً secondly, فوراً at once, حقیقةً in truth, صراحةً clearly, ظاهراً manifestly openly, غفلتاً negligently, مجدداً anew, newly, حقّاً justly, righteously, خصوصاً especially; واقعاً really

136 Compound Verbs (cotinued) (i) عادت کردن یا داشتن to make a practice of (ii) عازم جای بودن to be bound for a place (iii) عائد کردن to return (iv) عذر خواستن to beg pardon; عذر نهادن to excuse (v) عرض کردن to make a petition, to say (*polite*) (vi) عرق ریختن to perspire, عرق کشیدن to distil spirituous liquor (vii) عروسی کردن to make espousals, (viii) عطائی کسی را بلقای او بخشیدن to refuse one's gift (ix) عطسه کردن to sneeze;

(x) عقب جستن to jump back عقب کردن to follow عقب ... (xi) ... to draw back عقب کشیدن ... to betroth, to ... (xii) عمل کردن to act, perform عمل آمدن to come in ... عمل آوردن to carry out (xiii) عرض کردن to change ... (xiv) از عهده برآمدن to fulfil a duty عهده گرفتن to make a ... take a responsibility (xv) ... to matter ... quence ... to find fault (xvi) ... to ... dered ... to destroy (xvii) ... to ... (xviii) غرق شدن to be drowned (xix) ... (xx) غفلت کردن to neglect (xxi) غلط کردن to make a ... to commit a crime (xxii) ... to ... (xxiii) ... to get into a passion (xxiv) عاشق گرفتن to ... a lover (xxv) ... کردن to divulge (a secret) (xxvi) ... to take in ... (xxvii) ... to abuse (a *person*) (xxviii) ... fice oneself (xxix) فرار کردن to flee ... to take to flight (xxx) فراموش کردن to forget (xxxi) ... a carpet (xxxii) فرصت کردن to get a chance ... فرصت ... to take advantage of an opportunity (xxxiii) ... to make a duty of it, to take for granted (xxxiv) ... to hang down the head ; (xxxv) ... to ... shout out (xxxvi) ... to be duped (xxxvii) فکر کردن to reflect فکر ... to give thought to, to take care of ... to give up an idea (xxxviii) فوت شدن to die (xxxix) ... to be at a loss (xl) قائم کردن یا شدن to establish or be established, to hide or be hidden (xli) قبول کردن to accept ... قبول ... to take one at his word قبول ... کردن to be liked

universally (xlii) قدغن شدن to be interdicted (xliii) قرار دادن to fix, قرار گرفتن to establish oneself firmly (xliv) قصد کردن to make an attempt on a man's life or honour (xlv) قرض دادن to lend, قرض گرفتن to borrow (xlvi) قسم خوردن to take an oath (xlvii) قسمت کردن to partition, allot, divide (xlviii) قطع کردن to cross, traverse (xlix) قمار باختن to gamble (l) قلم دادن to give oneself out as so and so, قلم در کشیدن to obliterate (li) قول دادن to give one's word, promise (lii) در قید بودن to be in the hands of

15. Socrates.—II.

In his seventy second year Socrates was brought before the judges The accusers stated their charge as follows "Socrates is an evil-doer, and corrupter of the youth, he does not receive the gods whom the state receives but introduces new divinities" He was tried on these grounds and condemned to die He was taken to his prison, and for thirty days he conversed with his friends on his favourite topics Crito provided for him the means of escaping from the prison, but he would not avail himself of the opportunity He conversed about the immortality of the soul, about courage and virtue, and temperance, about absolute beauty and about absolute good, and about his wife and children He consoled his weeping friends, and gently upbraided them for their complaints about the injustice of his sentence He was about to die Why should they complain? He was far advanced in years Had they waited a short time, the thing would have happened in the course of nature No man ever welcomed death as a new birth to a higher state of being with greater faith The time at length came when the gaoler presented him with the cup of hemlock He drank it with courage, and died in complete calmness "Such was the end" said Pheado, "of our friend, whom I may trully call the wisest and justest and best of all the men whom I have ever known"

At the age of seventy two (در هفتاد و دو سالگي) Socrates (ع) having brought before the judges (محاکمه کننده) thus (چنانچه) they accused (متّهم ساختند) that one of the wicked (يکي از مفسدان) he is, who ignorant youths (جوانان ناشی را) leads stray (از ره) منحرف مي برد) and denier of the gods of our state (منکر خدايان دولت) becoming (شده) with other gods (با خدايان ديگر) he joins (مي پيوندد). Then Socrates (ع) for the crimes stated (بجرائم مذکوره) they tried (محاکمه کرده) and with the punishment of death (بسزاي موت) they condemned (محکّم کردند) After that Socrates (ع) to prison (بزندان) they took (بردند) wherein (که درآنجا) for thirty day (تا سي روز) with his friends and followers (با دوستان و معتقدان خود) having conversed (صحبت داشته) on his favourite topics (دربارهٔ معانيهاي مرغوب طبع خود) of the kind of the immortality of the soul (از قبيل ابديّت روح) and the excellences of the qualities of courage and virtue and temperance (فضايل شمائل شجاعت و تقوي و رياضت) and the substance of absolute beauty and absolute good (ماهيّت حُسن مطلق و خير مطلق) and about his wife and children (در خصوص زن و اطفال خود) he was talking (سخنها مي راند). Crito (قرطو) for him (براي او) the means of escaping from prison (اسباب گريختن از زندان) had provided (آماده کرده بود) but he did not wish (نمي خواست) that he would avail himself of it (از آن بهره بگيرد) and his weeping friends (ياران اشکبار خود را) he was consoling (تسلّي مي داد) that why (چرا) about the injustice of this sentence (از بيداد اين حکم) that passes over me (که بر من مي گذرد) do you complain (ناله و فرياد بکنيد), for (که) I am a person

about to die (من شخصي مردني ام) and the period of my life has reached the limit (ايّام عمرم بپايان رسيده) Then what is the complaint (پس شكايت يعني چه) ? If a short time (قدري) they had waited (توقّف كرده‌دي) my death (مرگم) naturally (طبعاً) would have happened (اتّفاق افتادي) Moreover (علاوه برين) (ايمانم) is upon this (برايناست) that death a new birth itself is (موت عين ولادت جديده است) which us (مارا) to a higher state of being (بزندگي اعلي تر) make reach (برساند), and with a stronger faith (با اعتقاد قوي تر) than (از) this my faith no man ever welcomed death (هرگز هيچ انساني موت را بپذيرفته) At the appointed time (در وقت معيّن) that at length came (برسيد) the gaoler (زندانبان) before him (پيش وي) a cup full of deadly poison (قدحي پر از سم قاتل) presented (احضار نمود) that drink (بنوش) Then Socrates it (آنرا) with perfect courage (بجرأت تمام) he drank (بنوشيد) and in extreme calmness (درغايت خود داري) gave up the ghost (جان بحق تسليم نمود) Phaedo (فيدو) was saying that thus (همچنين) came to end (اختتام يافت) the dear life of that friend of ours (عمر عزيز آن دوست ما) concerning whom (كه در حصوص وي) truly (براستي or بدرستي) I can say (مي توانم بگويم) that a man (انساني or مردي) was wisest (دانا ترين) and justest (عادلترين) and best of (گزيده ترين) those whom (آنانكه) in my own life (در عمر خود) I have seen or heard of (ديده و شنيده ام)

NOTES

137 (*a*) Participles of Agency are formed in Persian—(1) by adding نده to the Imperative stem, as داننده knower (from

(بانسانی) روندہ goer (from رفتن) , رانندہ thrower or shooter (from رسی) بینندہ seer (from دیدن) اندازندہ thrower (from انداختن) (ii) by adding the suffix کار or گر at the end of words as زیانکار doing harm (from زیان) شتابکار acting hastily (from شتاب) خواستار demander (from خواست) آفریدگار creator (from آفرید) پرهیزکار abstaining from (from پرهیز) ستمگار or ستمگر tyrannising (from ستم) آهنگر working in iron or blacksmith (from آهن) (iii) by adding the suffix ار or دار at the end of words, as خریدار purchaser (from خرید) دادار creator (from داد) قلعدار the fort-keeper (from قلع) ملکدار possessing kingdom (from ملک) (iv) by adding an Imperative stem at the end of nouns as خبردار having information ; پیدا کن maker کاردان knower of work, experienced دعویدار claimant.

(b) These participles may be used—(i) as substantives, as پول پیدا کن است he is a money maker باری منالان و دعویداران دین را نیز بدکان خود بکشید he attracted to his shop even the priests and those who have any pretensions to religion • شنیدہ ام تو پیش عمه ام خواستگار فرستادہ ای I have heard that you sent to my aunt to demand me in marriage (ii) as adjectives, as این کتاب را مفید تر و ارزندہ سازم I will make this book more useful and worthy. دختر صرّافی توانگر را خواستگاری کرد he asked in marriage the daughter of a rich banker

138. The uses of the word راه may be illustrated thus (i) در راه ناخوش بستری افتادہ درین کاروانسرای بهلوئی منزل دارد having taken ill on the way and been confined to bed he has taken up his abode in this adjoining caravanserai از میان راه کرد

و غباري عظيم برخاست from the middle of the road a great cloud of dust arose , دور از راه در درهٔ خلوتي آتشي افروخت he lit a fire in a solitary glen at a distance from the road , در عرض راه هديه‌ها را گرفتم on my way I received many presents ; پس من اين همه راه آمده ام که تو مرا بجاي خر نگهداري then am I come all this way that you should make an ass of me ? (ii) زنِ نوش در آن سفر همراه بود his new wife accompanied him on that journey , خود را در يک تير پرتاب روبروي رهگذران بديديم we found ourselves face to face with the travellers at a bow-shot distance , راهِ طلبِ سعادت مردم مختلف است يکي شاه راه مي گيرد يکي کوره راه يکي از راهِ نو مي رود there are different ways by which men seek to obtain happiness, one keeps to the high road, some takes to the by-path and another strikes out a new path for himself (iii) چشم براهِ من نشسته بود he was waiting for me with great impatience , امّا کم کم راهِ شرعي بدستش آورديم but little by little I began to find out legal excuses for my conduct ; اگر دکان براه مي اندازم کرايه زمين مي ماند if I set up a shop, I shall have to pay rent for the land , بدلها راه تواني يافت you can find access to hearts of men , راهِ اصفهان را پيش گرفتم I started for Ispahan , بيست و يکم ربيع الاوّل چهل و پنج دقيقه پيش از طلوع آفتاب براه افتاد on the twenty-first day of the Rabiul-awwal, forty-five minutes before sunrise he took to the road, (iv) راهِ اعتبار مسدود شد the way to the people's confidence was shut up , شاه راهِ اعتبار و احترام بررويم گشوده شد the road to the highest considerations was open to me , اگر از تو خوشنود شود هنر خود را بتو بياموزد که راهِ مداخلي برايت خواهد شد if he be pleased with you, he will teach you his profession which will be a source

[illegible] of income to you

by flattery and glibness of tongue I obtained access to the society of the chief priest (۱) [illegible] for this purpose they offer to throw money on board until the *Pasha* shall say stop [illegible]

[illegible] I would sacrifice my life for his sake [illegible] for the sake of God I shall let you ride upon my mules (gratis) (۲) [illegible] in short sometimes taking to the main road and sometimes going out of it, we reached the frontier of [illegible] without any hindrance [illegible] by the main roads and short cuts he brought me to this place [illegible] her and [illegible] the way was filled with poor women who went to the doctor's residence with children to have them vaccinated (۳) [illegible] I left him to himself in order that he might obtain a knowledge of the localities [illegible] you may thoroughly learn the where-withals of a priest.

139 The uses of خود may be illustrated thus (۱) [illegible] if thou give me leave I will not with this grief remain one day alive [illegible] you have given yourself a good deal of trouble [illegible] I thought in my mind (۲) [illegible] in all his life he has never hunted a sparrow [illegible] but since thou

hast confessed thy fault in a manly way, I pass by thy crime ; بخواهش خود باين زودي زن نخواهم برد of my own free will, I will not marry so soon , من با همين لباس بحضور شاه خود مي روم in this very dress I go to the presence of my own king (iii) خود علي محمد است it is Ali Muhammad himself , خود عيره سه تومان از جيب شوهرش در آورده بود the woman herself took three *túmáns* out of her husband's pocket , بحرف خود شما رسوم آنها را نيز بايد دانست by your own saying one should know their customs too , هر طوريكه دل خواه خود تست اين كار را صورت بدهد he will manage this affair for you in any way you may wish (iv) خودت بعجز و التماس مارا اينجا آورده thou thyself with entreaties and prayers hast brought us here , هرچه خود تان وعده كرده ايد whatever you yourself have promised , من براي ديگري چاه كندم خودم بچاه افتادم I dug a pit for another, but have myself fallen into the well , درد خودم براي خودم بس است my own grief is enough for me , اتق را بخودمان بخندانيم we shall make all the people laugh at us , بچه شيرين زباني خودش را كنار مي كشد the sweet-tongued child draws herself aside , شما كه ميرزا سليم پسر وزير قديمي را بنوكري خود آورده (v) you have taken into your service Mirza Salim, the son of the late vazir , اينها چه حرفهاست بپيش خود مي سازي what speeches are these that you are concocting ? دزد را بپاي خود مي آورد it will make the thief come of his own accord , از حسن نتيجه تقدس فروشي خود بر خود باليدم I hugged myself in the success of my attempt to appear pious , پس از اندكي بخود آمد he came round shortly (vi) عمه ام حرف بيهودي زده باشد my aunt may have said foolish things , ازين حرفها تيمور آقا نمي تواند از خنده خود داري كند at these words Timur Aqa

becomes unable to contain himself with laughter از تلخکامی خود داری نمی توانستم کرد out of disappointment I could not keep myself calm بی اختیار باد کرده اظهار خود فروشی نمودم involuntarily I felt a pride and affected a certain tone of superiority in my manners محض برای خودنمائی — مصطبهٔ قهوه خانه را گزیدم for exhibiting my person in public, I chose the *mastabah* of a coffee-house.

140 Arabic broken plurals when used in Persian, may admit of the Persian plural suffix ان or ها as اربابان lords (from ارباب plural of رب) امرایان nobles, princes (from امرا pl of امیر) اطرافها sides (from اطراف pl of طرف) عجائبها wonders (from عجائب pl. of عجیب)

141 The Sociative Case (or the case of associated circumstances) is expressed in Persian by the Preposition با, as با درویش بدین ممالک و اقالیم بسیار پیمودم I travelled many countries and regions in company of the dervish Bedin خلیفهٔ بزرگ ارمنیان با توابع و خدم حشم از رهبان و سایر کشیشان در آنجا می نشیند the head of the Armenian church, with subordinates and retinue consisting of the priests and monks, resides therein بزبان با ملک و بدل با دشمنان ملک in speech he is with the king, but in heart with the king's enemies با دبدبه و طنطنهٔ تمام داخل مشهد شدیم we entered Mashhed with all the noise and pomp با رفیق خود می گفت he was talking to his fellow, قلمدانی آوردند با ورقی بزرگ از کاغذ they brought a pen-case with a big piece of paper لباس خود را با تکلفی بیشتر از رسم معهود پوشیدم I dressed myself with more care than usual.

142 (*a*) The Verb-Adjective formed by suffixing ي to the Infinitive may by used (i) to mark an action as '*to be done*', as آنچه کردني بود کرديم we did what was to be done (ii) to signify '*propriety*', as چنين سخن گفتني نيست such a speech is not proper to be spoken, (iii) to show '*fitness*' of an action, as آبِ اين جوي خوردني نيست the water of this stream is unfit for drinking (iv) to indicate '*sufficiency*', as پولِ رفتنيِ طهران ندارم I have not money enough for the journey to Tehran (v) to show the '*possibility*' of an action, as از تو جدا شدني نه ام it is not possible for me to be separated from thee (vi) to indicate '*futurity*', as که من رفتني ام for I am about to depart, در اوّلِ بهار کاروان رفتني بود the caravan was about to depart in the early spring

(*b*) This Verb-Adjective may also be used as a substantive, as اين قدر خوردني تبرّک بپذير accept this much food as a present, خوردني زياد پوشيدني فراوان more than enough *to* eat and plenty of clothes, جز از رستنيها نخوردند چيز they ate nothing but plants.

143. The letter م is used —(i) to denote the possessive pronoun '*my*', as رختم نو است my dress is new, في الفور يک طلا دستم نهاد immediately he placed a gold piece in my hand (ii) to represent the Accusative or the Dative of the first person singular, as تکانم داده انداخت he threw me down with a push, چه مي فرمايئم what art thou ordering me? پادشاه خلعتم بخشيد the king gave me a robe of honour اي قناعت توانگرم گردان O contentment, make me rich (iii) as a Verbal ending for the

first person singular as اسب همه بلارده ترمان و پاک باختم to night I have played away all the fifteen *tumans* نمی دانم دیگر چه می کند I dont know what else he may do (iv) in the sense of *I am* as اینجا منتظرم I am waiting here دو ماه است ناخوش بستریم for two months I am sick on bed من سگ که ام whose dog am I ? (v) to form Ordinal Numerals as بآسمان پنجم to the fifth sky گفتار یازدهم the eleventh discourse ; مجلس دوم the second act درجهٔ دهم the tenth class بیست و یکم محرم the twenty-first day of Muharram : (vi) to form Prohibitive Imperatives as زبانت را بر مگردان don t turn your tongue round غم مدار have no sorrow ازین ار جانب من هرگز قمار بازی مکنا never after this gamble in my name : (vii) to form the Feminine gender of certain words of Turkish origin as بیگم lady (from بیگ) خانم princess (from خان) (vii) to form an Arabic Noun of *place instrumentality* or *agency* as مسجد a mosque, مدرسه a college مفتاح a key , مطرب a musician

144 The uses of the word قدر may be illustrated thus : (i) قدر نعمت بعد زوال the worth of a blessing (is best appreciated) when it is no more بقدر سر موی باور نمی کنند they don t believe it a single hair's end بقدر لزوم آنها گوش و دم را ... they will wag their ears and tails according as it may be necessary اسپان را بقدر طاقت و توان راندیم we made the horses run according to their power and strength (ii) بعنی من آنقدر احمقم که اینطور باور می کردم that is to say I am such a fool that I should have believed this اگر بقراباغ نمی آمد این قدرت را از کجا بدست می آورد if he had not come to Karabagh how could he

have obtained such riches? هر قدر برادرت نمی ستم کرده بجدائی ما تلاش می کرد من همان قدرها پاداری نموده جور او را می کشیدم however-much your brother cruelly sought to separate us, remaining equally constant, I bore his violence (iii) پسرها چه قدر آدم اراین جا بارهٔ بی غیرتید boys, what unambitious men are you? چه قدر میل است چه قدر راه است how far is it to your village? چه قدر مهیب شدی how terrific thou hast become! درجهٔ من رتبهٔ تو چه قدر زیاد تر خواهد شد how much both my rank and your position will increase thereby! (iv) قدری حرف زد he said a few words, قدری دوا از صندوقچهٔ خود باو تعارف کردم I presented him with a small quantity of medicine from my box, دلم می خواهد باتو قدری گفتگو کنم I wish to speak a little with you, دریغ که قدری زود رسیدم it is a pity that I reached a little too early, عیب ندارد قدری گشاد و بلند ندوزند no matter, if they make it a little too broad or too long

145 The Comparative Construction in Persian may be expressed (i) by putting the Noun denoting the object with which the comparison is made in the Ablative case with از, as آبرو بهتر از مال است honour is better than wealth, از لقمان دانا تر است و از جالینوس بالاتر he is wiser than Luqman and superior to Galen, اورا از دیگران استوارتر بسته بودند they had bound him tighter than the others, این بیش از آن به کمین پایه ترین شعرا داد he gave more than that to the humblest of poets (ii) by expressing the '*than*' of the comparison by که following the Adjective, as مردنت به که مردم آزاری thy death was better than afflicting mankind, در کوهستان گرسنه تاب برهنه وبی خانمان گراز چرانیدن بهتر که در پرنیان و حریر زیر دست و بیعار بودن it is better to live a swine-herd in

the Georgian mountains, naked and houseless, than be a hanger-on in all these silks بازوی بخت به که بازوی سخت the fortunate arm is better than the strong arm (iii) sometimes by using the Comparative Adjective without any comparative particle as راست گوئی در همه وقت بهتر است و شخص راستگو در هر دو جهان عزیز و برتر it is better to tell the truth at all times and a truthful person is honoured and exalted in both the worlds بدشواری تمیز می توانستند داد که در تیغ زنی چیره ترم یا در سخندانی it could with difficulty be said whether I was more accomplished as a barber or as a scholar

146 Some of the uses of the word جان may be illustrated thus (i) عمو جان قربان سرت dear uncle, may I be the sacrifice for thy head بجان پدر و مادرت by the life of thy father and mother آقا جان دعوای تو سر چه my dear sir what is the ground for thy claim? (ii) با جان و دل برای انجام فرمایشات سرکار حاضرم I am ready with life and heart to carry out the orders of Your Excellency مال فدای جان است goods are a sacrifice for life مگر دل شیر داری یا از جانت نمی ترسی but have you a lion's heart or have you no fear for your life? روح القدس بدمیدن جان در بدنم آمد the angel of life came to blow a fresh soul into my body (iii) برای مثل شما جوانانی رعنا یکی بیست سی درهم خرجی دادن از جان می کند he roots up his life to give the expenses of twenty or thirty *tumáns* to such fine young men as you میرزا آقا سر بجانی نکسر بخانهٔ زنبورکچی باشی تاخت the scribe, fired with zeal, made directly for the house of the general of the camel artillery (iv) با از دست از جان شسته گفته ام having given up the hope of life, I have

spoken to him , برو دعا بجانِ این مرد کن go and pray for the life of this man , همهٔ شکایتها را بجانِ او بستند they attached all the grievances to him , بآنکه او شیرازي و من اصفهاني دوست جاني شديم although he was from Shiraz and I from Isphan, yet we became intimate friends , جواني ارمني جانِ خود را براهِ من نهاده بود an Armenain youth had placed his life at our disposal , مارا آفتِ جاني است he is our mortal enemy , ابراهيم در ميدانِ جنگ جان داد Ibrahim lost his life in the field of battle , شاد باش كه از جان گذشتيم و جا بتو گذاشتيم be of good cheer, I give up my life and leave the place to you (v) باين جانثاري در نزدِ امثال و اقرانِ خود روسفيد گشتي on account of this devotion you have become distinguished among your equals and peers , نسيم جان پرور a soul-nourishing breeze , بمجرد يک نگاهِ جانکاه طائرِ دلش اسيرِ دامِ آن مشکين موي گرديد immediately on one soul-piercing glance his heart became enamoured of this black-haired beauty

147 (a) The Superlative construction is expressed (i) by joining the Superlative Adjective by an *izáfat* to the Noun in the plural denoting the object with which the comparison is made , as او آن مبلغ را بگرانمايه‌ترينِ شعرا داد he gave the amount to the best of poets , لباسش عجيب ترين و مضحک ترينِ البسه كه در عمر خود ديده ام his attire was the strangest and funniest of all those I have ever seen , حجرهٔ توانگرترينِ بازرگانان را مي دانستم I knew the rooms of the richest of the merchants (ii) by putting the preposition 'از' after the Superlative Adjective , بهترين از پادشاهان بود he was the best of kings (iii) by putting the Superlative Adjective before a singular Noun , در واقع كمدل و كم زهره

درین مردم بود in reality he was the most cowardly man, اوّلش تتلی فروش مشهد مرا آمدم I became the foremost vendor of smokes in Meshhed (iv) by putting the Superlative Adjective after a singular Noun connected by an *isáfat* as این دیدار آخرین است this is the last interview بلند کمترین ملّا می باشم I the humblest servant am a priest.

(b) Certain Comparative constructions have the force of the Superlative as از برترین برتر است he is higher than the highest جایش از همه بهتر و بالاتر بود his place was the best and highest آب من از آب همه کرانه مند تر بود my booty was the most considerable راستی رختی به از رخت من نیست truly my attire is the best of all (lit. no attire is better than mine)

(c) The utmost possible degree is expressed by prefixing هرچه to the Comparative Adjective as هرچه زود تر شتابید hasten as quickly as possible برگ و سازش هرچه گرانبها تر بود his trappings were as costly as possible.

148 Compound Verbs (continued) —(i) کار از پیش بردن to carry out or succeed in affair بکار کسی خوردن to be useful to one کار بیش آوردن to occupy a person with anything از کار گذشتن to drop a matter کارسازی کردن to be repaid (ii) کج نگاه کردن to look askance at, to glance at (iii) کرامت کردن to give in mercy to vouchsafe (iv) کرنشی کردن to make a low prostration (v) کشتی با آن to make others wrestle کشتی گرفتن to wrestle (oneself) (vi) کف زدن to foam froth (vii) کلاه کسی برداشتن to get the better of a person (viii) کم آمدن to be insufficient, کم کردن to diminish (ix) کنار جستن to jump aside کنار کشیدن to

draw aside, to get away (x) کوتاه کردن to cut short (xi) کوچه علطي نمودن to mislead (xii) کور کردن to blind (xiii) کوک کردن to wind up (*a watch*), to tune (*a musical instrument*) (xiv) کول زدن to strike on the back (in the sense of admiring), کول گرفتن to take by or on the shoulder (xv) گرد آمدن to gather round, گرد کردن to surround, to invest (xvi) گردن زدن to strike off the head, گردن گرفتن to undertake responsibility (xvii) کنار گرفتن to chum with (*some one*) (xviii) گریه کردن to weep (xix) الدیر کردن to clean (*corn*) or sift (xx) گلوله باریدن to pour forth shots (xxi) گم شدن to be lost, to go away (xxii) گمان بردن to believe, suspect, بدگمان شدن to suspect evil of (*a person*) (xxiii) گمراه نمودن to lead astray (xxiv) گوش دادن to listen, attend to (xxv) گول خوردن to be deceived (xxvi) گوي بردن to excell (xxvii) گیر افتادن to become enured, گیر آوردن to obtain, get, گیر کردن to get into a difficulty (xxviii) لاف زدن to brag of, to boast (xxix) لازم داشتن to want, require (xxx) لخت کردن to rob, dispoil (xxxi) لشکر کشیدن to lead an army against, to attack (xxxii) لنگ کردن to halt (xxxiii) مات ماندن to be struck dumb with surprise (xxxiv) مالامال بودن to teem with (xxxv) مأمور فرمودن to give orders, to be employed or despatched (xxxvi) متحیر ماندن to be astonished (xxxvii) متفرق شدن to disperse, separate (xxxviii) متوجه شدن to pay attention to, (xxxix) مجادله کردن to dispute, to have an altercation (xl) مجال کردن to be able, or be in a position to (xli) محافظت کردن to guard, preserve (xlii) محبت ورزیدن to display affection (xliii) مخالفت کردن to resist (xliv) مراجعت فرمودن یا نمودن to return (xlv) مسوده نمودن to

prepare a rough draft (xlv) گشت زدن to box (xlvii) مشغول شدن to be occupied with (xlviii) مشکل پسندی کردن to be fastidious (xlix) مشهور کردن to make well known (l) مصروف شدن to be spent (li) مقابله کردن to oppose, refuse (lii) مضحک شمردن to regard as rediculous (liii) معامله کردن to trade, negotiate (liv) معذرت خواستن to embrace (lv) معانقه کردن to excuse (lvi) معرفی شدن to make oneself known to (lvii) معزول ساختن to dismiss (from service) (lviii) معطل شدن to be delayed معطل کردن to ... (lix) معلوم شدن to be known, to be evident (lx) مفقود شدن to be denounced مفقود خود دانستن to denounce oneself (lxi) مقصر شدن to fail in duty; مقصر کردن to reproach with neglect or fault (lxii) ملاحظه کردن to look at, to pause, to think (lxiii) ملول شدن از to be tired of a thing, to feel *ennui* (lxiv) منت بر کسی گذاشتن to please anyone (lxv) منتظر بودن to be waiting for (lxvi) منظور نظر خاص گردیدن to become a special favourite with (lxvii) مورد قبول عامه شدن to be popular مستحق مکافات بودن to be entitled to reward (lxviii) مهمان رفتن to go as a guest (lxix) از میدان در رفتن to give up a contest پی کسی رفتن to follow some one's track از میان برداشتن یا دور کردن to get rid of (lxx) میل داشتن یا کردن to be inclined, to desire.

16 The Character of Nadir Shah

Born of low rank, Nadir appears to have owed the distinction, which he early obtained among his rude associates, to his uncommon bodily strength, his determined courage and a strong natural sense, which, though afterwards improved by experience, was never cultivated by education. The wretched

condition of his native country was calculated to excite in his ardent mind the noblest ambition, and when we reflect on the success which attended his first efforts against the Afghans, we are almost reconciled to his usurping the name of that sovereignty, the substance of which he had long enjoyed, and which he could not have resigned without extreme danger to himself, and to a nation that had been saved by his valour and his genius The riches and renown, which he obtained by his expedition to India, gave him great means of restoring Persia to her ancient splendour, and his invasion of Bokhara, while it was the best and indeed the only way to secure the continual tranquillity of his own possessions, added, perhaps, still more to his fame and power Hitherto this monarch, whether we consider the noble and patriotic object which first stimulated his ambition, the valour and ability he displayed, the comparative moderation with which he used his success or the glorious deeds he performed, is entitled to great, if not unqualified admiration But a dreadful change took place in his disposition and character From the time when his mind was subdued by avarice and suspicion, he became one of the most cruel of tyrants; and Persia by a strange destiny, seemed doomed to receive her death from that hand, to which, a few years before, she had owed her existence The character of this wonderful man is, perhaps, exhibited in its truest colours in those impressions which the memory of his actions has left on the minds of his country-men They speak of him as a deliverer and a destroyer, but while they dwell with pride on his deeds of glory, they express more pity than horror for the cruel enormities which disgraced the latter years of his reign, and neither his crimes, nor his attempts to abolish their religion, have subdued the gratitude and veneration for the hero, who revived in the breasts of his degraded country-men a sense of their former fame, and who restored Persia to independence

As (چون) Nadir (نادر) worthy lineage (نسبي شايسته) had not (نداشت) thus it appears (مي نمايد) that early (در اوايلِ حال) his uncommon bodily strength and courage and fixed determination and intelligence and natural sense (قوتِ بدني نادر الكرد و شجاعت و عزمِ ثابت و ذكا و كياستِ طبيعي او) the cause of distinction

(صحبت امثال) among his rude associates (مابین همسران و انبازان غیر مکتسب خود) became and the sharpness of his genius and natural sagacity (حدّت ذهن و فراستِ ذاتي او) although afterwards (من بعد) by experience (بتجربت) it improved (زیاده شد) yet (امّا) never by education culture it received (هرگز بتربیت [illegible] نیافته). The wretched condition and confusion of his native country (خرابي و هرج و مرج مرز و بوم خود) in his ardent mind (در دلِ پر غیرتش) noble ambition (حمیّتِ بزرگ) excited (برانگیخته) and when the efforts that ([illegible]) regarding the driving out of the Afghans (درباب اخراج افاغنه) he did and his success (فیروزي وي) in this respect (دراین باب) is reflected on (ملاحظه شود) one can say that usurping of the name of sovereignty (غصبِ نام پادشاهي) improper (بیجا) it was not (نبود) for the reason that (بسبب اینکه) it was long (مدّتها بود) that in reality (در حقیقت) this affair (امر) with him was, and he could not resign it (نمي توانست آنرا ترك كند) because (چه) such step (این حرکت) the cause of great danger and painful injury (باعثِ خطرِ عظیم و ضررِ الیم) would have become (شده بالفعل) both for himself and for a nation (هم بجهتِ خود او و هم بجهتِ ملّتي) which by his valour and genius (بشجاعت و کاردانيِ او) from the claws of enemies (از چنگِ اعدا) freedom (خلاصي) had obtained (یافته بود). The riches (دولتي) that the expedition to India (از لشکر کشي هندوستان) he obtained (بچنگ آورد) and the renown (شهرتي) that by this means (بدین منوال) he secured (حاصل نمود) the cause of this (علّتِ این) became that the ancient splendour of Persia (تجمّلِ و [illegible] قدیم ایران را) he restored (تازه کرد), and the invasion (تاخت و تازي) that upon the country

of Bokhara (بلاد بخارا) he made, firstly (اولاً) the best way (بهترین وجهی) and indeed (في الواقع) the only means (واسطهٔ تنها) for the sake of continued tranquillity of his own possessions (بجهت آرامي پاینده ممالک خود) was, and secondly (ثانیاً) added still more to his power and fame (بر قوت و آوازه اش دیگر افزود). Whether (خواه) upon the actions that a nice sense of honour of the country (غیرت ملک) and patriotism (حب الوطن) in the beginning (در اوایل) him upon that (در آن) kept (داشت) or (یا) upon the valour and bravery and knowledge of affairs (بر شجاعت و شجاعت و کاردانی) which during life-time (در ایام حیات) from him appeared (ظاهر شد) we observe (نظر کنیم), or (خواه) upon the courtesy (مروت) and politeness that (مداراتیکه) in every one (هریک) of his victories (در فتوحات خود) he displayed (آشکار کرد) or (یا) upon the glorious deeds (کارهاي بزرگ) that he performed (از وي صادر شد) we consider (تأمل کنیم), in every way (بهرحالت) although (اگرچه) for the sake of this monarch (براي این پادشاه) unqualified praise and approbation (کمال ستایش و تحسین) may not be permissible (روا نداشته باشد) but undoubtedly (بی همه چیز) entitled to great respect and eulogy (مستحق و سزاوار تکریم و تمجید) سزاوار) is, but (لاکن) the dreadful change (تغییري خطرناک) which in the latter days of life (اواخر عمر) in his disposition (مزاجش) took place (پیدا شد) and the avarice (حرص) and suspicion (بدگماني) which upon his nature (طبیعتش) conquered (غلبه کرد) him among (از) the cruellest of the tyrants (بیرحم ترین ظلمه) made (ساخت), as though (گویا) it had been destined (مقدر شده بود) that Persia from the same hand (از همان دستي) as (که)

a few years before (سالي چند قبل ازين) the beverage of his (شربت حمام) it received (شد) the blow of death (ضربت ممات) should receive (بايد). From the impressions that (حالاتي كه) the memory of the actions and deeds of this wonderful man (ياد افعال و كردار اين مرد غريب) on the minds of his country men has produced (بر ضماير هموطنان او پيدا كرده است) the estimate of the goodness and badness of his character (اندازه خوبي و زشتي سرشت را) as it ought to be (كماينبغي) one can do (مى تواند بكند), so that (چنانچه) him both deliverer and destroyer of Persia (هم رستگار و هم تباه كار ايران) they say but on his deeds of glory (بر كارهاي بزرگش) they dwell with pride (افتخار مى كنند) and upon his grievous enormities and oppression and tyranny (بر گناهان شنيع و ظلم و تعديش) that the latter years of his reign (اواخر عهد سلطنتش را) defiled (ملوث ساخت) in place of expressing of horror and malediction (بجاي اظهار وحشت و نفرين) for the most part (بيشتر) they express pity (تأسف مى خورند) Neither his crimes (نه گناهاني كه از وي صادر شده بود) nor (و نه) the extreme efforts (كوششهاي بليغ) which for changing the religion of the inhabitants of Persia (كه براي تغير دادن مذهب اهالي ايران) he made use of (بكار برده بود) the gratitude and veneration (سپاسداري و احترامرا) from their mind (دلهاي) has obliterated (محو كرده است) which is due to that hero (كه سزاوار آن بهادر شجاع است) who on the minds of his degraded country men (بر دلهاي هموطنان افتاده خود) the former fame of (ننگ و ناموس قديم) Persian (را) revived (تازه كرد) and the government of (حكومت) Persia (را) again (باز) independent (مستقل) he made (گردانيد)

NOTES

149 Some of the uses of the word 'وجود' may be thus illustrated (i) عشق وطن سراپای وجود این جوان را مسخر داشت the feeling of patriotism enthralled the whole frame of this young man from head to foot, وجودش مروج سر بلندی و مباهات است his personality is the cause of honour and glory (to the nation), با وجود تو کسی لقمان را بچیزی و بقراط را به پشیزی نمی شمارد as compared to yourself neither Luqman nor Hippocrates is of any account (ii) وجود ندارد it does not exist, وجود شما غنیمت your presence is a gain, در تمام ایران از وجود قانون احدی خبر نداشت through-out the whole of Persia not a single person was aware of the existence of Law (iii) بدانند وطنی که بحب آن مأموریم همانا خاک پاکی است که در آن بعرصهٔ وجود آمده ایم let them know that the birth-place to the love of which we have been commanded is verily none other than the holy land on which we have come into existence, ضعف در وجودش مستولی شده از پای در افتاد weakness having overpowered him, he fell down, شارع مقدس ما چه صدمات بگرامی وجودش روا داشت what pains and troubles did our holy law-giver hold permissible to his gracious person

150 Examples illustrating the uses of the word 'غیر' are (i) دیگر غیر از این چاره نمانده است there is no other help for it but this, غیر از شما دیگران بچه را در بغل او دیده اند others than you have seen the child in his arms, غیر از این چه حرف زده است besides this what has he said? این راز را غیر از من و او کسی نمی دانست no one save him and me knew this secret (ii) یقین است غیر از این نیست it is certainly not otherwise, گله و ایلخی که از پدرم مانده بدست غیر

بیفتد the flocks and horses my father has left should fall into the hands of others (iii) اما شما بخاطر بعضی آرزو هاي دور و دراز ی خواستی اورا بآن فلان مرحوم بدهی but you by reason of certain further and ultimate aims wished to give her to that defunct of accursed memory باید وزرای بی اطّلاع غیر کافی و باغرض را از ریاست خلع کند he must of necessity set aside un informed, incompetent and interested individuals from (the duties of) the state مرتّجل و غیر مرتّجل بنظم قطعه و غزل مي پرداختم I engaged myself in composing quartets and odes either extempore or otherwise

151 **Time Future** may be indicated by the Adverbial phrases (*a*) من بعد as من بعد وزارترا بهرکس که سزاوار میدانید بدهید as for the future give the vizir ship to whomsoever you may know to be fit من بعد نمي توانم اورا اینجا بگذارم henceforward I cannot leave her here and (*b*) بعد ازین پس از این as بعد از این دیگر اسم مرا بزبان نیار after this do not mention my name پس از این چه خواهم کرد after this what shall I do ?

152 The uses of the word هرگز may be illustrated thus (i) هرگز ایران را چنین شاهي نبود Persia never had such a monarch این زمان در یوروپا هرگز مشهور نبود G up to this time it was never known in Europe هرگز بدزدي نرفته بودم I had never been out to rob چون اهل این شهر هرگز ایرانی ندیده بودند از ملاقات ما خیلي متعجّب بودند as the people of this city had never seen a Persian, they were much surprised at the sight of us (ii) من آن مردکه را هرگز ندیده ام I have never seen that mannikin من در عمرم هرگز گردش نرفته ام in my life I have never been on an expedition , من هرگز آدمی باین منکري ندیده ام I have never seen such obstinate a man

(iii) عمّوم هرگز نخواهد كه مرا بديگري بدهد my uncle will never give me to another, بمرگِ تو هرگز راضی نمی شوم I will never consent to thy death, بارواح پدرم كه هرگز نخواهم بخشيد by the soul of my father never will I forgive him, هرگز عصيانِ ملک نينديشم I never contemplate treachery against the king (iv) هرگز ناقمه من دشنام نفرموده ام با شمشير در پيش من نيائيد did I not order you, never to come into my presence with a sword? هرگز دزدی رفته hast thou ever committed, robbery? هرگز خدا راضي مي شود و شهباز مرود پاريس پي خوشگذراني بچهٔ پانزده سالهٔ گل رخسارهٔ ام آه بكشد و از ديده خون بريزد should ever God permit Shahbaz go to Paris in pursuit of enjoyment, and my rosy-cheeked child of fifteen would heave sighs and would pour blood from her eyes?

153 The 'instrument,' 'means,' or 'the thing with which any action is performed' is commonly expressed in Persian by the particle به or با, and sometimes by از, as (i) بنام تو در را بمن باز كردانيد with thy name they made me open the door, خودت بعجز و الحاس مارا تا اينجا آوردهٔ thou thyself, with entreaties and prayers, hast brought us here, قضا اين درويش را بمارسانيده تا بجادوي او آنجا را كوبيده خراب كنيم fate has brought this darvish to me that we may ruin that place by his magic, سلطان محمود غزنوي براي اين جرم يكي از مقرّبانِ خود را بدستِ خود گردن زد Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni, with his own hand, struck off the head of one of his courtiers for this crime. (ii) چپوقِ خود را با آتشِ اجاقِ يانقو برافروخت he lighted his pipe with Yanqu's charcoal fire, سررا بزمين انداخت و با نوکِ پا غلطانيد he threw the head on the ground and made it roll with the tips of his foot, با دستِ خود سفارش نامهٔ نوشت

he wrote a letter of recommendation with his own hand رقعه‌ای به خط خود توصیه نامه درست کرد با حیله و تدبیر her pleader by trickery prepared a deed of gift (iii) هر چه را که از شفقت دولت عالیه ما دایر شده است همه را خوانده و آموختهٔ all this thou hast read and learnt in the colleges which have been opened by the kindness of our own exalted Government پارسی عربی و آ وعلم زبان فرنگ و بتوسط سفارتی این مرد مشهور می شوم by being taken to Paris and learning the French language, and by being introduced to the State by this man, I shall become known

154 The uses of the word چنگ may be illustrated thus (i) براستی مرا از چنگ این عرب بیمروت آزاد کردید truly you have freed me from the clutches of this inhuman Arab بحق مردی و مردانگی این زن را از چنگ سردار برهانید by the dues of manliness and humanity rescue this female from the grasp of the Sardar گناه من نه آن که اورا از چنگ دشمن بیرون بردم بلکه چرا نقابش گشودم my crime consisted not in forcing her away from the clutches of the enemy but in removing her veil (ii) همین که مطلب حکیم باشی بچنگم آمد برخاستم I rose to depart, as soon as the object of the chief physician's desire came to my grasp بتفصیل بیان خواهم کرد که بعد از آن چگونه بچنگ حکیم افتادم I shall narrate (to you) the particulars, how after that I fell into the hands of the physician (iii) آن وقت جای امید آن بود که دامن مقصود بچنگم آید at the time it was hoped that the skirt of desire might come to my grasp در آنجا وسایل را بچنگ می آوردم at that point I used to take them in آواز او چنگ بدل نمی زند his voice doth not attract در سراچهٔ حکیم باشی مشتمل بر ... چنگ بدل می زند in the inner court of the physician's

house, I saw several females, but they were not particularly attracting

155 Examples illustrating the uses of the word بیشتر are (i) حقِ من براو از همه کس بیشتر است my claim over it is superior to every one else's, دیدم فالگیر و رمّال در مشهد از سگ بیشتر است I saw that in Mashhed astrologers and sooth-sayers were more numerous than dogs (ii) هرچند یک دو صناب بیشتر خرج می شود امّا از هر گزند آسوده میشوید although it will involve an expense of one or two *mináts* more, yet you will be safe from all sorts of trouble, می بینید که دو تن بیشتر نیستیم behold, we are not more than two individuals (iii) برای یک زبان زیاده دانستن عقل بیشتر نمی شود wisdom is not increased by knowing one more language, میلِ من باو التّه بیشتر بود I certainly had a greater inclination towards him (iv) گذشته از آن این جاها را که می بینی بیشتر همه وادیِ لم یزرع و خالی از سکنه بود previous to it, these places that thou seest were all mostly barren and uninhabited plains, هر چند که خانه را خانهٔ خود می دانم ولی نبودنِ صاحب خانه بیشتر سبب خجالت شد although I regarded (his) house as my own, yet the absence of the host became the principal cause of (my) embarrassment

156 Some more examples of compounds formed with the prefix هم are (i) همزبان, as در پردلیِ آنان همه همزبان بودیم we were of one tongue as to their being brave (ii) همراه - همدرد, as سایر همدردان و همراهانرا دور دست تر از ما درمیانِ قبایل پراگنده ساختند they dispersed all (our) fellow-sufferers and companions further away from us among the tribes (iii) همکاسه, as از همان روز همکاسه ام ساخت from that very day he made me his messmate,

(iv) هموطن , as هر کسي را ديدي از وضعِ وطن و حالِ هموطنان پرسيدي he used to enquire of every person he met with concerning the situation of his native country and the condition of his country men (v) همشهري همکار as حسني که ميديدم تجربهٔ اين بود که بعد ازين با همشهريان و همکاران چگونه حرکت کنم the one thing I understood was this experience how I should henceforward deal with my countrymen and fellow workers (vi) همملک as شارعِ مقدّسِ اسلام حبِّ ترا جزء ايمان قرار داده the holy Law-giver of Islam has placed the love for thee (or one's own country) in the same category as faith (itself) (vii) همکيش as—

اسپ تازي را دو روزي ببندي پيشِ خر
رنگ ان همگون نگردد طبع ان همگون شود

If thou bindest an Arab horse along with an ass,
(Although) their colour might not become the same their
disposition would turn out similar

157 The uses of the word غريب may be illustrated thus (i) منِ غريب در ديارِ غريب آنان مردماني غريب I a stranger in a strange land, and they a strange people يا امام رضاي غريب تو دادِ غريبان را بگير O Imam Reza, the stranger! pray take retaliation for (us) strangers غريب الغربا داخلِ شهر شدم I entered the city a total stranger (ii) مگر از مردنِ غريبِ او خبر نداري hast thou no knowledge of his strange death? حکايتهاي غريب از او نقل مي کنند wonderful stories are told about him اسبِ کشيکچي را با لباسِ غريب بمن تسليم کرد he made over to me the horse of the body-guard with strange accoutrements (iii) عمّه جان غريبي مي کني بمن you inflict a strange trouble upon me, aunt در بين راه مردم بازيِ غريبي

آورده بودند on the route the people had devised a singular pastime, هلهلهٔ و ولولهٔ عریبی برخاست an unusual uproar and tumult arose (iv) دو پلنگ سیاه هم دیده شد از افریق که خیلي عریب و مهیب بودند two black leopards from Africa were also seen, which were very singular and terrific, هیأتِ خود را قلندرانه و عجیب و عریب آراسته بودم I had attired myself like wild darvishes in strange and extraordinary garb, عجب مضامینِ بدیع و معانيِ عریب بنظم آوردهٔ what wonderful imports and marvellous ideas hast thou expressed in thy poem!

158. List of Compound Verbs (concluded) (i) نابود شدن to disappear, نابود کردن to destroy (ii) ناپدید شدن to disappear (iii) ناچار ماندن to become helpless, to be obliged to do a thing. (iv) ناخوش شدن to fall ill, ناخوش ساختن to make (one) ill (v) ناخن گرفتن to pare the nails, ناخن زدن to stir up strife (vi) نام آوردن to become famous, نامزد کردن to betroth, نام گذاردن to name (vii) نامربوط گفتن to talk nonsense (viii) نان خوردن to have a meal, to accept hospitality, نانِ کسي در روعن افتادن to hold one's fortune to be made (ix) نجات دادن to set free, liberate, نجات یافتن to be liberated, rescued (x) ندیده انگاشتن یا گرفتن to pretend not to see (xi) نزول نمودن to alight (xii) نسبت کردن to ascribe, refer (xiii) نشان دادن to show, point out, to impress (*stamp*) (xiv) نشست و برخاست کردن to conduct oneself (xv) نصب کردن to plant (*flag*) (xvi) نصیحت کردن to admonish (xvii) نظر انداختن to cast a glance, نظر آمدن to appear (*to a person*), نظرِ کسي نمود کردن to attract the eye, excite wonder (xviii) نظور کردن to look after, take care of (xix) نفس زدن to breathe, pant, نفس گرفتن to hold one's breath (or tongue) (xx) نفرین کردن to

curse (xxi) نفس بر آب کسیدن to engage in fruitless pursuit نقش بستن to engrave or draw a picture نقش درفکن to embroider (xxii) نقل کردن to copy to tell a story (xxiii) نُقلِ مجالس شدن to be talked of everywhere (xxiv) نگاه داشتن to with-hold preserve, take care of نگاه کردن to look at (xxv) نگران بودن to be anxious (xxvi) نمک به حرام to be grateful, or faithful نمک بحرامی کردن to behave unfaithfully be treacherous (xxvii) نوش جان فرمودن to eat *(polite)* (xxviii) نشخوار کردن to chew the cud to ruminate (xxix) نهان شدن to hide *(oneself)* نهان کردن to conceal *(a thing)* (xxx) واپس آمدن to come back (xxxi) وارد شدن to arrive, وارد کردن to cause to arrive (xxxii) وارونه کردن to turn upside down وارونه گشتن to be upset, overturned (xxxiii) واصل شدن to reach *(a letter)* (xxxiv) واقع شدن to occur take place (xxxv) واقف شدن to be apprised of (xxxvi) وام دادن to lend *(money)* وام گرفتن to borrow *(money)* (xxxvii) وصلت دادن to arrive, be joined: (xxxviii) وطن کردن to make a home (xxxix) وعده خواستن to ask a promise *(of a visit)*; وعده کردن to give a promise وعده گرفتن to take a promise (xl) وعظ کردن to preach (xli) ول گفتن to speak loosely to talk rubbish (xlii) ور زدن to chatter (xliii) هار کردن to turn a person's head (xliv) هلاک شدن to be killed هلاک کردن to kill (xlv) هبه کردن to bestow give (xlvi) یاد آوردن to remember یاد دادن to show teach, instruct یاد گرفتن to learn by heart (xlvii) یاوه گفتن to talk nonsense (xlviii) دست یکی کردن to make common cause (xlix) با خاک یکسان کردن to throw down (l) ول کردن to be a vagabond to rove.

SECTION—II

1 Domestic Life in Persia.

The Persian women are very fond of their children, and pet them greatly The love of the Persian for his mother is very great When grown up he never leaves her to starve and her wishes are laws to him, even when he is an old man, and she an aged crone The mother is always the most important member of the household, and the grand-mother is treated with great veneration. Mothers-in-law are not laughed at or looked down on in Persia; their presence is coveted by their sons-in-law who look up to them with respect. Black slaves and man-nurses are much respected while the wet nurse is looked on as a second mother and usually provided for for life. The slaves in Persia have a good time: well fed, wellclothed, treated as spoiled children, and given the lightest work they have the certainty of comfort and a well-cared for old age. They are always looked on as confidential servants are entrusted with large sums of money and the conduct of the most important affairs and they seldom abuse their trusts. Strange as it may appear to the mind of any one who has not lived in Persia slavery in that country to the African is an unmixed good.

The Persian women— زنان ایرانی

To be very fond of— سخت ملزم بلفکن (کسي را)

To pet— نوازلکن

The love of is very great = and the children also towards their mother affection and love (مهر و محبت)

to the highest degree (بدرجهٔ اتم) have

To grow up— بزرگ شدن

Translate 'her' as 'their own mother

To leave— گذاشتن (use 3 pl. of حال)

To starve— گرسنگي ... (use 3 pl. of مضارع)

Her wishes are laws to him—

هرچه خواهشمان باشد آنرا دستور العمل کارهاي خويش کرداند —

از آنچه خواهشمان باشد سر موئي خلاف ننمايند —

They—خودشان Old man—ریش سفید .
Is = become (*pl*) She = their mother
Aged crones—عجوزگان سفیده پوش
The most important member of the family—

گرامیترین اجزاي خاندان

Grand mother—(را) جدّه
To treat with veneration—محترم داشتن (use act voice 3 pl of حال)

Translate 'Mothers-in-law are not &c' **thus :** in Persia any (هیچ ،) son-in-law towards his mother-in-law (مادر زن) with ridicule and laughter behaves not (ریشخند و استهزا حرکت نماید) and at her with the eye of contempt (حقارت) looks not (نگاه نکند) but (بلکه) her presence (وجودش را) knowing a gain (غنیمت دانسته) engage in venerating and honouring her (بتکریم و تعظیمش پردازد) .

Black slaves—سیاهان . Man-nurses—للایان .
To respect—عزیز داشتن (use act voice 3 pl of حال).
Wet-nurse دایه - شیرده .

Translate 'is looked on &c.' **thus :** second mother (مادرِ ثانی) regarding (شمرده) usually till life continueth (مادام الحیات) surety for bread and expense (کفیلِ نان و نفقه اش) they become

Have a good time = life (زندگی) they have quite (بس) happy and pleasant (خوش و خرّم)

Well-fed—خوردنی زیاد Well-clothed—پوشیدنی فراوان
Treated as spoiled children—وضعِ شان وضعِ بچگانِ ند نه بالا آورده

Given the lightest work— لی نه هرگز سبکترین کار [illegible]

They have the certainty &c.—

بوسیلهٔ استکمال زحمت و مرحمت و بعرضهٔ سعی هشیاری و بیداری نازند—

Translate 'They are always &c. thus they servants are confidential (رازدار و معتمد) such that (که) large sums of money (زرهای کثیر) and important affairs (مهامی خطیر) they entrust them with (حوالهٔ ایشان بگمارند)

They seldom abuse their trusts—

کمتر باشد که بخیانت و سوء دیانت متّهم می گردند —

Translate strange as it may appear &c. thus although this statement (سخن) the cause of surprise and wonder of those (ر حیرت و تعجّب آنان) may be who have never lived in Persia (هرگز در ایران نمانده اند) yet the truth is this that for the African (اهلِ افریقی) slavery ([illegible]) in that country (ولایت) the cause of good-fortune (وسیلهٔ خوشبختی) unmixed (محض) is

NOTES

1 The uses of word سخت may be illustrated thus (i) دیدم که سخت بلائی دوچار شدم I found that I had come across a grievous danger [illegible] سختی خورده , I drank a cup of strong coffee بعد از کرنشی سخت فروتنی بادشاه می گذشت after a very low obeisance he passed by the front of the king , حریف را سخت دید he perceived (his) antagonist to be (too) powerful زلیخا خیلی سخت شدهٔ Zuleikha, thou hast become very stingy : (ii) آخر امر [illegible] سخت ناگوار ارائه [illegible] at last he made a very disagreeable proposal چون این قصیده بگوش معنوی بادشاه رسید سخت لنگر بجنبید when this ode

reached the auspicious ears of His Majesty, he extremely approved of it, تو سخت بجا دچارم افتادی thou hast most opportunely come to my hand, شما اهل ایران سخت بیرحم مردمانند you Persians are very cruel men, این روز اولین دیدار برای ما سخت مسعود شد it proved a lucky day for us when we saw each other first (iii) کاغذهای شکل را سخت چنگال کرده زیر پایش می ریزد seizing firmly the papers with the pictures, she throws them under her foot, از دو تن ایشان سخت تظلم نمودم I bitterly complained against two of them, دستی سخت بازوم چسبید a hand seized me roughly by the arm اشرفیها را بکمربند خویش سخت بردوختم I tightly sewed the ducats inside my girdle

2 Some examples of the uses of the word 'سفید' are (i) تا چشم کار می کرد چادر سفید بر افراشته بود as far as the eye could see white tents had been pitched, مردکه با این ریش و پشم سفید حیا نمی کنی O man, art thou not ashamed with these white beard and hair? روبند زن سفید و جابجا خونین و دریده the woman's veil was white, and here and there stained with blood and torn (ii) فرزند! رویت سفید که روی مرا سفید کردی my son, may thy face be whitened (or may thou prosper) as thou hast brightened my face, ترا که گاو سفید پیشانی خواهند گرفت you who are a conspicuous character will be easily caught (iii) گیس سفیدی دیگر یعنی فرتوتی پرگوی کمشنو بود there was another grey-haired decrepit old woman, talkative and hard of hearing, ریش سفیدان قبیله را جمع آوری نموده گفت having called together the elders of the tribe, he said, مردی ریش سفید محترم پیش آمد a venerable man with grey beards stepped forward, غول زنی است چادر سفید با مردی در پناه

بنظر بیابانی شده (what seemed to be) the *ghol* was a woman white veiled, hiding with a man under the shade of the wall.

3 The uses of the word سیاه may be illustrated thus دیدم که کلاهِ صاحب پنجاه اشرفی در گوشهٔ چادر بخاکِ سیاه افتاده (is) I perceived the cap containing the fifty ducats lying on the dark ground in the corner of the tent غلام سیاه با نیم سلسله و تفنگی بی چخماق سیاهی لشکر شد a black slave with half a blade of sword and a trigger less musket gave the confused appearance of an army ما سیاهان سگمان بشما می ارزد a dog of us the blacks is worth (all of) you یکی از ایشان یک کیسهٔ بزرگِ پولِ سیاه آورده بود one of them had brought a large bag full of copper coins (in) مرا دور ببری روزگارِ مادرم سیاه می شود if thou carry me far away my mother's life will be darkened روز مرا سیاه کرده صبر و آرام را بریده he has made my day dark, has cut off my patience and ease of mind سیاه روزی بسیار نزدیک است the dark day (of misfortune) is very near

2. A Thief Caught.

One night a thief stole a man's horse from the stable and rode away with it. However much he searched the owner could find no clue to the horse or the thief. So he started for the place where they sold horses, to buy another. When he came to the horse-market, he found his own horse among those for sale. He seized the horse by the bridle and cried "This is mine." "It can't be yours," said the thief who was there to sell the horse, "for I have had it more than a year." The real owner then put his hands over the eyes of the horse, and said: "If this is your horse, tell me which of its eyes is blind." The thief who had not looked at the horse with care did not know what answer to make at last he said "It is blind of left eye." "You are wrong" said the owner. "O no!" said the thief "I spoke too soon! That's a slip of tongue I meant to say the right eye." The owner then removed his hands from the eyes of the horse, and said: "You are a thief; the horse

is not blind of either eye I asked the questions simply to take you in and prove the truth" "Caught! caught!" cried all the men who stood by They then brought the thief to the Police Magistrate who sent him to prison, and restored the horse to its rightful owner

Translate 'one night a thief' &c. **thus**: it is said that one night a thief &c (آوردهاند که شبی دزدی الخ)

Stable— اصطبل - طویله

To steal— دزدیدن (use ماضی معطوفه)

Rode way with it— در آن سوار شده برفت .

He (=the owner)— صاحب اسب However-much— هرچند

He searched— تکاپو نمود و جستجو کرد

He could find no clue to the horse or the thief—

نه از اسب ، اثری یافت نه از دزد سراغی —

To start for (a place)— سوی (مکانی) شدن

The place where they sell horses (=a horse-market)—

میدان اسب —

Among those for sale— درمیان اسبهای فروختنی

Translate 'He seized the horse &c' **thus**: and seizing its bridle (لگامش را سخت چنگال کرده), cried out (فریاد بر آورد) that it is from my possession (آن من)

Who was there to sell the horse—

که در آنجا موجود بود و خواست که اسب را بفروشد —

This can't be yours— این اسب نمی تواند از آن تو باشد

For— چه

I have had it more than a year—

بیشتر از یک سال است که پیش منست —

The real owner— مالک صحیح (یا حقیقی)

To put— کلیشلی (use عطرف امي)

Which of its eyes is blind— کدام ج ن نا بیناست

With care— (با دیدهبانی) از روی خبرداری

To look at— مور کردن

To make an answer— پاسخ دادن (use 3 sing, aor)

Left— چپ   Blind— کور

You are wrong— غلط گفتی اشتبا کردی

I spoke too soon— بر رود گفتم

That's a slip of tongue— زبانم بلغزید

I meant the right eye— مرادم چشم راست است

It is not blind of either eye— هیچ یک س کور نیست

Translate I asked these questions &c.' **thus** this question and answer (سوال و جواب) for this was, that I may take thee in (رسید بهلک آمم) and prove the truth (حقیقت را تصدیق لمام)

All the men who stood by— همهٔ ساقاچیان

Caught— ثابت شد گرفتار شد

Police Magistrate— داروغه

Prison— مجبس خانه زندان   To restore— استرداد نمودن

NOTES

4. In Persian it is customary to begin a story with such phrases as در امثال روایت کنند که حکایت کنند که گویند که آورده اند که شنیدم که گفته اند که آمده که etc.

5 Words denoting *time* may be used with or without Preposition as (i) در ظرف دو شبانه روز وارد اسلامبول شدیم we reached Istambul in two days and nights تا الحال روز از دوسال خبری نشد

there was no news of Joseph till the end of day , از صبح تاںحال در اندرونِ شاهی آوازِ ںرںه و زاری گوشِ گردوں را کور می کرد from morning till now the clamour of lamentation and sorrow in the Royal seraglio was rending the air , صبح تا شام در اںں شهر هرجا میروی صحبتِ اںں جواں است from morning till night-fall wherever you may go in this town there is talk about this youth اميد دارم بدختری قبول کرده دریں روزِ ںنگ اعانتِ خود را از من مضا قه نکنی I hope that you will look on me as a daughter, and in this evil day not refuse me your assistance (11) آںشب حکیم از هرشب دیرتر از درخانه برگست that night the doctor came back later than usual from his attendance at the court , حمّام زناں اکثر صبحگاهاں است the baths are open to the women mostly of a morning , باید فردا صبح در آنجا باشیم we should be there by to-morrow morning , همه شب مقراض در دست فتیلهٔ شمعها را می برید the whole night with scissors in hand he used to cut the wicks of the lamps , دو ساعت از روز گذشته براه افتادیم we took to the road two hours past day-break , شبِ دیگر بام در آمدم the next night I ascended the roof

6 Some more examples of the uses of the word 'پیش' are (1) دلیلِ آں پیشِ خودم است the reason is with me myself, برو پیشِ اسبها منتظر باش go and wait by the horses , من هرگز پیشِ او نخواهم رفت I will never go to him , دو سه روز پیش از حرکت هوای ایں مسافرت بسرم افتاد the desire of this travel came to my head (just) two or three days before starting , کاغذِ پریروزی در پیشت است is the letter of day-before-yesterday with you ? پیش از پیش لات و لوت ماندم I shall turn out a greater beggar than before,

براي ظاهر شدن در پيش اين و آن پول لازم است money is necessary to appear respectable before the public (ii) پيش اوبا بيعد باهار — شب پيش سراي برسانده بپيند the night before he had been sent to the Royal castle of Shimran چرا اندكي پيشتر نيامدي why didst not thou come a little sooner? پيشترو ديدم سمي ور لب كشاه آن مي خوابيده است walking further I found a lo sleeping on one side of that carpet بيع نفر درصدي بيد سالهاي پيش نيرم نميشود now a days its sale is not one per cent of that of the previous times پيش از همه ... رخت و سكم همه را ضبط كرده بود he had already taken possession of all that I had in way of clothes ... I thought in my mind that first of all I should search a little the pockets of the deceased (iii) جناب ميرزا پيش را پيش گرفته بود ... سردار بهيچ بند شد he had anticipated things in such a way that the Sardar was completely baffled ... پيش دويد he ran forward to shake hands دگري ... باد بد گوبان پيش ميرود another proceeds on indifferent to all consequences آنچه بسرش آمد از پيش بديد he foresaw all that would necessarily fall upon his head ... ميخواهم كه من هم بعد ازين مي ... پيش گيرم adopt his profession ... as she was walking in front of me she did not observe my face I wondered in my mind what a marvellous production (of God) the human species is ... روز ديگر بعد از آن وداع ابدي با تبريز راه تفليس پيش گرفتم the day after that bidding an eternal farewell to Tabriz I took the road to Tiflis راهي پيش پايم بگذار اتطور بكنم set a path before me and I will follow it برخود واجب دانستم كه پيش از رفتن

(۱۶) را از حیلهٔ او خبردار کنم I considered it my duty to inform you of his plot before-hand, (۱۷) یکی از پیشخدمتان بدان کار مامور شد one of his body-servants was placed in charge of that affair, لشکر ایران تا دو هفتهٔ دیگر سوی هرات در حرکت آمده تسخیر تمامی هندوستان را پیشنهاد همت خود خواهد ساخت the Persian army, within the next two weeks, moving towards Herat, will make the conquest of the whole of India the object of their ambition, هر جا می رود شادی پیشاپیش او می رود wherever he goeth, joy attends him before-hand, من در نوروز کنیزی بشاه پیشکش کردم on New-year's Day I presented a female-slave to the King, این وقایع راه ترقی من گشوده شد these events opened my way to promotion, جمعی انبوه بپیش و پس من افتاده اند a large crowd of people has been pursuing me from all sides

3 The Three Sons of Faridun.—I.

Faridun had, we are told, three sons The two elders—Selm, and Tur, were by one mother, the daughter of Zohhak; the youngest Erij, by Iran Dukht, the daughter of a Prince of Persia After these three princes had been united in marriage to three daughters of a king of Arabia, Faridun divided his wide dominions among them To Selm he gave the countries comprehended in modern Turkey, to Tur, Tartary and part of China, and to Erij, Persia. The princes departed for their respective governments, but the two elders were displeased that Persia, the fairest of lands and the seat of royalty, should have been given to their younger brother, and they combined to effect his ruin They first sent to their father, to reproach him vith his partiality and injustice, and to demand a rivision of his act, thereatening an immediate attack, if their request was refused The old king was greatly distressed He represented to them that his days were drawing to a close, and entreated that he might be allowed to depart in peace Erij discovered what was passing, and resolved to go to his brothers and resign his crown and throne that had been the cause of

disunion amongst them. So he started with a letter from their parent to Selm and Tur the purport of which was a solicitation that they should live together in peace. This appeal had no effect and Erij was slain by his brothers who had the barbarity to embalm his head and send it to Faridun. The old monarch fainted at the sight; when he recovered, he seized with frantic grief the head of his beloved son placed it on his bosom and holding it in his raised hands he called upon Heaven to punish the base perpetrators of so unnatural and cruel a deed

Translate Faridun had &c. a Prince of Persia **thus** in the traditions (اخبار) it has come (آمده) that Faridun (فریدون) three son had Selm (سلم) and Tur (تور), his elder sons (پسران بزرگتر), by (از) the daughter of Zohhak (ضحاک) and Erij (ایرج), his younger son (پسر کوچک) by Iran Dukht (ایران دخت) the daughter of one of the princes of Persia (از اعاظم فرس),

To unite in marriage— مواصلت دادن (use 3 sing past act voice with 'princes' as object)

A king of Arabia— یکی از سلاطین عرب

His wide dominions— ممالک وسیع خود را

To divide— (در) قسمت کردن

Translate 'to Selm he gave &c. **thus** in this wise (باینطور) that the country (بلادی) which now-a-days (امروز) under the government of the Turks is (در تحت ریاست ترکست) to Selm and the country of Tartary (مملکت تاتار) and some part of China (بعضی از ممالک چین) to Tur and Persia (را) to Erij he gave away (را گذار کرد)

Their respective governments— ایالتهاي مخصوص خویش
Were displeased— دلتنگ و آزرده خاطر گردید
Translate 'Persia, the fairest of lands &c' **thus**: Persia, that both (هم) the fairest of lands (خوشترین ممالک) and (و هم) the seat of Government (قرارگاه سلطنت) is, to their younger brother might be given (داده شود)
To effect his ruin— در اضمحلال وي
To combine— دست یکي شدن - بایکدیگر اتفاق کردن
First— اوّل Sent to their father— به پدر پیغام کردند .
Translate 'to reproach him &c' **thus**: and him for his partiality (جانبداري) and injustice (بي انصافي) they reproached (ملامت نمودند), and said that if alteration of (تغییر) this act (عمل) be not made (نشود) immediately (بي تأمّل) troop (لشکر) upon thy head we would lead (خواهیم کشید)
Translate 'the old king was &c' **thus**: from this remark (مقوله) the old king (ملکِ کهن سال) was greatly distressed (رنجشِ بحتي یافت)
To represent— اطلاع نمودن
His (= my) days were (= are) drawing to a close—
ایّام عمرم نزدیک به پایان رسید —
شمع حیاتِ من نزدیک بخاموشي است —
Translate 'and entreated that he &c' **thus**: you should withdraw the hand from this sort of acts (باید ازین گونه حرکات دست بردارید) that I may be able (مي توانم) in peace and safety (راحت و امنیت) from this perishable

world (جهانِ فانی) I may depart (رحلت بکنم)

What was passing— کیفیتِ واقعه

To discover (= be aware of)— (از) مستحضر شدن

To resolve— عزم کردن

Translate 'to go to his brother &c. **thus** that himself (خود) near the brothers having gone from crown and throne (از تاج و تخت) that the cause of dissension among them (مادّهٔ فساد و مایهٔ نزاع ایشان) is, he would resign (استعفا خواهد)

With a letter from their parent— نامهٔ از پدر گرفته

The purport of which &c. in peace—

که مضمونِ آن ترغیب بصلح و اتّفاق بود —

To Selm and Tur— بجهتِ ایشان

To start— روانه گشتن

Translate 'this appeal had no effect &c. **thus** but (ولی) upon this deliberations (تدابیر) no effect having appeared (اثری مترتّب نگشته) Erij at the hands of the brothers to slaughter (بقتل) reached (رسید)

Who = and they

Had the barbarity (= their transgression to such a limit was that)—

تعدّی ایشان بحدّی بود که —

To embalm — مومیا کردن

At the sight (= when his eyes fell upon the head of his son)—

چون نظرش بر سر پسرش افتاد —

To faint— از خویش رفتن To recover— بخود آمدن

With frantic grief— دیوردانه Beloved son— پسر جانیش را •
Holding it in his raised hands— به هردو دست آنرا با آسمان برداشته
Translate 'he called upon Heaven &c.' **thus:** from the revengeful God (جبار منتقم) retaliation for the unnatural and cruel behaviour of this oppressive evil-doers (کیفر کردار این بدکاران ستم پیشه را که چنان در نظر انسانی منفور و از جادهٔ مروت دور بود) he implored for (مسئلت نمود)

NOTES

7 The idiomatic uses of the word 'خاطر' may be illustrated thus (i) خاطرمرا مي خواهد he is fond of me, تو کي شنیدي من خاطرش را مي خواستم how did you hear that I was fond of her? خاطرم نماند I did not remember, نذري که در راه کرده بودم بخاطرم آمد I remembered the vow that I had made on my way (home), باري رضاي خاطر ترکان بجا آمد after all the wishes of the Turks were fulfilled, گذشتهایت را بخاطر بیاور recollect thy past adventures, (ii) اي مرد بخاطر خدا این اسبرا بر گردان O man, for the sake of God, turn this horse, تدبیري بخاطر اندیشه‌ناکم رسید a plan came into my troubled mind, نامش از خاطر مبارک محو شده his name has been obliterated from (thy) auspicious mind, بیچاره میمون را بي هیچ دغدغهٔ خاطر سر برید he cut off the head of the poor monkey without the least compunction of heart, پیاده بدنبال خاطر از عقب مي آمدند the infantry was coming from behind as well as it could (or would) (iii) خاطرت جمع باشد let thy mind be at ease, مي خواست خاطر خواه مرا از دستم بگیرد he would have taken my beloved out of my hand, اکثر مرد و زن بزرگان بخاطر خوبیهاي پدرم

اخلاص قلبي بمن دارند the greater part of the people and all the nobels have hearty devotion to me for the sake of my father' good deeds, در همچو خاطرجمع چرا اینجا می آیی why do you come here in this imperturbed way? بخاطر خواه خود مقدار نقد موعود افزودیم we raised the amount of promised cash to our heart's wishes از رعیت احدی از اوضاع مرحوم و کسانش آزرده خاطر نشد not a single person from among the subject people was ever displeased at heart from the behaviour of the defunct of blessed memory and his men.

4 The Boy and the Cat.—I

In ancient times in the city of London there was a wealthy merchant, who took into his house a poor orphan and brought him up. Although this child was so young that the merchant did not appoint him to any work yet he himself being diligent, and having devised some work for himself busied himself in collecting lost pins. When he had picked up a number of them he brought them to his master and gave them to him. The merchant was pleased and said Please God by and by this boy will turn out a trustworthy and economical man.' One day in that house a cat gave birth to some kittens and that orphan obtained permission to rear one of them for himself. When the kitten grew up one day it happened that the merchant, having laden one of his ships with various kinds of merchandise was sending it to a distant country and he wished to go on board the ship and see whether every thing was right On the way as he went he met the boy holding his cat in his arms He said to him: Child hast thou not something too to send across the sea for sale?" The boy said: Sir you well know that I am destitute and have nothing but this cat" The merchant said Well, send this cat that it may be sold and its price brought back to you" The boy handed over his cat to one of the sailors and asked that they should sell it for him and the ship started

In ancient times— در قدیم الایام

A wealthy merchant— تاجر دولتمندي

Took (= having taken) into his house— در خانهٔ خود جا داده

To bring up— پرورش نمودن

Young— کوچک   To appoint to a work— برکاري گماشتن

He himself— خودِ وي

Being diligent (=loving toil)— محنت را دوست داشته

To Devise— انديشيدن

Translate 'busied himself &c' thus became engaged in this (مشغول اين شد) that lost pins (سنجاقهاي گم شده) he might collect (جمع کند)

A number— مقداري   To pick up— برچيدن

Please God— انشاء الله   By and by— بعد از چندي

A trustworthy and economical man— مردِ معتمدِ صرفه جو

To obtain permission— اذن يافتن   To rear— پرورش دادن

Kitten— بچهٔ گربه   It happened— چنين اتّفاق افتاد

Various kinds of merchandise— اموال و اجناسِ تجارتي

To load— انباشتن

To go on board the ship— داخلِ کشتي شدن

And see whether everything was right—

— تا ببيند که آيا هرچيز به ترتيب است —

To meet— (با کسي) برخوردن

Holding = who had   In his arms— در بغل

Translate 'hast thou not something &c' thus. (آيا) thou too (نيز) something hast not (نداري) that for sale (فروش) to that side of the sea (بآن طرف دريا) thou mayst send

Well— بخوبی Destitute— مفلس

Translate that it may be sold &c.' **thus** that that (تا آنرا) having sold (فروخته) its price (را) for thee they may bring back (باز آورند)

To ask— درخواست کردن

NOTES

8 The idiomatic uses of the word خوش may be illustrated thus (i) هر چیز در وقت خودش خوش است every thing at its proper time i good من چون ایشانرا همرنگ خود می دیدم خوشم آمد I was delighted to find them similarly situated with myself دیدم یارا خوش آمدی I observed it was not pleasant to some خوش آمدی سایه ات از سر ما کم مشود thou art welcome may thy shadow be not lessened from over our head از سر گذشتم خوشش آمد he was pleased with my story از پرگوئی خوش نداشت he was not addicted to too much talking سفر ما خوش گذشت our journey was propitious (ii) بخوش نویسی نویسانیدیم we had it written by a good calligraphist تو از ایشان اندکی خوش طالع تری thou art somewhat more fortunate than they خوش وقت سفر نزدیک شد خوشوقت شدم I was delighted when the time for starting came near مرادم خوشی تو بود my motive was thy happiness چلودار با مردی خوش سر و وضع بسی ناهمد the conductor with a man, well-turned out as to head dress and apparel, rode towards me پدرم بخوش خلقی مردی مطبوع طبع همه کس بوده است my father owing to his gentleness and good nature had been a great favourite of all (ranks of people) دستم از خوشگذرانی کوتاه گردید I was deprived of the means of leading a life of pleasure کس همه ارتقاب

امروز مثلِ من خوش بخت شوند would that every Persian had had the good-fortune which had befallen me to-day , از وضع و طورم خوشنود گشته he was delighted with my appearance and bearing نورجهان خوش حال بود چراکه هوادار من است Norjehan was delighted as she was a well-wisher of mine , بسیار خشنود میشوم که پول بگیرم I shall be very much satisfied to take money , درین صورت خوشگل یا بدگل چه تفاوت دارد in that case what difference will it make, if she is pretty or not? ولي نقد باید با پولِ حکیم خوش بگذارم but now let me enjoy myself at the doctor's expense , از مصاحبتش خیلي خوشوقت شدم I was much pleased with his company , او نیز از من خوشنود نیست he is not also satisfied with me

5. The Three Sons of Faridun II.

The daughter of Erij was married to Pushang, the nephew of Faridun , and their young son, Manuchehr, proved the image of his grand-father The child became the cherished hope of the aged monarch ; and when the young prince attained manhood, he made every preparation to enable him to revenge the blood of Erij Selm and Tur trembled as they saw the day of retribution approach , they sent ambassadors with rich presents to their father, imploring pardon for the past , and entreated that Manuchehr might be sent to them, that they might stand in his presence like slaves and wash away the remembrance of their crimes by tears of contrition Faridun returned their presents with indignation, and replied to their message in unflinching terms "Tell the merciless men," he exclaimed, "that they shall never see Manuchehr but attended by armies and clothed in steel" A war commenced , and in the first battle Tur was slain by the lance of Manuchehr Selm retired to a fortress, but he was ultimately seized upon by Manuchehr, and made one with his brother. When Manuchehr returned in triumph, the venerable Faridun advanced on foot to meet him , the prince dismounted when he approached, and, after kissing the ground, received his congratulations Faridun

soon afterwards died; but before he expired he established the grandson of Erij firmly on the throne, and advised him to attend to the council of Sam a nobleman of great wisdom and high birth who was the hereditary Prince of Seistan

To be married to— در حبالۀ ازدواج کسی درآمدن

Their young son Manuchehr—

پسری صغیرالسن که از ایشان در وجود آمد —

Was the imag of their grand father—

در صورت و سیرت با جدّ خود مشابهت تام داشت —

The child became &c of the aged monarch—

آن شاه پیرسال را همۀ تعلقهای قلبی و امیدهای
دلی بآن پسر صبی وابسته شد —

When he attained manhood—

چون از سنّ صبی بحدّ بلوغ آمد —

He made every preparation &c. the blood of Erij—

تهیّه و تدارکِ حرب را علی وجه الکمال داده او
را بانتقامِ خون ایرج ماهر و مستعد گردانید —

As they saw the day of retribution approach—

چون دیدند روز انتقام را در یافتند —

They trembled—

از بیم و هراس آب در دهانشان بسته گردید —
بر خود لرزیدند —

Ambassador— سفیر ایلچی   Rich presents— هدایای ملوکانه

To their father— بدربار پدر   Sent = having sent.

For the past— از افعالِ گذشته

To implore pardon— [illegible] (use 3 pl. past)

To entreat— معروض داشتن

Translate 'that they might stand &c. thus in the Direct

form of narration that slave-like (بنده وار) in the presence (در حضور) having stood (ایستاده) we may do him service (خدمتش را بجا آریم) and the remembrance of our crimes (یادِ جرایم خود مان را) with tears of contrition (اشک ندامت) we may wash (بشوئیم)

With indignation—با قهر و تنفّر

To return— رد نمودن (use ماضي معطوفه)

Replied to their message in unflinching terms—

پاسخِ پیغام شان با الفاظِ بیباکانه داد —

Merciless men— بي رحم مردمان

They = their eye

But attended by armies and clothed in steel

نعر با عساکر در جلو و سلاح در بر او —

War— جنگ

Battle— معرکه ,

Tur was (= having) slain *by the lance of Manuchehr*—

تور بنا کِ هلاک افتاده —

Fortress— قلعه .

To retire— پناه بردن

To seize upon— بچنگ آوردن (use act voice ماضي معطوف with منوچهر as nominative)

Made one with his brother— ببرادر ملحق ساخت

Translate 'when Manuchehr returned &c' thus : Manuchehr victorious and triumphant (فیروز و مظفّر) having returned still on the way was, that through excess of joy (از فرط انبساط) Faridun, the venerable (محترم), for meeting him (براي استقبالش) on foot (پیاده) advanced (پیش رفت)

To approach— نزدیک شدن

To dismount— پیاده شدن (use ماضی معطوف)

Translate after kissing the ground &c. **thus** the ground of service (زمینِ خدمت) he kissed and with the congratulations (تهنیت و مبارکبادی) of the king became dignified (مشرّف گشته)

Soon afterwards— چندی بعد ازین

To die— باجلِ خویش پیوستن

Before he expired— پیش از آنکه اجل گریبان گیرِ حیاتش شود

To establish firmly on the throne— بر سریرِ مملکت متمکّن ساختن (use ماضی معطوف)

Translate 'advised him to attend to the council of Sam &c. **thus** him in honouring and venerating (باعظام و احترام) and accepting the good counsels of Sam (قبولِ نصایحِ سام) who with right opinion (باصائب رای) and with nobility of birth (اصالتِ خاندان) qualified (موصوف) and father upon father among the rulers of (حکّام) Seistan was, he advised (وصیت فرمود).

NOTES

9. The idomatic uses of the words آب may be illustrated thus (i) چون کسی آب گوید جوابش را با ملاحتِ ابشر بگو when any one demand water speak (to him) in flattering and pleasant language خراسانند از آب انبارم آب ندهند they would not give me water from the reservoir با نقودیکه از آب و حولی سقّائی اندوخته بودم حالم به از وقتِ ورودم بمشهد بود with the money that I had accumulated by the business of a water-carrier I was better off (now) than when I (first) came to Meshhed, کاسهٔ آبکشی غلام و مس لم I

broke the bowl from which my mistress used to drink water, حیاط را جاروب و آب پاشي کردند the courtyard was well-swept and sprinkled with water, باران شب دوشين بآن آب و تاب تازه داده بود last night's rain had given it a new brilliancy and splendour, بقدر خوردن ميوه و نوشيدن آب دوغي خوا[ستم] I asked for enough fruit to eat and curds to drink, شاهزادگان والا تبار با آب و رنگي بيشتر از آب و رنگ جواهر و مرواريد آبدار بر بالاي پادشاه از چپ و راست صف زده the Princes royal, more beautiful than the blazing pearls and jewels of the finest water adorning the Royal person, stood in rows to the right and left, تمامي باغات را از چاهها آبياري مي كنند all the gardens are supplied with water from the wells, آب و هواي اين مدرگاه خيلي بد بود the climate of this station was very bad, اولاً بي اختيار لرزه ام گرفت چنانچه آب و توشم نماند at first involuntarily I was seized with a trembling, making me lose all my power and strength, از وضع خداوندي دستگاهي اندر شدم كه در نهاد اين مشتي آب و گل كه آدميش نامند چگونه اين همه قدرت و قوت مادي و معنوي را خلاق فرموده I was struck with wonder to contemplate how He had created all these physical and mental powers and capacities in the nature of this handful of water and earth, called man, امين الدوله را با من شكرآبي درميان بود Aminud-Dowlah and I had a disagreement between us (11) پيراهن قصب آبي خريدم I bought a blue muslin shirt, بايد كه نيم تنه زري آبي در رشت بدهي بدوزند you must get a blue gold-embroidered jacket made in Rasht, من با جوابهاي آب نديده بمقابله پرداختم I engaged myself in answering him with plain unvarnished language, اگر سرت بزرگ و [illegible] كوچك و بيبيت پهن مي بود امروز سرت در آب [illegible] مي [illegible] had thy head been large,

and thy eyes small and thy nose flat to-day thy head would have been pickled in salt دیدند که حریف آبِ دندانی نیست they perceived the rival to be too strong علی الخصوص عثمان آغا که از بیم جان آب در دهانش بخشکید through fear of life water dried up in the mouth of Usman Agha particularly زینب خود را ندیده انگاشت تا آب از آسیا افتاد Zainab pretended not to see me till every thing was still هر روز خانم زیر آبِ شیرین را میزند she reports to our mistress against Shirin حالا در پیش خانم کوزه اش خیلی آب بر میدارد now she is high in favour with our mistress دلم چاک و زهره آب شد on hearing this story my heart was torn and my bile turned into water از ترس اینکه مبادا آبِ رفته ام باز بجوی آید ا اندرون بیرونم کرد fearing lest I may regain my lost position, she contrived to drive me out of the harem علی کور پی قضای حاجت رفته بود آب رفته برو Ali Kur had gone to the lavatory زن و شوهر بنای شکم بآب رسانی گذاشتند husband and wife gave themselves up to gobbling all that comes to hand ریشه ات را بآب میرسانند they will entirely up-root and destroy thee شاید بار آبی بروی کارم آید perhaps my affair may again prosper اگر الوقت حالتِ آن بیچارگان را میدیدی دلت کباب و جگرت آب می‌شد if thou hast then seen the miserable condition of those helpless ones, thy heart would have burned and thy liver turned into water عهد کردم بآب قناعت آتشِ حرص و طمع را فرو نشانم I vowed to quench the fire of avarice and greed with the water of contentment.

10 Some examples of the uses of the word خاک *a*le (i) تو اولین کس هستی که دیدم که خاک وطن خود را گرامی داشتی (1) thou art the first person I saw who respects the earth of the native-land

در خیال آن بودم که سر بر سنگ بگذارم و بر روی خاک بخوابم I was contemplating to sleep on the ground with my head on a stone (ii) یک هیئت از ملت ژاپون بعزم سیاحت وارد خاک آلمان شد a body of persons from the Japanese nation arrived in the country of Germany with a view to travel, ای وطن عزیز و گرامی ! تن و جانم فدای خاک تو باد - خاک تو مایهٔ زندگانی و هوایت رشک هوای بهشت جاویدانست O dear and venerated mother-country! may my body and soul be the sacrifice for thy soil, for thy earth is the source of our life and thy atmosphere the envy of the air of the eternal paradise, خاک و حالیهٔ ایران بقدر ربع خاک فرانسه نکده و جمعیت ندارد the country and environments of Persia do not possess a quarter of the population of the country of France (iii) بحساب گورکنان تا دیروز ششصد نفر بخاک سپرده شده است according to the reckoning of the grave-diggers, till yesterday six hundred individuals have been consigned to the earth, هیچ خبرداری که کنیز کرد چه خاک عالم بر سر من ریخت do you know what world of ashes the Kurdish slave-girl has heaped upon my head? عزیز من چه خاک بر سر خود کنم my dear, what ashes should I sprinkle on my head (iv) فردا صبح تفصیلی در آن باب بخاکپای همایونی عرضه دارم to-morrow morning I shall submit to His Majesty the details of that affair, آنقدر بخاک خارجه ریخته متحمل اینگونه خواری و رنج اند so many of them having fled to foreign parts endure these sorts of disgrace and hardships, بسیار بزرگ را در ایران سراغ دارم که بآتش اکسیر سوخته تودهٔ خاکستر شده است I know many rich people in Persia, who, having been burned with the flame of elixir, have turned into heaps of ashes.

6 The Boy and the Cat —II

After some months the vessel reached an unknown island and cast anchor When the sailors disembarked they were told that a sovereign reigned there When the king heard that some foreigners had arrived in his country he commanded that they should be invited to lunch with him. But when they sat down at the royal table they saw that although there was plenty of food, yet it was impossible to eat as much as even one morsel in comfort because the king's palace was full of mice and rats, which were so daring that they would snatch the morsels from the hands of the guests. The sovereign was ashamed and declared that he should give a large sum to any one who would discover a remedy for this calamity Then one of the sailors said: "May it please your Majesty I have a beast of prey which, if you permit will in no time completely destroy all these mice The king gave permission, and they brought the cat, that busied herself in such a manner that after half an-hour no mouse dared to show its snout The king was extremely pleased, and purchased the cat for a sack full of gold; and thus the orphan was very much enriched

The vessel (= that vessel)— آن کشتی

An unknown island— جزیرهٔ غیر معلوم

To cast anchor— لنگر انداختن To disembark— به خشکی آمدن

To be told— مطلع گشتن Sovereign— سلطان

To reign— پادشاهی کردن Foreigners— اشخاص اجنبی

To arrive in a country— وارد ملکی شدن

Translate he commanded that they &c. thus he commanded (امر فرمود) so that them they invited (دعوت کردند) that with him lunch (ناهار) they may eat

Royal table— خوان سلطانی Plenty of food— نعمت فراوان

Was (= is present)— موجود است

It was (= is) impossible— ممکن نیست

In comfort— بآسودگی As much as— حتی

A morsel— لقمه Because— از آنرو که از بسکه

Mice and rats— موشهای خورد و درشت Was (= is) full— مملو است
Which were so daring &c —

که آنها باین حد جرأت کرده لقمه‌هارا از دست مهمانان می ربایند—

To be ashamed خجل گردیدن

Translate 'declared that he should give a large sum &c **thus :** he said, that whoever (هرکس) the remedy of this calamity (علاج این بلا را) may discover (دریابد) a large sum of money (مبلغی عظیم) to him I shall bestow (خواهم بخشید)

A beast of prey— حیوان درنده If you permit اگر اذن باشد
All these mice— جمیع این موشهارا In no time— بتعجیل تمام
To destroy— نیست و نابود کردن To bring— حاضر نمودن
That = and the cat Engaged herself— مشغول شکار شد
Half an hour— نیم ساعت
No mouse dared to show its snout—

هیچ موشی زهرهٔ آنرا نداشت که پوز خود را نماید —

For a sack full of gold— بجوالی پر از طلا
To be enriched— دولتمند گردیدن

NOTES

11 The uses of the word 'خشک' may be illustrated thus (1) چوب تر را بهر قسم که میخواهند می پیچند امّا چون خشک شود بغیر آتش راست نمی گردد a green stick can be twisted whatever way one wishes, but when it gets dry it will not become straight without fire, لب خشک مظلوم را گو بخند bid the dry lip of the oppressed one laugh, من مانند پارچهٔ چوبی درجای خشک I was transfixed like a piece of dry wood, از جای خشک و خالی چه فائده

what benefit will accrue from a life dry and empty ? روزی هوا از همه روز گرمتر بود on a certain day the weather was more than usually sultry دماغت خشک شده بود had thy brain been dried up ? (ii) در حقیقت این کشتی عمارتِ بحری اعلیحضرتِ پادشاهِ انگلیس است که همان طورکه در خشکی عمارت دارند in fact this ship is an ocean-palace of Her Majesty the Queen of England just as she possesses palaces on dry land از جانبِ جنوبِ ایران خبرِ خشکی و آثارِ قحطی بهر سوی پراکند from the southern portion of Persia the news of want of rain and forebodings of famine spread in all directions (iii) سقّایانِ مشهد را همینکه چشم بر من افتاد آبِ دهانشان خشک شد as soon as the water-carriers of Meshhed perceived me they were stung with jealousy همه ساله مقداری گزاف خشکبار از اینجا بخارج می رود the whole year round an immense quantity of dried fruits is exported from this place در ایّامِ جهانگیر خشک سالی پدید آمد during the reign of Jehangir a famine appeared

12 Some examples of the use of the word امر are (i) برحسبِ امر باز به بقچه نهاد according to order he replaced it in the bundle اگر برای خاطرِ من نبود امرِ قبلهٔ عالم از کجا می آمد had it not been for me how the command of His Majesty would have been fulfilled ? مگر من مرده بودم که تو باید انگونه امر بمعروف و نهی از منکر را بجای آوری was I dead that thou must take upon thyself the lead in matters of religion ? (ii) دربارهٔ بعضی امور گفتگو نمائیم we will converse about certain important affairs اختیارِ کلِ امور بعهدهٔ کفایتِ او نهاد he placed the control of all the affairs in his able hand (iii) امر نمود تا یک ثوبِ ماهوت بمن دادند he ordered a piece of cloth to be delivered to me بسکارا ربع امر کلم کردید مرحمتی آوردند

را برند I shall order the planet Mars to strike off Monsieur Jourdan's head, امر فرمود که آن مرد بعد از طرف پادشاه هرگز شرط نباید he commanded that the man should never afterwards lay a wager on behalf of the king

13 Some examples of the use of the word 'علاج' are (i) علاج درد دندان منحصر است باین it is a special cure for tooth-ache, (ii) اورا علاجي بجز داغ نيست it has no remedy save branding, (iii) اجل علاج ندارد death has no remedy, (iv) بترتیب علاج و تدبیر دفع مرض بپردازند they should engage in preparing remedies and guarding against illness, (v) علاج این همه غمها چیست what is the remedy for all these sorrows? (vi) در دورهٔ اوّل علاجش سهل است at the beginning its cure is easy, (vii) از برای انجام این مطلب جز این علاجي پيدا نيشود to accomplish this object there appears to be no remedy but this

7 The House-dog and the Wolf.

A lean hungry wolf chanced one moon-shiny night to fall in with a plump well-fed house dog After the first compliments were passed between them, "How is it, my friend," said the wolf, "that you look so sleek? How well your food agrees with you! and here am I striving for my living night and day, and can hardly save myself from starving" "Well," says the dog, "if you would fare like me, you have only to do as I do" "Indeed!" says he, "and what is that?" "Why," replies the dog, "just to guard the master's house and keep off the thieves at night" "With all my heart, for at present I have but a sorry time of it This desert life, with its frosts and rains, is sharp work for me To have a warm roof over my head and a bellyful of victuals always at hand will methinks, be no bad exchange" "True," says the dog, "therefore you have nothing to do but to follow me" Now as they were jogging on together, the wolf spied a mark in the dog's neck, and

having a strange curiosity could not forbear asking what it meant. Pooh! nothing at all," says the dog "Nay but pray —says the wolf "Oh! a mere trifle perhaps the collar to which my chain is fastened—" "Chain cries the wolf in surprise you don't mean to say that you cannot rove when and where you please?" "Why not exactly perhaps; you see I am looked upon as rather fierce so they sometimes tie me up in the day time but I assure you I have perfect liberty at night, and the master feeds me off his own plate and the servants give me their tit bits, and I am such a favourite and—but what is the matter? where are you going?" "Oh, good night to you, says the wolf; "you are welcome to your dainties; but for me a dry crust with liberty against a king's luxury with a chain.

One moon-shiny night— شبي مهتاب

A lean hungry wolf— گرگی لاغر و از گرسنگی بیتاب

A plump well fed house-dog— سگی خانگی سمین و بسیار خوار

To fall in with— با کسی بر خوردن

After the first compliments &c.—

آنگاه با دستور اهلی مراسم مسأله و تحیّات مصافحه آورده —

My friend = my old friend

That you look so sleek— که چنین بدین آب و تاب می نماید

To agree with— باکسی ساختن

Translate and here am I striving &c. thus and here (اینک) I who night and day in search of living (تلاش معاش) confounded (سرگردان) and distracted (پریشان) that a mere subsistence (لُقمه نانی) I may secure (بدست آرم) and alas (حیف) that this even to my hand does not reach (نمی رسد)

To fare (well)— خوش زندگانی نمودن (use nor 2 sing after present tense 2 sing of خواستن)

You have only to do as I do— باید بکنی آنچه من بکنم

Translate 'Indeed! and what is that?' **thus** thy work (تکاپوت را) dost thou say (مي گويي) and that what is?

Translate 'just to guard the master's house &c' **thus:** at night it is necessary (بايد) guarding of the master's house (پاسداري خانهٔ آقا) thou mayest do (نمايي) and the thief (را) from that mayest keep off (باز داري) and enough

With all my heart (I agree)— با جان و دل راضي هستم

I have but a sorry time of it— بعد ازوقات تلخي و گرسنگي هيچ ندارم

Translate 'this desert life, with its frosts and rains &c' **thus** the calamities and hardships of this desert life (مصائب و درشتيهاي اين زندگاني بياباني) with the violence of the rain (شدّت باران) and the sharpness of the frost (حدّت سرما) hath reached my soul (بجانم رسيده), how nice (خوش) it would be (بود) that my condition (رسمم) being changed (تبديل شده) for my head (سرم را) a shelter (پناهي) may be under a roof (زير سقف) and for my stomach (شکمم را) plenty of food (خوردني زياد) in the palm (در کف)

You have nothing to do but to follow me—

بايد هيچ کاري نکني بجز دنبال من بيآيي

Translate 'now as they were jogging on together &c' **thus** the wolf agreeing (اجابت کنان) both were jogging on (هر دو خرامان خرامان مي آمدند) when (که) the eye of the wolf upon a mark (داغي) upon the neck of the dog having fallen (افتاده) a strange curiosity (کنجکاوي عجيبي)

upon him dominant (مستولي) became, that he could *not restrain himself* (نمي بوانست خود داري بكند) and asked, that this mark of thy neck what thing is.

*Pooh— بہ Nothing at all— چيزي نيست

Translate Nay but pray &c. **thus** but on the persisting of (برامرار) the wolf seeing no help (چارہ نديدہ) said &c.

A mere trifle— چيزي مختصر Perhaps— مگر

Collar— طوق

To which my chain is fastened— كہ زنجيرم را بآن مي بندند

Translate Chain! cries the wolf in surprise &c. **thus** from hearing of the word of chain (از شنيدن حرف زنجير) the wolf in surprise (در تحيّر) having fallen (افتادہ) interrupted his speech (قطع سخنش نمود) that chain or (يعني) what ?

You don t mean to say— مگر مرادت نيست مگر نمي گوي

You cannot rove when and where you please—

هرگاه و هرجا كہ مي خواهي بي هيچ مانع نمي تواني گردش بكني —

Not exactly perhaps— نہ مگر بعدہ چندي است

Translate 'you see I am looked upon as rather &c. **thus** know you (بدانيد) that rather (بيشتر) they look upon me as fierce (درندہ ام مي پندارند) so the day-time (هنگام روز) sometimes (گاہ گاہ) me they tie (مي بندند) but (ولي) upon my life (بجان خودم) night the whole night (شب همہ شب) like the wind (باد) am free (آزادم)

Off his own plate— از بشقابِ خودش

To feed غذا دادن (use 3 aor sing with به)

Their tit-bits— از لقمهٔ ایشان چیزی

Favourite— منظورِ نظرِ همه

What is the matter— چه شده است

Good-night to you شب شما خوش باد - خدا حافظِ شما

You are welcome to your dainties— بروید لذائذ تان را بخورید

For me, a dry crust with liberty &c —

برای بنده پاره‌ٔ نانِ خشک در آزادگی به از صد
عیش و نوشِ ملوکانه با زنجیر و پای بندی —

NOTES

14. The idiomatic uses of the word 'دل' may be illustrated thus (1) از شنیدن این سخنان دلش انبساط یافت on hearing these words his heart was delighted , دلش از این خبرهای خوش لبریز بود his heart was full to the brim with these glad tidings , دلم تنگ گردید و آهی بی اختیار از دلم سر می زد my heart was tightened and involuntarily a sigh escaped therefrom , از دیدنِ این حال دلم بهم زد on seeing this state of things my heart was rent , زنگِ غم رنگِ چهره‌ام را تار و دلم را تیره ساخت the rust of sorrow darkened my face and blackened my heart , هرچه بیشتر در آنجا ماندم دلم از شغلِ خویش بیشتر زده گردید the more I stayed there, the more did my profession seem repugnant to my heart , دلش میخواهد برود پاریس را به بیند his heart desires to go and see Paris , هرکه دلش ماهی بخواهد خودش را بآبِ سرد می زند he whose heart desireth a fish throws himself in cold water , از شنیدنِ این سخنها آهی چنان از

بر دل کسند تا می توهند ایرنیدم on hearing this he would have heaved such a deep sigh from the depth of his heart that I trembled all over (iii) آما طاب ا د می عمعی ارمای دل می خس کستد Sir, my heart bleeds to observe these circumstances دم کی I made my heart is distressed at the bad luck I have had ... دل حلم بحالس ... perhaps the heart may soften at her condition ... (ii) suddenly a glance of his eye having fallen on the dead man's head, his heart lost its place ... several times it came to my mind that I should leave Ispahan unknown to anybody ... at first my heart burnt for all that I had lost ... then the tranquillity of my heart was somewhat restored ... I contemplated his state my heart used to bleed (iii) ... having retired to a corner of the wagon, I slept from excessive distress of heart ... we got information to our hearts content; ... he inwardly exulted at having ... one of his oppressors ... I coaxed the second; ... an opportunity full of such pleasure and attraction rarely occurs ... tell me the service you require of me that I may strive to do it with heart and soul

15 Examples of the uses of the word 'چشم' are (i) بلي ... yes, on my eyes be it Sir I take my leave

تاروردي بچشم او بقدر پشّه نمی آید Tarwardi is not worth a gnat in her estimation, روشنئ چشم همین یک پسر را دارم I have only this son, the light of my eye, اینها همه برای آنست که شهباز یکروز از پیش چشمان کنار باشد all these are for this that Shahbaz may not be out of our sight even for a day, خوش آمدید صفا آوردید قدم بالاي چشم you are welcome, you have brought pleasure, your step is on our eyes, امّا بچشم سر آنچه میگذشت میدیدم but still I saw what was going on, چشمت روشن خان مفتي در بردی may thy eyes be brightened, thou hast got off very cheaply (ii) گناه این همه را از چشم من باید دید the sin for all these should be ascribed to me, امان از چشم بد که مرا بتوه آورده است save me from the evil eyes that have embittered my soul, میباید که مهمانئ او خار چشم دشمنان و گل باغ دوستان شود his entertainment ought to be the object of envy to his enemies and that of congratulation to his friends, دیدم که حکیم را بچشم کسی میدیدند که کار نکرده مزدی خواهد و مرا بچشم کسي که کوه ابو قبیس را با دعا از جا تواند کند I perceived that they looked upon the physician in the light of a person who wanted payment without doing any work, while I was regarded by them as a divine person able to root out the mount Abu Qubais with prayers, مادر برای فرزند خود دعای چشم زخم می خواست a mother wanted protection for his child from the evil eye (iii) حالا چشم بکشا که بعد از این دیگر از این کارها نکني now open your eyes and be warned hence-forward not to do such acts, اینست که چشم بتو انداختم this is the reason why I set my eye upon thee, چنانچه بامرتان گوش دادم بالتفاتتان چشم دارم as I have listened to your orders, I am hopeful of your favours, چشم در قبول عامّه بود my look-out was popularity, این زن وقتي چشم و چراغ اندرون

پادشاهِ قاجار بود this woman was once the principal favourite in the seraglio of a Kajar king (۱۲) . . . از حسم چ . . . ببین how your eyes have become blood-shot through anger . . . چشمش به آنها افتاد his eyes fell upon them چشم ها هم خیلی باز کرد he also opened my eyes to a great extent همه چشم بدان بام . . . we all fixed our eyes on that roof . . . . . . having been filled with pride on finding myself on horse back while others w. h. trudging on foot I stuck up my nose in the air . . . چشم همه حکیم باشي . . . I recognised the chief physician from the attention and fixed stare of all . . . thou canst not bear rivalry with me . . . بیدرمانی است dost thou not know what cureless disease the pain of envy is? . . . ما . . . till the eye could wink once he got to the top of the peak before our presence

8 Astronomy

The wisest and greatest of men both amongst the ancients and moderns, have confessed themselves charmed with the beauties of this science. To contemplate the grand spectacle of the heavens has ever been considered as the noblest privilege of our nature. For it is here that we discover the wonders of the Deity and see his wisdom in the works of creation. Nor is there any knowledge attained by the light of nature that gives us juster ideas of this great Being or furnishes us with stronger arguments by which to demonstrate his existence and attributes. 'The heavens' as the Psalmist observes, declare the glory of God, and the firmament sheweth his handi-work, day unto day uttereth speech and night unto night sheweth knowledge and there is no speech or language

where their voice is not heard' Thus Astronomy is not only valuable as it affords us such exalted ideas of God and his works, but it also improves the mind, and increases the force and penetration of the human understanding For, by means of this science, we are taught to discover the spring and fountain of all the celestial motions, to follow the footsteps of the Creator through the immense regions of his empire, and to trace the secret causes by which he regulates the great machine of the universe. Were a knowledge of this kind attended with no other advantage, it has rendered essential service to humanity, by dissipating our superstitious opinions and vain fears.

' Both among the ancients and moderns—

هم ار متقدمین و هم ار متأخرین —

Translate 'have confessed themselves charmed with &c' **thus** confessing (معترف) upon that are (برآمند) that Astronomy (علم هیئت) a knowledge is full of fascinating subtleties (پر از نکته هاي سحرآمیز) and enchanting beauties (لطافتهاي دلاویز).

To contemplate the grand spectacle of the heavens—

مشاهدهٔ تماشاي غرائب .. رات و عجائب فلکیات را —

As the noblest privilege of our nature

ار اعلی ترین امتیار هاي طبع بشریه —

To consider— ...ردن (use 3 pl. pr. tense act voice)

It is here = through this science (علم) it is

Translate 'we discover the wonders of the Deity and see &c' **thus** we can (مي توانیم) the wonders of the power of the lord of the world (عجائب قدرت خداوند عالم را) we may find out (دریابیم) and his perfect wisdom (... کامله اورا) that on the pages of creation (صحائف مخلوقات) inscribed is (مندرج است) under-

perusal (در تعمق ملاحظه) we may bring.

Attained by the light of nature—

ممکن‌الاکتساب از ضیای طبع —

* Nor is there— پیدانیست

Translate that gives us juster ideas of this great Being &c. thus that better (بهتر) than the science of Astronomy it can exact ideas (خیالات معین) and wonderful conceptions (تصورات بدیع) with regard to God, the holy and great (درباب حق سبحانه و تعالی), may impress upon our mind (خاطرنشان ما بکند) and decisive proofs (براهین قاطع) and evident arguments (دلائل ساطع) concerning his existence and attributes (در خصوص ذات و صفاتش) may confirm (اثبات نماید)

The Psalmist — صاحب مزامیر داؤد علیه السلام

The heavens— آسمان Glory of God— عظمت و جلال یزدانی

To declare— اعلان کردن (use 3 sing of حال with همی)

The firmament— فضای فلک Handi-work— صنایع

To shew— نشان دادن (use 3 sing of حال with همی)

Day unto day uttereth speech— روز با روز بزبانیحال سخن همی گوید

Night unto night sheweth knowledge—

شب با شب بزبان حال دانش اظهار همی نماید —

There is no speech or language &c.—

هیچ سخنی یا لسانی نیست که آواز آن بدرک نرسد —

Astronomy is not only valuable—

علم هئیت از قدر و منزلت نه تنها برای اینست —

As it affords us such exalted ideas &c —

که مارا خیالاتِ عالیه در بابِ پروردگار عالم و صنایع او می بخشد —

It also improves the mind &c —

نیز بسبب اینکه مایهٔ ترقّی عقل و ازدیادِ قوّت وحدّتِ ذهنِ انسانی می شود —

By means of this science— بو سیلهٔ علم مزبور

Translate 'we are taught to discover the spring &c' **thus:**

the spring and fountain of the motions of all of the celestial bodies (اصل و سر چشمهٔ حرکاتِ همهٔ اجرام سماوی را) having comprehended (استدراک نموده) we can the footsteps of the creator of the world (آثار خالقِ عالم را) upon the immense regions of his empire (در اقطارِ بی انتهایِ مملکتش) we may trace (پیدا کنیم) and also that secret causes (آن اسبابِ نهانی را) by which (که بواسطهٔ آن) the order and arrangement of the world (نظام و نسقِ عالم) accepts good order (انتظام پذیرد) we may perceive (ادراک نمائیم)

Were a knowledge of this kind &c —

گیرم که فوائدِ چنین علم بیش از این نباشد —

Translate 'it has rendered essential service to humanity &c' **thus:** but one can say (میتوان گفت) that dissipater of (دافع) vain superstitions (وساوسِ باطله) and false fears (اوهام مزوّره) becoming (شده) to the cause of humanity (به عالم انسانیت) essential service (خدمتِ نمایان) has done (کرده است)

NOTES

16 The uses of the word 'بس' may be illustrated

thus (i) سخنِ راست را چه احتیاج بقسم است what is the use of oaths to truth ? روی سخن بسوی ایشانست the discourse is addressed towards them این سخن درحقِ فقرا نیست this advice does not regard the beggars سخنِ آشکار بهتر است open speech is best (ii) ایرانی اینگونه سخن نمی گویند the Persians never talk in this way آدابِ سخن گفتن و پاسخ دادن بپادشاه بیادم میدادند they taught me the etiquette of speaking to and answering the king خواستم سخنی بگویم I wished to make some remarks (iii) سررشتهٔ سخن را بطرفِ تجارت و داد و ستد برگردانیدم I changed the topic of conversation to commerce and trade آمنه بی آنکه لب بسخن گشاید نقدی بدستِ وی نهاد Amina, without opening her lips to speak, placed some money into his hands اکنون باید ختمِ سخن کنم now I must end my discourse روزی در مجلسِ بزرگ از سلطان محمود غزنوی و فردوسی سخن می رفت one day in a large assembly there happened to be a talk about Sultan Mahmud Ghaznavi and Firdousi از دنبالهٔ سخن بدین نوع ادا کرد he continued his speech as follows (iv) پیشهٔ معرکه بندی و سخنوری و نقّالی پیش گرفتم I adopted the profession of a story-teller and poet ; از خدای درخواست میکنم که تربتِ پاکِ آن حکیمِ سخن سنج را مهبطِ انوارِ تابناکِ رحمتِ خود گرداند I pray to God, that He may cause the glittering light of his mercy descend upon the holy tomb of that philosopher and poet البتّه یکی از اینها است بیش از دیگرها زبان فهم و دانا خواهد بود surely there must be one among them who in preference to others understands languages and is intelligent.

17 Examples of the uses of the word خدمت are (i) پدرم مادیان را بنهفت و بخدمتِ شاهزاده رفت my father concealed the mare

and went to see the Prince , دیروز دو نفر بچهٔ یتیم خدمت شما آوردند که بی صاحب است yesterday two men brought an orphan child before you saying that it had no owner (ii) در ایتالیه خدمت حکیم کردم I served under a physician in Italy , شما هر دو خواجه تاشانید و خدمت دیوان میکنید you both are under the same master, and serve in the Court , گفت ما هم خدمتی کردیم he said, we also have done you some service , اگر خدمت هم میخواهی تو برو در تفلیس بکن if you wish for service, go and do it in Tiflis (iii) بمنافع عمومیهٔ وطن خدمتی نمود he did great service to the general well-being of the country , بسیاری از ایشان بعالم اسلامیت و انسانیت خدمتهای نمایان کرده اند many of them have done brilliant service to the cause of Islam and humanity , قصد آن کرده‌ام که خدمتی خواص بعالم کنم I am resolved to do a particular service to the people in general , در خدمت تو هرچه دستم برآید کوتاهی نخواهم کرد in thy service I shall not refrain from doing whatever lies in my power : (iv) بعد از ادای خدمت بدین عبارت گفتم after making my obeisance I addressed him in these very words , امّا چه سود که با سایر خدمتکاران برابریم but what does that benefit me, as I am still a servant ? گذران خدمتکاران من از پهلوی بیمار است the living of my servants proceeds from the patients

9. The Lark and Her Young Ones

A lark had a brood of young ones in a field of corn which was just ripe , and being apprehensive, lest the corn might be reaped before her young ones had attained the full plumage of their feathers and the use of their wings, she left word, whenever she went out in search of food, that her young ones should report to her all the news they heard in her absence.

One day the master came to look at the state of the crop and finding it quite ripe said to his son "Go to our friends and acquaintances and tell them to come early to-morrow to help me in getting my corn reaped for it is full time to do so" When the old lark came back, the young ones told their mother what they had heard, and in great fear begged her to remove them forthwith "Time enough" said she "if he trusts to his friends and acquaintances, be sure that the corn will not be reaped to-morrow" The next day the owner came, and waited in vain for his friends When he saw that no one came he said to his son: "Now I find friends and acquaintances do not come to one's help but there is not a moment to be lost; so we must call in our relations." In still greater fear, the young ones repeated to their mother the farmer's words. "If that be all" says she, "do not be frightened for relations hardly ever come forward to aid one another Next day she went abroad, and the owner coming as before waited till noon but the relations proved as false as the others. "My boy" said he "we must no longer wait for our friends and relations Let us do our work ourselves and give up the thought of other's assistance Do you go and hire some reapers, and we will set to work ourselves to-morrow early in the morning When the young ones told their mother this—she said "Now it is time to be off for when a man takes up his business himself instead of leaving it to others you may be sure that the work will be done without delay

A lark— چکاوک A field of corn— مزرعهٔ گندم

Just ripe— نیم رسیده

A brood of young ones— اسنانهٔ از زالی چوچه

Being appehensive (= apprehensive from this was)—

— خائف از این بود که

Lept— مبادا

Translate before her young ones had attained &c.' **thus**

before this that (پیش از آنکه) her young ones (بچه هایش) full plumage (پر و بالِ تمام) may produce (بر آورند) and able to fly (قابلِ پریدن) may become (بشوند) the master of the corn-field (صاحبِ مزرعه) the wheat (گندم را) may gather (چینند)

From 'she left word &c' **begin** a fresh sentence (with
(بنا برین

Whenever— هرگاه که In search of food— برای تحصیل دانه

She went out— از آشیان می پرید

She left word (=used to give directions to her young ones)— به جوجهای خود وصیت می نمود

Translate 'that her young ones should report to her &c.' **thus** in my absence (در غیاب من) whatever you may hear (بشنوئید) me with that informed (خبردار) you make (کنید)

To look at the state of the crop—
تا کیفیت محصول خودرا درباند —

Quite ripe— تمام رس

Go to our friends and acquaintances—
بروئید بروی رفقاء و آشنایانمان —

Tell them to come early to-morrow &c
بگوئید فردا صبح زود بیایند و بدرو کردن ما را کمک بدهند

For it is full time to do so—
. که بغایت بروقت است و تاخیر جائز نیست .

Old lark مادر جوجها

They told what they had heard— آنها سرگذشت را بیان کردند .

In great fear — با خوف و هراس

Begged her to remove them forthwith —
. التماس نمودند که هرچه زود تر مارا ازین مزرعه ببری

Time enough— فرصت بیست کافی .

If he trusts to his friends &c.—

اگر صاحب مزرعه بامید رفقا و آشنایان است —

Be sure— یقین بدان

Corn (=it) will not be reaped &c.— فردا حصد نخواهد شد

Translate and waited in vain for his friends &c. thus

and waited for friends (منتظر رفقا شد) when his waiting (انتظارش) to disappointment (به یأس) ended (انجامید) and no one came (کسی نیامد) he said &c.

I find— مشاهده کردم

Friends and acquaintances do not turn up to one's help—

رفقا و آشنایان بدرد آدم نمی خورند —

There is not a moment to be lost— نباید دقیقهٔ را فوت کنیم

We must call in our relations—

باید برویم الان و خویشاوندان خود را طلب کنیم —

In still greater fear— با ترس زیادتر

The farmer's words— آنچه از دهقان شنیده بودند

To repeat (=submit)— معروض داشتن

If that be all— اگر این مسئله است

Be not frightened— ترسان مباشید

Relations hardly ever come forward &c.—

اقربا که در روز گرفتاری بداد یکدیگر نمی رسند —

To go abroad— بدیار غربت رفتن As before— مثل سابق

Waited till noon— تا ظهر چشم براه آنها ماند

But the relatives proved as faithless as the others—

که همچون دیگران بیوفا برآمدند —

Dear boy— ای فرزند دلبند

We must wait no longer for our friends and relatives—

دیگر نباید منتظر رفقاء و اقرباء باشیم —

Let us do our work ourselves &c —

باید خود در کار خود بکوشیم و چشم از دیگران بپوشیم —

Reaper— دروگر . To hire— بکرایه گرفتن

We will set to work ourselves early to-morrow—

فردا زود خود مان عزیمت این کار را مي نمائیم —

This— این بس

It is time to be off— وقت اینست که باید برویم

Translate 'when a man takes up his business himself &c' **thus** when (وقتیکه) a man (کسي) wishes (مي خواهد) he himself (خودش) his business (کار خود را) he may do, and not (نه) to others he leaveth (بگذارد) , know for certain (یقین بدان) that his work without delay (بي تأمّل) will be done (بانجام پذیرد)

NOTES

18. Further examples of the uses of the word 'کار' are (1) کاري از برایت مي بینم I shall see what may be done for thee , بعد از گفتگوي بسیار کار براین قرار گرفت after much discussion the affair was thus settled , در اوّل کار چنان ناپدیدار گشت که هیچکس را از او خبري نشد in the very first encounter he disappeared in such a way that no one had any news of him , امروز یکشنبه و کارها تعطیل است to-day is Sunday and works are suspended , فردا پي کار مي روند to-morrow they will attend to business , پیش آمد کار بخیرا ست the future of the affair points towards good (11) تابان از اصلاح کار چه ضرر مترتّب تواند شد what harm can befall them through reform of

affairs ? هرآینه در هنگام کارها و انتظام معاملات خلل راه میدید (از دست رفت)
it will put the courses of affairs and I in order. The story
into confusion. ذالکل حبس حيثها گله اول او ارداراز مکنوسكذ I [illegible]
settled upon becoming an instant vendor of smoke. نظریهای
بعدها می ساز و کار مدار the Nazir kept his place. هد در سر کار ماند
come with me and ask no question. همراه من بیا و پرسیده نکن
understanding how the wind was blowing he said in amaze-
ment: ... برای رؤیی هر اول نسیله بهای اوضکری کلاغی می بیم to amend
matters I was the first to raise an uproar. (iii) از ترس انقلابی
I was extremely afraid of the cat ... مردی و مي مر
coming out of the bag. ترسیدم از این حاس داخل اطاق شود بمه کرددی
I feared that if she entered the room with me the [illegible]
secret might be discovered. یک دفع مبحی سرپوش از روی کار برداشته
شود ممکن نیست از پنهان داشتن او ... you see if once the cover is lifted
from the face of the affair it would be impossible to conceal it
from him. O تا تو خلاص شوی از کار می گذرد before thou art freed
the affair will have passed beyond itself. مدتها بود که میخواستم
کار از دست او گرفته شود for long I wished to have the affair taken
out of his hand. برای اجرای آن رؤسای قوم چه حیلها بکار میبرند what
tricks do not the leaders of the nation make use of for giving
currency to that! در هر کار بکارشان می خوریم In every affair we are
of use to them. همیشه از تو مواظبت نمیکند will he not always look
after you? (iv) یک روز بعد دست بکار عروسی میزنند in another day
they will commence the bridal ceremonies. من دست بکار شدم
I commenced the work; ... از نام و نشان او کار نداشته باشی I have
nothing to do with his name and address. ما غیر می برالم کار

خود را نه بیام we can manage our own affair nicely رنگهای قلّابي بكار بردند they made use of false dyes, ایهٔ ما سدّه کرده در کار مردن است our neighbour having a colic is on the point of death, کارمن تمام است I am done for, تن بدین کارها در نمي دهد she would not give herself up to such affairs, چنان خوب از عهدهٔ کار برآمدم که از آنگاه بعد صدر اعظم با من از درِ التفات برآمد so nicely did I manage the affair entrusted to me that henceforward the prime-minister began to look upon me with favour از کار و بارم اطلّاعي کامل بهم رسانید he made himself perfectly informed of all my affairs, این شاعرانِ بیعار مرا از کار و بار داشته بتنگ آورده اند these impudent poets have brought me to a sad pass by preventing me from carrying out my business, گفتم کار و بار معیّني نیست I said 'there is no fixed business', بآبم احتیاج نیست سر و کارم باخاک است I do not want water, my business concerns with earth (only) (۷) درکار داني افلاطونِ عصر خویش است for knowledge of affairs he is the very Plato of his age, حیله هاي او بمن کارگر نمي شود his stratagems will not avail with me, توي آبه بیکار میگردید you wander about the village without anything to do, در این مملکت همه‌کاره است in this kingdom he is the man for all affairs, مردانِ جنگي و کارزار نیز از این عرف و عادت پیروي نمایند the soldiers also should follow in these ways, روزي بجهت تماشا بکارخانهٔ توپ ریزيِ آنجا رفت one day he went to see the cannon-factory of that place, از پاسِ بیداري و کار آگاهي خود شان ملّتي زنده کرده اند by the help of their vigilance and practical experience they have revived a nation, بعد بسمت کارپرداري به مصر و بغداد رفت afterwards by way of service he went to Egypt and Baghdad, مرا امین و کاردان میشمردي he used

to regard me as trustworthy and experienced الرسم كو للقتي
مسرب if thou leave it half-done, then alas for the [illegible] طي بماحد
has risen [illegible]
to acquire a reputation for usefulness and courage I was in hope that gradually I would rise to high appointments [illegible]
[illegible] he was the deputy lieutenant and had the whole business in hand while I was nobody [illegible]
I saw no weapon of fighting on the person of the monk except his tongue [illegible]
do not pretend ignorance.

10 Natural Products of Persia

Few countries can boast of better vegetable productions or in greater variety. Th gardens vie in beauty and luxuriance with any in the world and from the parts which are highly cultivated, we may imagine the *prosperity* Persia might attain to under a just and settled government. Some of its finest and extensive vallies, which are covered with the remains of cities and villages are consigned to wandering tribes, and feed their cattle *and flocks*; and one may travel for a hundred miles, through region once covered with grain without seeing more than the few scattered fields deemed sufficient to furnish food for the families which have the range of the domain and to give an annual supply of green shoots for their horses. Of the commonest varieties of vegetables found in Persia may be named the cabbage cauliflower carrot turnip brinjal, beans lentils lettuce radishes celery onion garlic tomato and potato among fruits there are the grape pomegranate plums fig greengages walnut filbert peaches pistachio nut quince, pear apricot orange sweet lime melon, apple, cherry and strawberry; and of flowers there are the common lily the large white lily marvel of Peru wall flower portulacca cocks comb, dahlia larkspur, China rose moss rose white rose eglantine narcissus *and tulip*. Persia does not abound in precious minerals; iron and lead however are found in many parts. The natives boast that there are also mines of silver and gold; but these have never been worked to any advantage

Persia has always been indebted to other countries for the precious metals, and it is remarkable, that among a people, whose sovereign deems the right of coining his highest privilege, foreign coins should form a considerable part of the currency No gems of any value are found except the turquoise, which is obtained from the hilly regions near Nishapur The Gulf of Persia has several pearl fisheries particularly that near the island of Bahrein, but we can hardly consider these as belonging to Persia, for though its monarchs have always claimed the sovereignty of this sea, they have never had any navy to contend with the Arabian rulers of the opposite shore

Translate 'few countries can boast of better &c.' **thus**

very few (در ڍارکم) a country (ملكي) is that its vegetable (نباتاتش) better and its varieties (انواع آن) more (بيشتر) than Persia may be (باشد)

The gardens— باغهاي اين مملكت Beauty— رونق

Luxuriance— كثرت نمود

With any in the world— با هر باغي كه از آن بهتر در عالم نيست

To vie— برابري كردن.

From the parts which are highly cultivated—

— از ملاحظة حصّه هاي خاكِ ايران كه خيلي معمور است —

To imagine قياس كردن (use 1 pl Aor after 1 pl present tense of توانستن)

Translate 'prosperity Persia might attain to under a just &c' **thus** that if this country under a settled and just government be (در تحتِ حكومتِ قائم و باعدل و انصاف باشد) to what extent (تاچه پايه) its prosperity and cultivation (آبادي و معموريِ آن) will progress (ترقّي خواهد كرد)

Fine— نيكو. Extensive— وسيع Valley— وادي

Which are covered with the remains of cities and villages—
که تا قلوز بعلامی سهرها و قریهها که در جمیع اطراف آن نمایان است —
To wandering tribes— بایلات صحرانشین
To be consigned— واگذار شدن (use 3 sing of ماضی مرکب)
And feed their cattle and flock—
که در آن گله و رمهٔ خود را می چرانند —

Translate and one may travel for a hundred miles &c.'
thus and in the distance of hundred mile (در مسافت صد میل راه) through regions that (از اطرافهایکه) during past times (ایام سلف) under cultivation (زیر زراعت) has been (بوده است) now only (فقط) cuttings of cultivation (قطعات زراعت) scattered here and there (جابجا پراکنده) is seen to the extent that (بر قدریکه) the bread of the families that therein desert-wandering may be (نان قبیلههائیکه در آنها بیابانی گردش باشد) and annual young shoots of their horses (فصیل سالیانهٔ اسپان ایشان را) it may give.

Cabbage— کلم پیچ
Carrot— زردک
Turnip — شلغم
Brinjal— بادنجان
Beans— لوبیا
Lentils— عدس
Lettuce— کاهو
Radishes— تربچه ترب
Celery— کرفس
Cauli flower— کلم فرنگی
Orange— نارنگی پرتقال
Sweet lime— پرتقال
Medlar— ازگیل
Musk-melon— خربزه
Water-melon— هندوانه
Straw-berry— توت فرنگی
Common lily— سوسن
Large white lily— گل مریم

Garlic—سیر.

Tomato—بادنجان فرنگي

Potato—سیب زمیني

Plums—آلو

Greengages—آلوچهٔ زرد

Walnut—گردو

Filburt—فندق

Peaches—شفتالو.

Quince—به

Pear—گلابي

Apricot—زرد الو

Marvel of Peru—لالهٔ عباسي

Wall-flower گلِ خیر

Portulacca گلِ نار

Cocks-comb—زلفِ عروس

Dahlia—گلِ کوکب

Larkspur—زبان در قفا

China rose—گلِ رشت

Moss-rose—گلِ سرخ

White rose—نسترن

Eglantine—نسرین

Narcissus—نرگس

Persia does not abound in precious minerals—

معادنِ نفیسه در ایران فراوان نیست—

However—ولي

Lead—سرب

Many parts—بسیاری از اطرافِ این ملک.

To be found—یافت شدن.

The natives boast—آهاليِ ایران مدّعي آنند

Mines of silver and gold—معادنِ طلا و نقره

These have never been worked to any advantage—

هرگز هیچ فائده بدین معادن مترتّب نشده است

Translate 'Persia has always been indebted to other &c'

thus: therefore (لهذا) always (همیشه) the gold and silver of Persia from other countries (بلادِ دیگر) has been (بوده است)

It is remarkable—طوري غریبي است

Among a people—در ملّتي

Whose sovereign deems the right of coining &c.—

که سکهٔ زدن را یکی از مخصوصات بزرگ پادشاه خود میداند —

Considerable part of the currency— بیشتر پول رایج ملکشان

Foreign coins should form (= be)— سکهٔ ممالک دیگر است

Translate 'no gems of any value are found except &c'

thus among precious gems (از جواهر بیبهای) except the turquoise (مگر از فیروزه) which from the hilly region (کوهستانی) near to Nishapur (قریب به نیشاپور) they bring, nothing is found in this country (چیزی در این ملک یافت نمی شود)

The Gulf of Persia has several pearl fisheries &c.—

بسیاری از جاهای خلیج فارس که رمانزدیک به بعضی مروارید حاصل میشود—

Translate but we can hardly consider these as belonging &c. **thus** but mostly it is (غالب اینست) that one cannot say that anything from these (هیچیک از اینها) belonging (متعلق) to Persia is for though the monarchs of (سلاطین) Persia always this sea (دریا را) have included among their kingdom (داخل ملک خود دانسته اند) but never (هرگز) the naval strength (استعداد دریائی) that they can with the Arabian rulers (با حکام اعراب) that on the opposite shores (در سواحل مقابل) have been (بوده اند) they may contend (مکافحه کنند), they have not (نداشته اند)

NOTES

17 The uses of the word بسیار may be illustrated

his (ii) این بسیار مشکلی است this is a very difficult busi
ness بتجربهٔ من بدرد دل بسیار فایده دارد by my experience it
has much efficacy in heart complaints در اندک زمانی ثروت بسیار
جمع نمود within a short time he accumulated vast wealth, بسیار
کار دارم I have many engagements بسیار جاها درآیدها بسیار کم است
compared to many places they are very few here, پس از حدت
و شدت بسیار اندکی بعود آمد after a display of much heat and fury
he collected himself shortly, بعد از معطلی بسیار عاقبت سری بالا کرد
after a long silence, at last he raised his head (ii) از صحبت یکدیگر
بسیار حظ می کردیم we immensely enjoyed each other's society,
از این اظهار بسیار خشنود شدم I was much delighted at this pro
posal, امروز هوا بسیار خوب است this is a very fine day در اول شهر یک
مسجد بسیار عالی بود there was a very lofty mosque at the first
part of the town, زبان فرنگ بسیار لازم است French is very necessary;
بسیار معطل شدن ممکنم نمی شود it is not possible for me to wait
very long آقا مردان آدم بسیار محیل است Aqa Mardan is a very
tricky fellow (iii) از پشت پنجرها چشمهای بسیاری بمن دوخته بود from
behind the crannies many eyes were directed towards me,
اگر نقد بسیاری در دستم نیست عیب ندارد if I have not much cash in
hand, it matters not, سود بسیاری عرضه کرد he offered interest
at a high rate, از بسیاری چشم پوشیده در گذشتم not regarding many
of them I left them out, اگر تمامی هموطنان بد را بد نیک را نیک میگفتند
امروز بسیاری از زمانی باشد جمع شده بود if all my countrymen had
spoken ill of the bad and good of the good many of the objection
able things would have been corrected up to date آنچه هر مرگ را
که مخلوط بسیاری از بدی استعمال است دوامی خود سعی آن نمود he did ...

ciled himself in that great city which is prosperous above many of the Islamic countries.

20 Examples of the uses of the word چیز are (i) چیز عزیز را بجای عزیز می برند they are taking rare things to a sacred place هیچ چیز ما نباید از آمده و رونده پنهان باشد nothing of us should be kept concealed from visitors دو تن از همراهان خود را ... برای طلب گوسفند و مرغ و چیز دیگر برای شام ... I sent two of my companions in quest of a sheep, fowls, or anything else for our evening meal باید همهٔ چیز متحمل شود one must bear everything, در مرد رحم و مروت هم خوب چیز است mercy and generosity are also good things in a man (ii) برای شام دیگر چیزی نخواهد ماند there will be nothing left for the evening meal آدمی که مال داشته باشد از هیچ چیزی نمی ترسد the man who has property fears nothing چیزی نمانده بود که دولت علیهٔ ایران بدولت انگلیس اعلان جنگ کند the august Persian Government was nothing short of declaring war against the English government حاجی چیزی ... و نگرفت Haji neither asked for, nor took anything چیزی مطلب چیزی را بجز ترس چیزی نمی طلبد seek nothing, and nothing will seek you از ترس و ... مرا ... مایه ... I had nothing but the fright, چیزی فرو نگذاشتم I did not let anything important in the discourse pass unnoticed by me ... چیزی شنیدید یا نه have you heard anything about the New World or not? برادرانم بجز فائدهٔ خود چیزی بنظر ندارند my brothers have nothing but their own interest in view (iii) الا این همه تیزی و تندی بی چیزی نیست these accusings and sharpness are not without foundation, ... I would have tied them with

the camel-tie until they had confessed having something , معلوم می شود که همه بی چیز اند it appears that all are destitute , طایفهٔ سربار از بی چیزی نوعی از فرقهٔ گداها می باشند soldiers as a body are, from poverty, in the category of beggars

11. The Boy Who had no Certificates.

A gentleman advertised for a page, and nearly fifty applicants came and offered themselves to him All but one brought letters of recommendations But out of the whole number of applicants he selected the boy who had no such letter and dismissed the rest "I should like to know," said a friend, "on what ground you selected that boy, who had not a single recommendation.' "You are mistaken," said the gentleman , "he had a great many He wiped his feet when he came in, and closed the door after him showing that he was clean and careful He gave his seat instantly to that lame old man, showing that he was thoughtful for others besides himself He answered my questions clearly, showing that he was accurate and truthful He picked up the book, which I had purposely laid on the floor, and replaced it on the table, showing that he was modest and orderly When I talked to him, I noticed that his finger-nails were clean Don't you call these things recommendations ? I do , and I would give more for what I can judge of a boy by using my eyes ten minutes, than for all the letters he can bring me " This story is a good example of the truth of the proverb—'he whose own worth doth speak, need not speak his own worth '

A gentleman— یکی از نجبا   Page— پیشخدمت

To advertise— اعلان نمودن (use 3 sing of ماضی بعید)

Translate 'nearly fifty applicants came and offered themselves &c' thus nearly (کم و بیش) to the extent of fifty (بقدر پنجاه) boy, that except one individual (نفر) every one of (از) them a letter of recommendation (سفارش نامهٔ) having (داشته), applying (جویا) they came, and to his service (بخدمتش) they offered (عرضه دادند)

Out of the whole number of applicants— از جملهٔ عرض‌کارها

Who had no such letter— که هیچ سفارشنامهٔ نداشته بود

To select— انتخاب کردن

Dismissed the rest— سایرین را بی کار خود شان رخصت نمود

A friend— یکی از دوستانش

Translate I should like to know on what ground &c. **thus** : your honour (آنجناب) the boy (را) who had not a single recommendation (هیچ اعتبارنامهٔ ابداً نبود) honoured with service (ممتاز خدمت فرمودید), please tell (بفرمائید) its reason what is.

You are mistaken— سهو کردید

A great many— اعتبارنامه‌های زیادی

When he came in— چون داخل اطاق شد

To wipe— پاک نمودن To close— جفت کردن

Showing that— و از آن معلوم که

He was (= is) clean and careful— طبع نظیف و دلِ باهوش دارد

Translate 'he gave his seat instantly &c. **thus** : as soon as his eye (همین که نظرش) upon that lame old man (پیرِ مردِ لنگ) fell, instantly (فی الفور) him (را) upon his own seat (برجای خود) he made sit (نشانید)

Showing that— و از آن ، دم که

He was (= is) thoughtful for others besides himself—

بجز فکر ذاتِ خود خیالِ دیگران هم دارد —

My questions— همه سؤالاتم را

Clearly (= plainly)— با کمال سادگی To answer— پاسخ نمودن

Showing that— و از آن نمایان که

He was (=is) accurate and truthful— صحيح الكلام و راستگار است .

The book which I had purposely laid on the floor—

— كتابيرا كه عمداً در فرش گذاشته بودم

To pick up— برداشتن (use ماضي معطوف)

On the table— روي ميز   To replace— باز نهادن

Showing that— و از آن معلوم كردم كه

He had (=has) an eye for neatness— چشم پاكيزه بين دارد

Instead of pushing and crowding—

— بجايكه ديگران را تكان ميداد و هجوم ميآورد

He waited quietly for his turn—

— منتظر نوبت خود با اطمينان تمام باشد

Showing that— و از آن درك كردم كه

He was (=is) modest and orderly—

— مؤدب و انتظام گزين است

To talk— حرف زدن

I noticed that his finger-nails were clean—

— ناخنهايش را ديدم كه صاف است

Don't you call these things recommendations ?

— . مگر اين همه چيز را همه اعتبار نامچه نمي پنداري

I do— من مي پندارم

Translate 'I would give more for what I can judge of &c'
thus to (به) letters of recommendation as eloquent as possible (هرچه بليغتر), that a boy may bring, my own estimation (اندازهٔ خود را) preference (ترجيح) I will give (مي دهم) that within ten minute's time (در ظرف ده دقيقه) my own eye (چشم خودم را)

making use of (بکار بردہ) I can with respect to him (درباب او) I may do (بکنم)

The story is a good example &c.—

این حکایت بر تصدیق این مثل است —

He whose own worth doth speak &c.—

مشک آنست که خود ببوید ؛ آن که عطّار بگوید —

NOTES

21 Examples illustrating the uses of the word جمله are (1) سکندر از جملهٔ آنان نبود Alexander did not belong to that sort of people جمله مردافگنیم we all are man throwing از جملهٔ اسباب بی باکی از خطر حرز و تعویذ ی چند بود out of all the reasons for being indifferent to danger there were some talismans and spell از آنجمله میرزا فضول بود که منصبش را بار دیگر داده بودند out of their number was Mirza Fazul who had been installed in his post (11) باجمله چون شب آمد سفره فرش داد in short when night came the table-cloth was spread بالجمله از آگره بلاهور و از آنجا به ملتان رسید to sum up from Agra he came to Lahore and thence to Multan بالجمله همّت والایش به کابل هم آرام نداد In short his lofty ambition gave him no rest even in Kabul آدم باید بهر زبانی که در و می الجمله فهم و از رسوم و عادات اهل زمانه مطلّع باشد a man should understand perfectly every language he speaks and should be informed of the customs and practices of the men of the age

22 The uses of the word حرف may be illustrated thus (l) شب و روز حرفِ تأثیر حب او دهانش نمی افتد night and day he could talk of nothing else save the efficacy of the pill ما یک کار کردنی داریم و یک حرف گفتنی we have only one course to pursue and

one word to say, همینکه حرف رشوت بمیان آمد طوري دیگر شدم as soon as the word 'bribe' was mentioned, I became quite another person, اینها چه حرف است what words are these? این حرف چه ثقلی دارد what difficulty is there in this? حرف همان است که گفتم my word (or intention) is even as I have already said, پارهٔ حرفها داشتم I have a few words to say to her, بجز از یاد تو حرفي در زبان ندارد she can speak of nothing else save you (ii) من بحرفِ تو و کنیزت هرگز باور نداریم I never believe either your words, or your maid's, بحرف شما مي باشم I am at thy word, بخلافِ این حرف اثباتي داري have you any proof to the contrary? هرگز نمي توانم از حرفِ تو بدرون بروم I can never depart from your word, خویش و قومهاش هم بحرفِ او قوت مي دهند his relatives and kinsmen will also support his words (iii) حرص بحدیکه از آحاد و عشرات حرف زدن در نزدِ تو کفرانست you are so covetous that it is impossible for you to utter so low numbers as units and tens, ترا بخدا این حرفها را مزن I implore thee by God, do not utter such words, بنا کرد بحرفهاي بیجا در هوا زدن he began to utter useless exclamations من دیدم که آنها حرفِ خلوتي میخواهند زد I saw that they intend to have some private conversation, هرگز حرفش دوتا نمي شود his word never falls asunder, خودش هم حراف است she can talk herself

23 Some examples of the use of the word 'باب' are (i) درین باب کسي بگردِ ایشان نمي رسید in this respect no one can approach them, حکایتي درین باب بیان کنم I will relate a story concerning this (ii) ایشان در بابِ دخل و تصرف بسرحد خود بسیار غیورند they are very tenacious of their rights with respect to entering and taking possession of lands within their frontier (iii) فرنگان

خوب باب کار تو اند the Franks are very proper material for you to work upon این دانه باب کار دندان من نیست this seed is not suited to my teeth این تنخواه باب ایران نیست these goods will not sell in Persia بازارهای آشفته باب کار دزدان است this kind of general distraction and fury are proper materials for rogues to work upon.

24. The use of the word سائر or سایر may be illustrated thus (i) گاهگاه زمزمهٔ بسلی نیز کردیم که بسائر هنرهایم پیرایهٔ دیگر می بست sometimes I indulged in murmuring songs which added a new grace to the rest of my accomplishments مردم این شهر تبریز از اهل سائر شهرهای ایران که من دیده ام دیوانه ترند the people of this city of Tabriz are more insane than the inhabitants of the rest of the cities of Persia that I have visited طول و عرض این راه همه باغات انگور و سایر میوه ها است the length and breadth of this road were full of gardens of vines and the rest of fruits بیشتر از سایر ملل بعزت و افتخار می زیسته اند they lived in more honour and glory than the rest of the nations, باتفاق سائر امم ایرانیان اولین مردم متمدن روی زمین بودند the rest of the nations are unanimous that the Persians were the first civilized nations of the world (ii) باید آنها و سایرین از این سرّ نه حالا نه من بعد خبردار شوند it is necessary that neither they nor the rest should, either now or hereafter be apprised of this secret برای کرایهٔ شتر و قاطر که از جده بمکه سایرین یعنی اهالی عثمانی و مصر و هند سی غروش می دهند از ایرانی دو صد غروش که شش برابر آنها ست پول بگیرند for hire of camels and mules from Jiddah to Mecca, the rest, namely the Muhammadans of Turkey Egypt and India, etc., give thirty *ghrosh*, while from the Persians are taken two hundred *ghrosh* which is six times the money

آمودد و سایرین مرده را با آبِ قراح شستند the priest and the rest washed the dead in pure water

12. Karim Khan Zand. I.

Karim Khan died in 1779 A D aged about eighty years He had enjoyed independent power for twenty-six years, and during the last twenty had been, without a competitor, the acknowledged sovereign of Persia His character is not easily described It had few of the common features of a despotic monarch He had ambition, but free from the asperity of temper which almost always mixes with it He preserved an undisturbed temper, equally amid scenes of violence and repose, and was, through life, distinguished by a manly simplicity of mind, which always kept him remote from the pomp and vanities of his high rank, as from that affectation which endeavours to conceal its pride under the garb of humility Although humane, he sometimes punished severely, and he employed others of a disposition very different from his own to spread terror among his enemies and rebellious subjects, but his clemency was hardly ever refused to a fallen or repentant foe One of the remarkable features in his character was goodness of heart He often repeated an anecdote of his early life, saying "When I was a poor soldier in Nadir Shah's camp, my necessity led me to steal from a saddler a gold embossed saddle, sent by an Afghan chief to be repaired. The next day I learnt that the poor saddler was in prison, and sentenced to be hung My conscience smote me, and I replaced the saddle exactly in the place whence I took it I watched till it was discovered by the saddler's wife, on seeing it she gave a scream of joy, immediately fell down on her knees, and prayed aloud that the person who had brought it back might live to have a hundred gold embossed saddles himself I am quite certain that it is by the honest prayer of the woman that I have reached this prosperity"

In 1779 A D در سنه هزار و صد و نود و سه هجري .

Aged about eighty years— تقريباً در عمرِ هشتاد ساالگي

To die— زندگي را وداع کفتن .

To enjoy independent power— علي الاستقلال سلطنت كردن

Last— آخرين

Without a competitor— بدون معارع و مخالف

Acknowledged sovereign of Persia فرمانرواي مملکتِ ايران .

His character is not easily described—

تعریفِ طورش آسان خالی از اشکال نیست —

It has few of the commonest features of a despotic monarch—

کمتری از صفاتِ سلاطینِ جابر در وی بود —

He had ambition— بزرگی را دوست می داشت

Asperity of temper— تندیِ طبعی

Which almost always mixes with it—

که غالباً لازمهٔ اینگونه مزاج افتاده است —

He had not— نداشت　　　His temper— مزاجش

In violence and softness, and in war and peace—

در شدّت و رضا و در جنگ و صلح —

Upon one manner and method was— بریک روش و یک نهج بود

Through life— در جمیع ایّامِ حیات

A manly simplicity— نوعِ سادگیِ مردانه

Was distinguished by (= in his nature he had)—

در طبیعتش داشت —

Which always kept him remote from &c.—

که اورا هم از تجمّلاتِ پادشاهی
و از مزخرفاتِ فرمان دهی باز می داشت —

As from that affectation which endeavours &c.—

و همچنین از صفتِ تزویر که غرور و حیله را در
پردهٔ تواضع و فروتنی می پوشد اورا منع مینمود —

Humane— صاحب مروّت و نرم دل　　　Sometimes— بعضی اوقات

To punish severely— تعزیرِ سخت کردن

Others (= persons) of a disposition very different from his own— جماعتی که برعکسِ طبیعتِ او شدید العمل بودند —

Upon his enemies and rebellious subjects—

بر دشمنانِ باغي و رعاياي ياغي —

To employ— گماشتن

To spread terror among them— تا باعثِ رعب و هراسِ ايشان شوند.

His clemency was hardly ever refused &c —

از عدم دليل و عذري نادم هرگز مردميِ خود را مضايقه نكرد—

One of the most remarkable features in his character—

از آشكارترينِ صفات او —

His goodness of heart— نيك دلي او

An anecdote of his early life— يكي از وقايعِ ابتداي حالِ خود را

He often repeated— مكرّر حكايت مي‌كرد When— وقتيكه.

In Nadir Shah's camp— در اردوي نادر شاه

A poor soldier— سپاهيِ بيچاره

My necessity led me to steal &c —

فقر و فاقه مرا در آن داشت كه زينِ طلاكوبي از زين سازي دزديدم —

Sent by an Afghan chief to be repaired—

و اين زين را يكي از امراي افغان باو داده بود كه اصلاح كند —

To learn (=hear)— شنيدن

Was sentenced to be hung— و حكم شده است كه طنابش بيندازند.

My conscience having smote me— دلم بهم در آمده

Having brought the saddle— زين را برده

I placed exactly in the place whence I took—

. در همان جائيكه از آن برداشته بودم گذاشتم —

To watch (=wait)— صبر كردن

The saddler's wife having come— زنِ زين‌گر آمده

Having seen it— آنرا ديده

From excess of joy she screamed — از فرط شادي نعرا زد

Having fallen down on her knees — بر زمين افتاده زانو زده

The person who had brought it back—

کسي که اين زين را واپس آورد —

God to such extent to him life may give—

خدا اين قدر باو زندگي بدهد —

To have a hundred gold-embossed saddles himself—

که صد زينِ طلا کوب از آنِ خود ببيند —

I am quite certain — من يقين دارم

It is by the honest prayer of that woman &c —

از دعاي صادق آن زن بود که من باين مولد رسيدم —

NOTES.

24. *(a)* By the use of the subjoined formulae the years of each era (either Hijri or Christian) may be converted roughly into the corresponding years of the other In the formulae H is the Hijri, and C the Christain year

(i) $H \times 97 + 621\ 54 = C$

(ii) $\frac{C - 621\ 54}{97} = H$

(b) To find the Christian date exactly corresponding to any Muhammadan (or Hijri) date, it is necessary to express the Muhammadan date in years and decimals of a year to multiply these figures by 970225 and to the product to add 621 54 The result will be right to a day

25 The uses of the word 'کم' may be illustrated thus:
(i) زحمتِ آقا را کم کنيم let us give the Aqa less trouble ملالم کم

آیا دولتم کم است is my property small? is my wealth too little?
ای زنکه کم حرف بزن wife, talk less, هرگز بلا از این شهر کم نمی شود never
will misfortune leave this city (ii) کم می ماند که در بشکند little
remains for the door to be broken in, کم مانده بود که کلاهم را برباید
little remained for him to get the better of me, دم را غنیمت
شماریم که چنین دم کم افتد let us make the most of this opportunity
as such an opportunity rarely occurs (iii) در همچو کارها تجربهٔ شما
بسیار کمتر است your experience in such affair is very small,
اگر کمتر از یک سال نماند بالکلیه دست نمی دهد it will not be obtained at
all, if he remains less than a year, اگر روس را میگوئی از سگ فرنگی هم
کمتر است as for the Russians, they are less than the dogs of
Europe, کمترین وکیل نسقچی باشی بودم your humblest slave was the
sub-deputy executioner (iv) دزدی انسانی خود را بی شگون و کم برکت
دیدند they found their enterprise of man-stealing inauspicious
and unfortunate, ازین روی به پردلی و کم ترسی معروف by this way
he became well-known for courage and want of fear از کم سوادی
همه را بمدح خود حمل کرد through want of knowledge he mistook the
whole for praise, ایشیک آغاسی باشی بشاعر تفصیل مرگ نسقچی دیروز را
با خیلی کم وزیاد و تعجب صحبت میداشت the under-master of ceremonies
was narrating to the poet the death of the nasaqchi yesterday
with much exaggeration and addition of the marvellous with it,
چون آدمی کم جگر نبود سرپوش را از دست نینداخت as he was a man of
strong nerves, he did not let fall the lid from his hand, مردی
بود کم گو کم خنده پرشدت he was a man of few words, rare laughter
and severity of manners, دست کم هزار نفر ترکمان برما مهیای هجومند
at least one thousand Turkomen are ready to attack us

13. Wealth

Most people do something for a livelihood, and consequently an increase of income is not only acceptable but gives a pleasant feeling of success Doubt is often expressed whether wealth is of any advantage No doubt wealth entails more labour than poverty and certainly more anxiety Still it must be confessed that the possession of an income, whatever it may be which increases somewhat as the years roll on does add to the comfort of life. But this is of course on the supposition that you are master of your money and that the money is not master of you. Unquestionably the possession of wealth is attended by many drawbacks. Money and love of money often go together Just as drinking often does but increase thirst so in many cases the craving for riches grows with wealth. Moreover it is easier to make money than to keep or enjoy it. Keeping it is dull and anxious drudgery The dread of loss may hang like a dark cloud over life. Wealth is certainly no panacea for all evils. Moreover the value of money depends partly on knowing what to do with it, and partly on the manner in which it is acquired. Whether wealth is an advantage or not depends on the use we make of it. It is a disadvantage in the hands of those who do not know how to use it. It gives the command of so many things—leisure the power of helping others, books, works of art, opportunities and means of travel. It is well worth having and worth working for but it does not repay too great a sacrifice not indeed so great as is often offered up to it.

Most people—اکثر مردمان For a livelihood—برای تحصیل معاش

To do something—کاری کردن

An increase of income—افزایش در مداخل

Acceptable—پسند خاطر

A pleasant feeling of success—سرور کامیابی و لذت کامرانی

Often—بسا اوقات

Whether wealth is of any advantage—در باب فوائد مال و زر

To express doubt—اشکال کردن (use مباحثه کردن 3 pl act voice with دانایان as subject)

Not doubt—شکی نیست Than poverty—نسبت به ناداری

Wealth (= possession of wealth)—توانگری

Entails more labour— ملزمِ مشقتِ بیشتر است .

And certainly (entails) more anxiety

و فی الواقع مقتضی اضطرابِ فزون تر

It must be confessed— هیچ کس از این معترض نباشد

Possession— داشتن

Which increases somewhat &c —

که بتدریج طولِ عمر قدری زیاد می شود —

Whatever it may be— مقدارش هرچه باشد

Does add to the comfort of life—

باعثِ اضافهٔ آسایشِ زندگی میشود —

Translate 'this is of course on the supposition that &c'

thus: the truth of (صحت) this statement (مقوله) depends (منحصر است) on the supposition that (در تقدیریکه) the possessor of money (دارندهٔ پول) really free master (مختارِ کل) upon it may be, and not that money overpowering (غالب) over the possessor of money

Unquestionably— بلاشک

The possession of wealth— مالداری

Drawback— نقص To be attended with— داشتن

Money and love of money— داشتن پول و حبِ آن

Go together— یکجا (باهم) یافت میشود

Translate 'just as drinking often does but increase &c'

thus: just as (همچنین که) drinking (خوردنِ شراب) often only (محض) increase of thirst (ازدیادِ تشنگی را) attached to (لاحق) is, in the same manner (بدین منوال)

on many occasions (مراتبِ بسیار) is seen, that the more (هرچه) wealth (مال و زر) increases, the craving for its increase (حرصِ افزونیِ آن) the more (مزید تر) becomes (مي گردد)

Moreover— علاوه برین To make money— پول حاصل کردن
To keep and enjoy it— نگاه داشتن و متمتّع شدن از آن
Is dull and anxious drudgery— مشقّتِ بی مسرّت و پر زحمت
The dread of loss may hang like &c.—

—{ترس و بیم تلف شدنِ آن همهٔ عمر مانندِ ابرِ تلخی و دود سری مي باشد}

Wealth is certainly no panacea for all evils—
فی الواقع زر دوای هر دردی نیست —

Moreov مطلع تکرار برابر

The value of money depends partly on knowing &c.—

—{قدر زر موقوف است پاره بر دانستنِ مصرف بجاش و پاره بر طریقِ حاصل نمودنِ آن}

Whether wealth is an advantage or not— فواید یا مضرّتِ زر
On the use we make of it— بر طریقیکه آنرا تصرّف مي نمائیم
Translate 'it is a disadvantage in the hands of those &c.

thus and when in the hand of those it is (باشد) that does not know how they must make use of it (باید از آن متمتّع شوند) no benefit it gives, but rather the cause of injury (زیان) it becomes.

On the other hand— بر عکسِ آن
Translate 'it gives the command of so many things &c.'

thus possession of money (زر داشتن) us on

many things, namely (يعني) upon leisure (فراغت) and upon the power of doing good to others (مجال نفع رساني به ديگران) and upon the keeping ready of (مهيّا داشتن) books and work of various arts (حاصل صنائع مختلفه) and upon the opportunity (فرصت) and means of (اسباب) travel (سفر) power (قدرت) and command (اختيار) it gives (مي دهد)

It is well worth having &c مال و زر چيزيست داشتني و جهد كردني

Translate 'but it does not repay too great a sacrifice &c.'

thus but too great a sacrifice (فداي زياد را) that often on its way they allow (روا مي دارند) it does not deserve (نشايد) because ever its amends (تلافي آن) cannot be (نمي توان شد)

NOTES

26 Further examples of the idiomatic uses of the word ' جا ' are (i) ديگر جاي فكري نمانده است there is no further room for thought , آخر كار مرا باينجا رسانيدي at last you have brought me to this pass . (ii) اين كار سخت بجا افتاد this matter turned out very fortunate ; فرزند ! خوب بجا و بوقت آمدي son, you are arrived just in time , گويا مستيِ اين شراب تا قيامت بجا ست as if the intoxication of this wine will last for ever (iii) شاهزاده بطلانِ عملِ آنها لازمهٔ تدبير بجا آوردند the Prince carried out the necessary plot to frustrate their work , حقِّ وليعمتيِ او را بجا بيآوريد perform what is due to him as a benefactor (iv) خيالِ بيجا كرده است she has entertained a vain idea , بيك خون گرفتن اورا از زحمتِ خرجِ بيجاي شفا از ديگر خلاص كرده‌ام with one blood-letting I have freed him from the trouble

of six months further needless expense با انقضاء مدل نو را بها د
نقل او بجا خواهد بد although your words may mean nothing yet his action would be quite appropriate

27 The uses of the word دست may be further exemplified thus (i) دستي بالاي دست آنان نيست is there no controlling hand over them ? ايا نمي دانند ؛ رعيت بمثابهٔ دست و پاي دراند do you not know that the subject people are a sort of limbs to the estate ? دست کسي باو نرسيد no one could catch him ? (ii) مشتريش بسيار و بدست آوردنش دشوار it is sought after by many and is difficult to procure اين فرصت که بدست او اتفاقا افتاده است برايگان از دست نخواهد داد he would not let slip this opportunity which he happened to have با تکرار اين کلمات رقتّي دست داد on the repetition of these words a great tenderness was felt (by me) بي اختيار گريهٔ سختي دستم داد involuntarily I had a rush of heavy tears من بکوشش که برايگان از دست ندهم I was trying not to give it away for nothing دست از ما باز داشته مشغول تعيين قيمت ساعت و تقسيم آن شدند having withdrawn hands from us they engaged themselves in ascertaining the value of the watch and in dividing the amount (among themselves) , آنجاها نيز از دست سفرا و ... (ii) ... آسوده ... in those places also they are not left in tranquillity by the ambassadors or consuls and their followers (iii) هيچ وقت ملکات حسنهٔ ملية را از دست مده never give up (our) national virtues چنان مست شادي مي شد که دست از پا نمي شناخت he used to be so carried away with delight that he did not know what he was doing وقتي در مصر خيلي فلک زده با طالع خود دست بگريبان بودم once upon a time in Egypt having

fallen on evil days, I was struggling hard against an adverse fortune, پادشاه تازه دست و پاي خود را جمع کرده بامور مملکت داري قيام فرمايد the king, finding himself again in tranquillity and ease, should stand firm in managing the affairs of the kingdom, آنان بفراخور عقل خود دست و پاي جواب دادن نمودند they struggled to answer according to their mental capacity, بچه معجز بدين حال دسترس يافتي by what miracle hast thou brought about this state of things? حکيم دست و پا را گم کرد the doctor did not know what to do, با دشمن دست و گريبان شد he came hand to hand with the enemy, دست پاچه شد he become confused (iv) گاه دست تأسف برانو ميزد و گاه از ته دل آه مي کشيد sometimes he would strike his thigh as a sign of grief and sometimes heave a sigh from the depth of his soul, هرکجا دست اجل کوس رحلت مي نوازد ايشان بار اقامت مي اندازند wherever the hand of death played on the drum of departure, they would establish themselves therein (v) بالادستان آنان از هرکدام دو هزار سه هزار منات گرفته باينجاها فرستاده اند their superiors, having taken two or three thousand *minâts* from every one of them, have sent (them) to these places; بدستياري عدالت و مساوات بر همه مشکلات غلبه توان نمود by the aid of justice and equity one can over-come every difficulty, گفتم برويم بدستگاه وزارت خارجه I said 'let us visit the quarters of the foreign Minister', از آن پير افتادهٔ مظلوم دستگيري و ياري کن protect and assist that fallen and oppressed old man, دستمال را بدماغ گرفته برگشتم putting the handkerchief to (my) nose, I turned back, علي الخصوص بيماران تهي دست در خانهٔ حکيم را فرو گرفته بودند particularly patients of the poorer sort had flocked to the door of the doctor's house,

از ـست پاچکی دیگران شادانی بهمه می ند being pleased at the confusion of others, he smiled at every one رعایای دوردست از the subject people in distant parts would not take him into account حساب نمی برند I revealed (to them) the excess of my indigence صلهای ٢٦ ٢ بی حد اظهار نمودم this priest is my assistant and help-mate این آخوند معاون و دستیار من است I wished to present him half of what I had obtained خواستم که نصفهٔ آنچه دستگیرم شده نثارش کنم if I had lost an opulence, I have secured a patron. اگر دستگاهی از کفم رفت ٢ ربی بچنگم آمد

14. Karim Khan Zand.—II.

Karim Khan was esteemed pious, and was exact in the performances of his religious duties but his religion was not austere. His natural disposition was gay and cheerful and he continued to the last to enjoy the pleasures of the world and anxiously desirous that others should do the same. For *this reason by way of aspersion on his character some writers* report him to be immersed in luxury and headless of the miseries of his subjects; but if we go through the concurring testimony of the historians and living witnesses, it would be evident that even in the path of dissipation and indulgence, his love of pleasure never degenerated into intemperance nor was he ever unfitted by indulgence for the active performance of his duties as a sovereign. He had received no education. It is stated that he could not even write; and from his birth and the occupations of his early years it is probable he neither had, nor desired to have, any such accomplishment The son of a petty chief in a wandering tribe should but distinguish himself in attainments suited to his condition of life; and in all these he excelled. He was an unrivalled horse-man and possessed of great bodily strength and an active and supple frame, he had ample ingenuity in various military exercises But, though unlearned himself, he valued and encouraged learning in others. His court was the resort of men of liberal knowledge. An anecdote is related of Karim Khan, which illustrates his temper and the manner in which he treated his

subjects and dispensed justice to them. It is said that one-day, having had a prolonged attendance at his judgment seat, when the time of retirement came, he rose to depart, harassed and fatigued with the over-crowding of people, when a man rushed forward in apparent distraction, calling out for justice. "Who are you?" said Karim Khan "I am a merchant," replied the man, "and have been robbed and plundered of all I possessed" "What were you about," said the prince, "when you were robbed?" "I was asleep," answered the man "And why did you sleep?" exclaimed Karim Khan in a peevish and impatient tone "I," said the man, "made a mistake, because I thought you were awake" He was so well pleased with the manly answer, that turning towards the vizier, he bade him pay the man the value of the lost goods, and said "We must try to recover the property from the robbers"

To esteem— مرعي کردن (use 3 pl of حال act voice)

Pious— ديندار - متّقي

Was exact in the performances of &c

رعايتِ لوازمِ مذهب با حسن وجه نمودي —

His religion was not austere— سخت و دشوار گير نبودي

His natural disposition— مزاجش ,

Gay and cheerfull—خوش و خرّم To the last—تا آخرِ ايّامِ حيات

He continued to enjoy the pleasures &c,

از لذّاتِ دنيا بهره مي برد

Anxiously desirous that others should do the same—

شائق هم بود تا ديگران نيز از آن بهره‌ور باشند —

Translate 'by way of aspersion some writers report &c'

thus some (بعضي) the tongue of reproach (زبانِ طعن) having opened him immersed in (مستغرق) pleasures (لذّات) and cheerful in (مشغول) pomps (تجمّلات) and heedless (بيخبر) of (از) miseries of the subjects (خرابيِ حالِ رعايا) they write

Translate 'if we through the concurring testimony of

the historians &c. thus if inspection of the concurring (ملاحظهٔ اتفاق) of the persons who the history of (تاریخ) his times have written and of the persons who themselves (خود) eyewitness (شاهدِ برای العین) have been (بوده اند) be (بشود) it would be known (معلوم بشود) that even (حتّی) in the executing of dissipation (اجرای شهوات) and the enjoying of pleasures (تمتّع لذّات) also (هم) of the sort (بطوری) he was not (نبود) that to the limit of excess (بحدّ افراط) he might have reached (رسیده باشد) and for him (اورا) preventing (مانع) from the performance of the affairs of the state (از مهمّات امور – ملک) it might have been (شده باشد)

He had received no education— تربیتی نداشته

It is stated— منقول است

He could not even write— حتّی نوشتن هم نمی دانست

Birth— تولد ولادت

Occupations of his early years— حالت اوایل عمرش

He neither had, nor desired to have &c —

—{ انکه او کمالات نه هرگز داشته بود و نه هم می خواست که داشته باشد

A petty chief in a wandering tribe—

— یکی از امرای کوچک ایلات صحرانشین

In attainments suited to his condition of life—

— در کمالی ملاحظه لایق حال او بود

To distinguish (one's self)— امتیازی دادن (use 3 sing of

بايد ماصي مشاركت after)

And in all these he excelled

و در اين همه كريم خان را امتياز كلي بود —

An unrivalled horse-man— سوار بيعديلي

Translate 'and possessed of great bodily strength and an active and supple &c' **thus** and great bodily strength (قوت بدني زياد) and in the use of the various warlike instruments (استعمال اقسام آلات حرب) ample ingenuity (حذاقت وافر) and an active and supple frame (اندامي چست و چالاک) he had

Though unlearned himself—

اگرچه خود از علوم بي بهره بود —

He valued and encouraged learning in others—

علما را اعزاز و احترام و ديگران را بتحصيل دانش ترغيب و تحريص مي فرمود —

His court was the resort of men of liberal knowledge—

دربار او مرجع ادبا و مجمع فضلاء بود —

Which illustrates his temper and the manner &c —

كه كاشف مزاج و وضع بارك دي بارعيت و اجراي احكام عدلية اوست —

Having had a prolonged attendance at his judgment seat—

در ديوان مظالم زياد نشسته —

And harassed and fatigued with the over-crowding of people— و از كثرت آمد و شد مردم خسته —

When the time of retirement came— چون هنگام عزلت رسيد

To rise— برخاستن   To depart (=retire)— خلوت رفتن

When— وقتي كه In apparent distraction— از
To rush forward— بدس جستن (use عطوف ماضي)
Calling out for justice — فرياد بر آورده طلب انصاف كرد
Who are you— كيستي
I am a merchant— رئي تاجريست ام
And have been robbed and plundered of all I possessed—
و آنچه داشتم از من دزديدند —
What were you about when you were robbed—
وقتي كه دزديدند تو چه مي كردي —
I was asleep— خوابيده بودم
In a peevish and impatient tone— برقم زلّه
I made a mistake— غلط كردم
I thought you were awake— حسن داشتم كه تو بيداري
Translate he was so well pleased with the manly answer &c. thus Karim Khan (را) this manly answer (جواب مردانه) having pleased (خوش آمده) the face (روي) towards the vezier he brought and commanded (امر كرد) so that (كه) the value of that man's property (را) they might give (بدهند)
We must try to recover the property &c.—
مابايد مال او را از دزد بگيريم —

NOTES

28 The uses of the word زباني may be illustrated thus (1) از زبانم ايراني بودنم را با زباني خود بمن گفت he himself told me دانستند they found out from my talk that I was a Persian

نمي دانم , با زبانِ اتياليا با من بگفتگو در آمد he accosted me in Italian , باچه زبان شکرِ انعام و احسانِ او کنم I do not know how I should give adequate expression to (my) gratitude for (all) his kindness (ii) لفظِ نميدانم هرگز بر زبانش نگذشت the confession of ignorance never passed his tongue زبان را بر مگردان do not turn your tongue round , ديگر برزبانش نياورد she would not talk of him any more , زبان درازي مکن do not chatter , امروز عدالت و انصاف و مروّتِ سرکار وردِ زبانها ست در همهٔ روي زمين to-day the justice, equity and humanity of your Highness is the talk of the whole world , ميترسم وقتِ مرافعه زبانم بگيرد I fear, at the time of trial my tongue will stick , نام اسکندريه را برزبان نياوردي he never uttered the name of Alexandria , امثالِ من بنده را چه حدّ و ياراي آنکه بتوصيفِ آن آستانِ پاک زبان کشايد what power and ability may a slave like me possess that he will open his mouth in praise of that holy shrine , مردکهٔ ديوانه تو نام قانون شنيده بر زبان پيچيدهٔ O crazy fellow, having heard of the word 'Law,' thou hast twisted it round thy tongue , از شرح و بيانِ آن زبانها عاجز است the tongues of people are unable to give an adequate description of it , بسا شده است که از غلبهٔ فکر و خيالاتِ اين اوضاعِ ناگوار نزديک شده است که برزبانم حرفِ کفر جاري شود on many occasions, through the prevalence of thoughts about this undesirable state of things, I was on the point of giving utterance to blasphemous language , با زبانِ دل تسبيح و تقديس نمودم I engaged myself in mentally glorifying and praising God , از زبانِ حالِ خانه غيبتِ صاحبِ خانه هويدا مي شد the state of the house bespoke the absence of its master ; بزبانِ حال پرسيدند و من بازبانِ قال جواب دادم they

asked by signs while I answered (them) with the living voice

(۱۲) ناخن هدهد زبان بندی را شاید the nail of the hoopoe was appropriate for tongue tying

ملتفت و چرب زبانی او فریب خوردم I was deceived by his flattery and glibness of tongue

ترسیدم که در حق بزرگان بدگویی و زبان درازی کرده ببلای بدی گرفتار گردد I feared that speaking evil of those in power and also in them he would be entangled in serious danger

این دو حیوان بی زبان اول قدری بیکدیگر نگاه کردند گویا بزبان بی‌زبانی گفتگو کردند these two dumb animal at first stared at each other for sometime as if they held a conversation in the langua of silence

15 Travelling in Persia—I

There are three modes of travelling in Persia You can ride *chāpār* that is, by Government post you can attach your self to a caravan and the vagaries of the muleteer ; or you can escape this bondage by buying your own beasts of burden and equipment, and hiring the guide and servants who shall take you at your own sweet will out of the beaten track of His Majesty's post roads. When speed is of the first consideration you will find it better to ride *chāpār* It is of this, the quickest mode of travelling that I would say something that should be of service to such among you as are adventurous. The first point to deal with is the question of expense. The cost of this mode of travelling varies with the price of barley a horse's daily food in Persia. The charge exacted from me in the spring and summer of 1897 was at the rate of *one kran* per *farsakh* for each horse required. This is the average charge and may be considered moderate. But it does not always happen that the price of grain is the same in all the provinces of Persia at one and the same moment. Reckoning the *farsakh* at four English miles and the pound sterling at fifty *krans* the cost of riding *chāpār* in the month of December 1898 was about ten pence per horse for every four miles You should endeavour to make shift with three horses. To that end you should look to it that your personal effects should fill not more than two kit bags. These would go behind the post boy on his saddle ; your servant would take charge of the provisions and cooking gear and thus you would have a horse left for yourself

There are three modes of &c — در ایران سیاحت درسه طریق است
To ride *chápár* — چاپار رفتن
Government post — پر تۀ دولتي To attach — ملحق کردن .
And to the vagaries of the muleteer thou mayest resign —
به تلونات قاطرچي تسليم نمائي —
Your own (=for yourself) — براي خود
Beast of burden — باربر - بارکش - بار بردار
Equipment — ساز و سامان - سازِ راه
By buying (=having bought) — خریده
Guide — بلد - راهبر Servant — ملازم - نوکر
To hire — کرایه کردن
At your own sweet will — به حسبِ خواهشِ خود - خاطرخواهِ خود
Out of the beaten track — خارج از جادۀ عام
Bondage — گرفتاري - اسیري To escape نجات یافتن
Where speed &c (=if above all speed necessary is) —
اگر بالا تر از همه (علي الخصوص) سرعت (عجلت) الخ —
It is of this, the quickest mode of travelling —
در بابِ این طریق که زود ترینِ طریقهاي - هر است —
To say something — حرفي زدن
That should be of service to such &c —
که هرکه از شما ، مرور و جهانیدو را بکار او بخورد —
Translate 'the first point to deal with is the question of expense' thus the first question (مطلب) in this connexion (درین باب) with regard to (در خصوصِ) expense (اخراجات) is
Cost — خرج - مصرف Travelling — مسافرت .

Daily food— خوراک یومیه یا روزمره

To vary— (با) مختلف شدن Charge— کرایه

In the spring and summer of 1898—

در فصل بهار و تابستان سنه یک هزار و هشت صد و نود و هشت میلادی —

To exact— گرفتن (use 3 pl act. voice)

At the rate of— از قرار Average— تخمین معدل

Moderate— معتدل Provinces— صوبجات

At one and the same moment— در یک وقت و یک آن

The same— یکسان

At— به برابر A mile English— میل انگلیس

Pound sterling لیرا لیره To reckon— حساب کردن

For every four miles— در مسافت هر چهار میل

About— تقریباً To endeavour— جهد نمودن

To make shift with— (با) ساختن

To that end— بدین مطلب بدین صورت

You should look to it— باید احتیاط بدارید

Personal effects— اسباب دنیا

Should fill not more that two kit bags—

در دو خورجین بگنجد و زائد از آن نباشد —

Post-boy— چاپار شاگرد Provision (=food)— خوراک

Cooking gear— اسباب پختن To take charge of— ملتفت شدن

For yourself— از برای خود شما

To be left— باقی ماندن (use future tense)

NOTES

29. The uses of the word یک may be illustrated thus

(i) یک منات هم بعنوانِ انعام بعلي داديم we gave one *minát* as a reward to Ali also , یکدانهٔ مادر است he is his mother's only son , یک واپور دیگر هست there is one steamer more , نقدرِ یک ساعت مشغول صحبت شدیم we conversed for about one hour , من یک قدري با احتیاط حرکت میکنم I move with a little caution , ما همه یک دفع تفنگها خالي کنیم we shall all shoot at the same time , تعجب نمودم که در یک کتابخانه این نسخ متعدده از یک کتاب چه معنی دارد , I wondered what it would mean that in one library there should be so many copies of one and the same book (ii) یکي از خدمتکارانِ مهمانخانه بود it was one of the servants of the hotel , نوکرِ یکي از کشتیها است he is a servant in one of the ships (or steamers) , دیدم یکي را میزنند I found, they were beating some one , از آنها بیکي وعده دادم I gave promise to one among them , در لفظ دو اما در معني یکي هستند in words they are two, but in sense one and the same , از این یکي مي توانی برد که وضع سایر وزارتخانها باید چه طور باشد from this one you can understand what must be the state of the rest of the minister's offices , تنها یکي دو تن از حاضران چنان نمایند که بطرفِ من مایلند only one or two persons from among those present appeared to be inclined towards me , مرگ خواه آهسته آهسته از تاثیرِ حب باشد و خواه بیک ضربِ کارد هردو یکي است death, whether caused slowly by the effect of a pill, or (all at once) by the blow of a knife, is the same (iii) او را خدا حافظ گفته یکسر بمهمانخانه آمدیم bidding him adieu, we came straight to the hotel , در ظرفِ دو سه سال یکبار عوض مي شوند they are changed once in two or three years' time , در ذکرِ نامِ نیکِ آن عالمِ عامل همهٔ اهالي یک زبان بودند all the inhabitants were of one voice in praise of that learned man who acted up to his own

teaching بمحض شنیدن این سخن همگی یکبار بر آشفتند as soon as they heard this they at once turned angry آنها که او زمین زد همه نوچهای کوچکی بودند those whom he threw to the ground were but puny youths ای امان وزیر یکراست مستقیم در اطاق ما می آید O mercy the vizier is coming straight towards our door پسرها با دخترها و مردها در یکجا بازی می کنند boys play in the same place with unmarried girls and married women مردی بود عرض و طولش یکسان he was a person whose breadth and height were the same در ترس از ایشان همه یکدل بودیم with one accord we were afraid of them با کمال آشنائی شرح حال خود را بالتمام بیان کرد with familiarity he gave a detailed account of all his concerns یکبار گفتگوی ما از درشتی بدست و مشت کشید all at once from harsh words our quarrel developed into boxing نسقچی باشی دوست یکرنگ میرزا احمق بود the chief executioner was an intimate friend of Mirza Ahmaq

16 The Stag in the Ox stall

A hunted stag driven out of covert and distracted by fear made for the first farm house he saw and hid himself in an ox stall which happened to be open. As he was trying to conceal himself under the straw "What can you mean," said an ox, "by running into such certain destruction as to trust yourself to the haunts of man?" "Only do you not betray me," said the stag "and I shall be off again on the first opportunity." Evening came on; the herdsman foddered the cattle but observed nothing. The other farm-servants came in and out. The stag was still safe. Presently the bailiff passed through; all seemed right. The stag now feeling himself quite secure began to thank the oxen for their hospitality. "Wait a while," said one of them; "we indeed wish you well, but there is yet another person, one with a hundred eyes; if he should happen to come this way I fear your life will be still in jeopardy." While he was speaking the master having finished his supper came round to see that all was safe for the night for he thought that

his cattle had not of late looked as well as they ought Going up to the rack, "Why so little fodder here ?" says he , "Why is there not more straw ?" And "How long, I wonder, would it take to sweep these cobwebs !" Prying and observing here and there and every where, the stag's antlers, jutting out from the straw, caught his eye, and calling in his servants he instantly made a prize of him.

It is said of a stag that گوزني را گويند كه

By means of the pursuing of the hunters and hunting dogs— بوا سطهٔ تعاقبِ صيّادان و سگانِ شكاري .

Driven out of covert— از جنگل (در شتزار) فراري

Distracted by fear— (شكستگي) سراسيمه از آشفتگي

Farm-house خانهٔ برزگر

To make for رو نهادن رو بجانب

Ox-stall— طويلهٔ گاوان

Which happened to be open— كه درش باز افتاده بود

Behind a heap of straw— در پسِ تودهٔ كاه .

Translate 'what can you mean by running into &c thus , with what (بكدام) audacity (جرأت) and insanity (ديوانگي) thyself (را) to the place of certain destruction (محلِّ هلاكِ بيگمان), that the haunts of man (منزلِ آدم) is, didst thou cause to reach (رسانيدي) and thy sweet life (جانِ شيرينت را) in such a place (در چنين جائي) secure (بي خطر) thou didst think (پنداشتي)

Only you do not betray me— سرِّ مرا آشكار نمائيد و بس

I shall be off again on the first opportunity—

— { در اولين فرصتي كه دست دهد / خود را باز بجاي ديگر برسانم

Evening came on— شب در رسید —

Herdsman— گله بان To fodder— علف چرانیدن

They observed nothing— چیزی ملتفت نشدند

To come in and out— آمدن و رفتن

The stag was still safe— گوزن هنوز بسلامت بود

Presently— بعد از آن زود

Bailiff— بالیز

To pass through— گذشتن (از)

All seemed right— همه چیزها بنظر با ترتیب (درست) میآمد

Feeling himself quite secure— خود را بسی بسلامت گمان کرده

Began to thank the oxen for their hospitality—

زبان بشکر دراز کرد و در مقابل
و ممنونی گاوان اظهار رضا نمود —

Wait a while— حالی صبر کن حالی پیش مرو

Indeed— آری

We wish you well— ما خیر خواه توایم

One with a hundred eyes— که چشم صد تیز دارد

If he should happen to come this way—

اگر گذرش بانجا اتفاق افتد —

Your life will be in jeopardy— جانت در معرض خطر باشد

While he was speaking— در اثنای این گفتگو

The master— صاحب گاوان

Having finished his supper— شام خورده

Came round to see that all was safe for the night—

باطراف نظر کنان برسید تا ببیند
که شب همه چیز بسلامت است —

For he thought that his cattle &c —

چه درین زمانهای نزدیک .. علفهٔ خود گاوان خود
را چنانکه باید و شاید تازه و توانا نیافته —

Rack— آخورۀ - پشتک Fodder— علف So little— چنان قایل

How long, I wonder, would it take &c.—

حیرانم تاکی این تارهای عنکبوت
را می توانم رفت و رد بکنم

Prying and observing here and there and every where—

اینجا آنجا می انجاله در همه
جا در نگران و ... ت و جو کنان —

The stag's antlers caught his eye— چشمش در سرِ شاخ گوزن افتاد

Jutting out from the straw— که از زیرِ کاه بیرون آمده بود

To call— صدا کردن Him— آن بیچاره را

To make a prize of— گرفتار کردن

NOTES

30 The use of the word 'نظر' may be illustrated thus (1) البته شیطان ویرا بنظر انسان طاؤس می نماید Satan indeed would make her appear to the eye of men as beautiful as a pea-hen , زینب از نظرم غایب شد Zainab disappeared from my sight , تا دشمن چشم باز کند از نظر غائب می شوند they would disappear, before the enemy would open his eye , با نظری بی معنی ملتفت آدابِ نسقچیان بودم I observed the salute of the *nasaqchies* with a meaningless stare , چشمانش از شدّتِ نظر بکار بستنِ یک بارِ عینک دوچار through difficulty of sight in working, his eyes (had) a pair of spectacles on , یکدیگر را درمیانِ هزار نفر شخص بیک نظر تشخیص می دهند at a single glance they recognise one another from among a thousand individuals,

چنان بترتیبِ قلیان سرگرم که دنیا در نظرش نبود he was so engrossed in preparing his pipe, that he had no sense of the outside world طراوتِ بهار بنظرها نمودار شد the freshness of the spring became visible (ii) بنظر رستم می آمدند they appeared to be Rustams بلی جوان نظر خورده است the evil eye has struck this young man نزدیکتر رفتم آشنا بنظرم آمد when I approached nearer he appeard to be an acquaintance شهری بنظر آورید با راههای تنگ و خانهای دیوار کوتاه imagine a city with narrow lanes and low houses از افریقه هم بواسطهٔ غلامان و کنیزان سیاهی بنظر داشتم I have a faint idea of Africa also by means of the slaves and slave-girls من ملاحظهٔ شهرِ خوی را نیز در نظر داشتم I had in view to travel to the town of Khoi also در کمال حیرت بدانسوی نظر کردم in perfect surprise I looked in that direction سرگذشتِ آلِ برمک خود در نظر است the account of the Bermcides is apparent in itself خود و نوکرانش مرا بنظرِ بقراطِ ثانی نگراس he and his servants regarded me as a second Hippocrates , (iii) که بسیاری از کوتاه نظران می گویند ۱۲ it is strange that many of the narrow viewed and imprudent ones say این همه در نظرِ اعتبار مردمانِ بلوک بین و مال اندیش مرجعِ هزارگونه عبرت است all these are the sources of thousand fold warning for the narrow sighted and wealth seeking people مردمانِ این شهر نیز از شدتِ جهالت و کوتاهی نظر بجز از خود پرستی و خود آرائی کاری ندارند the people of this town also, owing to gross ignorance and narrow-sightedness, engage themselves in nothing but self-gratification and self adornment.

17. Travelling in Persia.—II

The organization of a camp for a long march takes some trouble, if all is to go right, and we were at work early in the morning to get the whole thing in order. Perhaps it will help to give a clear idea of travelling in Persia, if I explain what the system is. In the first place, to be comfortable it is necessary to have a double set of tents and furniture, so that one set is on the march while the other is being used. In this way you can start in the early morning, and finish the day's march by breakfast time, finding a complete camp when you ride in, and having the rest of the day for whatever you want to do. The cook and some of the other servants go on at night, or early in the morning and get breakfast ready. The tents in which you have slept are struck when you start, and they make a double march, so as to be ready for you on the following day. A light-loaded set of mules meanwhile start off, and try to keep with you, so as to bring up dressing cases and other necessaries which one wants every day and cannot have in duplicate. A caravan thus becomes divided into three parts, respectively, *píshkhána*, *vasatkhána* and *paskhána*. On the morning of the twenty-seventh of September the mules were all ready loaded up and the division into *khánas* began. We took up our post at a narrow place between the irrigation cuts, where all had to pass, and with infinite trouble—the mules breaking away, and the muleteers shouting and abusing one another, and running in all directions—we at last succeeded in telling off about forty mules carrying the *píshkhána*, that were to march on two stages. These were collected in the road, their muleteers with them, and the whole party handed over to one of the orderlies, Rizá Khán, in whose charge they were to be hence-forward. I remember this man coming up in an excited way and demanding justice. It appeared that one of the muleteers had loaded his mule, a fine powerful beast, with nothing but a tin hat box. They were always trying these tricks.

If all is to go right اگر باید همه درست بشود .

Organization— تدارکِ اسباب و لوازمه

March— کوچ Trouble صدمت

To be at work— دست بکار شدن - بکار افتادن

To get in order— ترتیب دادن - آراسته کردن

If I explain what the system is—

. اگر بیان کنم ترتیبش چه طور است —

It will help to give a clear idea &c.—

خیال واضح درین باب حاصل شدن
امری خاطر نشان بکند —

In the first place— اولا

To be comfortabe— برای راحت و آرام   Set— دسته

Double— مضاعف   Tent— چادر

Furniture— اسباب منزل   Is being used— بکار است

Day's— روزانه   By— قریب به

Breakfast time— وقت نهار   ساعة ۲

Finding = that you may find.   Camp— اطراقه

Complete— وافي   To ride in— سوار شدن

Having the rest of the day for &c.—

بقیهٔ روز هرچه ساعتی به فراغت بکشی —

Cook— آشپز   To get ready— مهیّا کردن

To strike *(a tent)*— بار کردن کندن

To make a double march— دو مرحله راه طی کردن

The following day— روز دیگر   Meanwhile— درین اثنا

A lightly-loaded set of mules— یک دستهٔ قاطر که بارش کم باشد

Try to keep with you— حتّی المقدور برابر شما راه میرود

Dressing-case— قوطی زینت   In duplicate— دوگانه

To bring up— حاضر ساختن   To be divided— تقسیم شدن

To call *(name)*— نام نهادن نامیدن   A narrow place— تنگنای

Irrigation cuts— قنوات آبیاری

Where all had to pass— که از انجا گذر همه لازم بود

To break away— جلو ؟ گریختن

In all directions— همه جا هرسو

To shout— نعرہ زدن - بانگ زدن To abuse—فحش دادن
With infinite trouble— بهزار مشکلها
To tell off— حساب کردن - شمردن
That were to march on two stages— که باید دو منزل راه طي بکنند
Party— جماعت To hand over— گذاشتن .
Orderly اردل - علام . In whose charge— که زیرِ نگهبانیِ ش
To remember— (از) یاد داشتن
Coming up = that he came up
In an excited way— باضطرابِ تمام To load— بار کردن
A fine powerful beast— حیواني قوي هیکل و زورآور
Hat-box— قوطیِ کلاه - قابِ کلاه Tin (*made of tin*)— از حلبي
With nothing but (= and nothing else)— دیگر هیچ
To try tricks— حیله باري کردن - طفره زدن

NOTES

31 The uses of the word 'درست' may be illustrated thus (i) گوسفندي درست بریان کردند an entire sheep was roasted , مژدگانيِ درستي بچاپار بده give a handsome reward to the courier ما ایرانیان چه جانورِ نادرستیم what smart fellows we Persians are ? حرفِ سرکار درست است what your Honour says is true آدم نا درستي است he is a bad man . (ii) داس از آهن درست میکنند a sickle is made with iron , بندهاي قبا که پاره شده در خانه بده تا درست کنند the bandages of the overcoat having become torn, send it to the house for mending , از شیر ماست و پنیر و کره و روغن و سرشیر درست مي شود from milk are prepared sour curds, cheese, butter, *ghee*, and cream , دیل زیرِ ادرا بارها درست کرده ام

I have many times clipped the whiskers under it تاویل این مضمون بمعنائی درست خواهد بود it should be interpreted literally برای من درست میکند she concocts such a calumny against me (iii) این شکایت را درست خوانده می شد it could be read correctly , درست باید تعیین کرد this complaint must be thoroughly investigated درست حالیت شد چه گفتم hast thou correctly understood what I have said ? اما فکر درستی بکنید but reflect well چند وصیت بتو دارم درست گوش کن I have a few parting advices to give you do listen with attention سوادم بایستی منحصر بدرست خواندن حمد و سوره و نماز باشد my education must have been limited to the correct reading of the opening and other chapters of the Quran and saying my prayers (iv) وبا و طاعون از نادرستی مردمان است plague and pestilence come from the wickedness of bad men تا امور دولت و ملت بطور درستی رو بترقی گذارد then the affairs of the state and the nation will be set towards improvement in a right way شاید بسبب راستی و درستی که در مضامین و مطالب آن است موجب خلاف خرابی من شود perhaps owing to the truthfulness and correctness of the statements and sentiments contained therein, it might lead to my destruction از شنیدن لفظ چوب نادرستی بخاطرش آمد from hearing the word 'wood an evil design entered his mind حالا عقل درستی سرم نیست now I have not got my wits all right in the head

32 Examples of the uses of the word ' بار ' are (1) برای گرفتن بار و ... به هر طرفی سر می زند for taking cargo and passenger it runs about in every direction (۲) ۲ پولی که بارش همه گوسفند بود آنها را بیرون آورد the captain brought out the cargo which consisted

entirely of sheep , مردم را بسته بارها را گشوده بتاراج پرداختند binding up the men and unfastening the loads they engaged themselves in plundering , در زیرِ بارِ گران آهسته آهسته تا در زیرِ غرفه آمدم under a heavy load, proceeding slowly, I came under the upper chamber , بنده را زیرِ بارِ منتِ بی‌پایان نهاد he placed me under extreme obligation , با این بارِ شامت بجای خود برگشتن نمی توانم with this load of misfortune, I could not return to my place , در پشت بارِ سال دوتا دارد his back is bent low with the load of years (ii) واپور از یکطرف بار داده از طرف دیگر هم بارمی گرفت the steamer unloading by one side, loaded cargo by another side , این سربازان هردسته ده دوازده لولهٔ تفنگ را بیک الاغی بار کرده در نهایت بی نظامی می آمد each band of ten or twelve of these soldiers, having loaded the barrels of muskets on a donkey, proceeded in extreme irregularity , بر استری دیگر جفتی یخدان بار کردیم I loaded a couple of portmanteaus on another mule , مثلِ من آدمی در زیرِ دستِ ترکمان بار آمده با او برابری می تواند a man brought up like me under service of the Turkoman could vie with him , گوئی کوهِ دماوند را بر پشتم بار کرده اند as if the mount Damáwand has been loaded upon my back (iii) خر حیوانِ فقیرِ بارکشی است the ass is a poor beast of burden , برای طهران بارگیری پوست بخاری می خواست he wished to convey a loading of the lambs' skins of Bokhara to Tehran بر استری بارکش سوار نمودند they made me mount a load-carrying mule , از اخراجاتِ شاه گریزان بارکشِ غولِ بیابان شوم fleeing from the taxes of the king, I would turn out quite an out-law.

18 Teheran

A little more than a century ago Teheran was described by European travellers as a small village in the neighbourhood of tho ancient city of Rei, which was the capital of Persia under the rule of the Arabian caliphs. The ruins of this place are still to be seen some six miles from Teheran, but most of its inhabitants moved to the newer city when it became the favourite dwelling place of the Kajar princes. The Shahs of this dynasty have spent large sums in enlarging and embellishing the city and while Teheran can scarcely be said to rival the natural beauties of Shiraz or the architectural splendors of of Ispahan, it is now considered the metroplis of Persia. In Persian eyes Teheran is a European city The wide streets and tree-lined avenues of the newer quarter of the town date from the reign of Shah Nasiruddin, the grand father of the present Shah who returned from a visit to Europe fired with the ambition of transforming his capital into an Oriental Paris. But the Persian in general is a race of fanatical conservatives the strange madness that drives his rulers to leave the blessed shores of Iran to wander in infidel lands beyond the seas seems to him wholly foreign and distasteful. And, while the result of Nasiruddin's fondness for the things and ways of Europe are to be seen in Teheran on every hand the large majority of the citizens cling obstinately to the customs of their fore fathers so that the capital of Persia stands to-day a wonderful city of contrasts, where the old and the new stand side by side in bewildering confusion. On account of the high elevation sudden and violent changes of temperature occur; nevertheless Teheran is a healthy spot and inspite of the primitive method of sanitation still in vogue the death rate among its population remains comparatively low

A little more than a century ago—مدتی زیاده از صد سال گذشته که

European travellers—اهل فرنگی

To describe—تعریف کردن (use 3 pl. of past cont. act. voice with طهران as object)

As a small village = that a small village is.

Neighbour hood—نواح

Under the rule of the Arabian caliphs—

—در زیر حکومت خلفای عرب

Capital— دار السلطنه - پایتخت

The ruins of this place— ویرانه (خرابه) هایش

Still— هنوز Some six miles— در مسافتِ شش میل .

Are to be seen— موجود است - دیده می شود

Translate 'most of its inhabitants moved &c' **thus:**

when in that new city (شهرِ جدید) for the Kajar kings (را) staying-place (سکونت) desirable (مرغوب) became most of the inhabitants of Rei (بیشترینِ سکنهٔ ري) to that place moved (نقلِ مکان کردند)

Dynasty— سلسله - خانواده

In enlarging and embellishing the city—

برای افزایش و آرایشِ این شهر—

Large sums— مبالغِ کثیره To spend— مصرف نمودن - خرج کردن

Translate 'while Teheran can scarcely be said &c' **thus**

although (اگرچه) Teheran neither to the beautiful sights of Shiraz (نه به منظرهای قشنگِ شیراز) nor to the splendid edifices of Ispahan (و نه به عمارتهای بارونقِ اصفهان) the mode of evenness (طورِ مساوات) has, now the metropolis (امّ القری) of Persia the same (همین) is

In Persian eyes— بچشم ایرانیان

A European city— همرنگِ شهرهای فرنگستان

The wide streets— کوچه های فراخ

Tree-lined avenues— خیابانهای دراز با درختهای قطار شده .

Of the newer quarter of the town—

که در محلاتِ نوی این شهر دیده می شود —

Date from the reign of Shah Nasiruddin &c. —

از عهدِ سلطنتِ ناصرالدین شاه ملوك جم بزرگوار شاه زمانی است —

Translate 'who returned from a visit to Europe fired with &c. **thus** who after the journey to Europe (بعد از سفرِ اوروپا) with the ambition of transforming his own capital (با عزم اینکه تغییر دادنِ پایتختِ خود را) into an Oriental Paris (به پاریسِ مشرقی) fired with zeal (آتش بجانی) had returned (مراجعت نموده بود)

The Persian in general— عموم ایرانیان   A race— گروهی

Fanatical conservatives— متعصّب و دشمنِ انقلاب

The strange madness— سودائی غریبی

That drives his rulers to leave the blessed shores &c.—

که شاهانِ ایشانرا راغب به ترکِ خاکِ پاکِ
ایران و به جانبِ کفرستان می نماید —

To him (= them)— بنظر ایشان   Wholly— کلیه

Foreign— اجنبی   Distasteful— ناگوار   While— با آنکه

The result of Nasiruddin's fondness for &c.—

نتایجِ میل و رغبتِ ناصرالدین شاه بر هرچه از اشیاء و طرزِ اوروپا باشد —

In Teheran on every hand— در هر گوشه و کوچهٔ طهران

Are to be seen— نمایان است

The large majority of the citizens— اکثری از اهالی آن شهر

To the customs of their fore-fathers—

به رسم و عاداتِ نیاکانِ خود ها —

Obstinately— باصرار و تعصّب   To cling— پا بر جای

So that the capital of Persia stands to-day &c.—

تا امروز پایتختِ ایران شهرِ غریبی است ملتفقِ مدنی —

The old and the new stand side by side in bewildering confusion

— { قدیم و جدید با یکدیگر درآمیخته و تار مار
افتاده مایهٔ تعجب و حیرت است }

High elevation— بسیاری ارتفاع زمین

Sudden and violent changes— انقلابِ ناگهانی و تغیراتِ شدیدی

Of (=in) temparature در آب و هوا

Neverthless— با این همه   Healthy spot— جای صحت افزا

Inspite of the primitive method of sanitation &c.

— { اگرچه برای نگاه داشتنِ صحت هنوز
طریقهٔ ابتدائی را بکار برده می شود }

Death rate— تعداد موت   Among its population— در اهالیٔ آن

Comparatively— نسبتاً   Low— کم

NOTES

33 Some of the uses of the word 'نقل' may be illustrated thus (i) نقلهایم را گوش می کردند they listened to my stories, هیچ سرمایهٔ نقل را تهی نمی ساختم I did not exhaust the stock of my stories, اکثر اوقات وعدهٔ نقلِ درنگاه را بفردا می انداختم often I managed to finish by giving a promise of narrating next day the principal spot in the story بعد تفصیلش را بشما نقل می نمایم afterwards I will narrate the details to you, از زنان شان چیز های عجیب نقل می کنند strange stories are related about their women, حکایتی تازه ساخته برای زیر چاقی کلاه خود نقل می کرد he was narrating a newly-constructed story before his cap (as audience) for the sake of facility and practice (ii) قایقِ بزرگی را برای حمل و نقل آب

انداخته اند a big boat has been launched into the water for carrying and transporting (things) این جور متاع را از اینطرف نقل می دهند such merchandises are transported from this side (of the river to that), این کشتی مسافرین را بر آنسوی رود خانه که سرحد روس است نقل می دهد this boat bear the passengers to that side of the river forming the Russian frontier حملیات هم عبارت از گندم و گوسفند است the transports consist of wheat and sheep این کشتیها را برای تسهیل نقلیات باب انداخته است he has launched these boats on the river for facilitating transports اسباب نقلیه از این رودخانه منحصر بیک کشتی است the means of transport across this river consists of one boat only (III) چه نقلی دارد what difficulty is there? وقتی در اندرون شاهی خیلی نقل داشتم I once enjoyed much favour in the royal harem فورا فهمیدم که نقل کجا است immediately I understood where its reference was این مهمان معظم شما عجب مردیست خیلی نقل دارد this respected guest of yours is a wonderful man, and is difficult to deal with اینهم بسبب کدورتی است که بر او ناگهانی روی داده است نقلی نیست this is owing to a sudden depression of mind that happened to him and is nothing serious

---

19 The Tortoise who could not keep Silence

There was a pool in South Behar and some geese had for a long time lived there They had a friend in the pool who was a tortoise. It chanced one evening that the tortoise over heard some fishermen talking by the water "We will stop here to-night they said and in the morning we will throw in our nets and catch all the fish and tortoises We are sure to make a good haul with our new nets." Extremely alarmed at this the tortoise repaired to his friends, the geese, and reported the conversation. "Now tell me what am I to do?"

the tortoise concluded. "This is a very serious business," said the geese. "It will require much thought"—"I know that," said the tortoise, "but don't think too long, or it will be too late. Tell me, quick, what I had better to do"—"I think, the only thing to do," said one of the geese, "is to get out of the pool as quickly as possible" "Now, what is the good of talking like that?" said the tortoise "You know how fast I walk. Even if I start off at once, I shan't be out of sight by morning They will see me in the open and catch me at once" "There is some truth in that," said the geese "Why not hide in the mud?"—"That might do," said the tortoise, "but I shouldn't feel safe. They would be sure to rout me out" "Then I don't know what to advise," said one of the geese, "I shall be sorry, if you are caught and killed But what must be, must be, for that which is ordained cannot be effaced" "A pretty friend you are!" said the tortoise angrily 'Is that all the help you ean give a friend in danger?" Then he sat down for a moment to think, and after a pause, said in a more cheerful voice, "I have it! I have it! you shall carry me out of danger" "How are we going to do that?" asked the geese "If you climb on our backs you are sure to fall off again" "I will tell you," answered the tortoise 'I have very strong jaws Two of you shall take hold of a stick at each end, while I will hold on to the middle with my jaws What do you think of that?" "It is feasible," observed the geese, "but you must excuse my mentioning it, you are rather fond of talking And if you should forget yourself and begin to talk, there will be end of every thing" "Stuff and nonsense!" he cried, "Am I a fool to open my mouth? Not I! Come, now convey me" Thereupon the geese took up the stick, the tortorise held fast with his mouth, and away they flew The country people, observing this strange sight, ran after "Ho! ho!" cried one, "look at the flying tortorise!" "When he falls, we'll cook and eat him here," said another "No, let us take him home for dinner!" cried a third "We can light a fire by the pool, and eat him," said the first. At these unfeeling words the tortoise was beside himself with rage "Eat me—eat ashes!" he exclaimed, opening his mouth, and down he fell directly and was caught by the countrymen

South— [illegible] Pool—آبگير Goose بط

For a long time— از قديم الايّام

To live— سكونت پذير بودن Tortoise— سنگ پشت

One evening— وقتي سرِ شام Fisherman—ماهي گير

To overhear— استماع نمودن   To stop— ماندن

In the morning— فردا صبح   Net— تور دام

To throw in— انداختن (use ماضي مطلق)

To make a good haul— شکار خوبي بدست آوردن

Extremely alarmed— بغايت هراسان شده

To repair to— به کسي رجوع نمودن

The conversation— گفتگوي ماهيگيران را

To report— نقل کردن   What am I to do?— چه بايد بکنم

This is a very serious business— اين کار خيلي ثقل دارد

It will require much thought— در آن تفکر بسيار لازم است

Too long— زياده

Or it will be too late— و گرنه دست از کار مي گذرد

Quick— زود

The only thing to do is to get out &c.—

چيزي که بايد بکني هرچه زود تر از
اين آبگير جان بدر بردن است و بس —

What is the use of talking like that—

چنين حرفهاي با در هوا زدن چه سودي دارد —

You know how fast I walk— تندرفتارم از شما پوشيده نيست

To start off— براه افتادن

I shan't be out of sight by morning—

تا صبح از نظر بيرون نمي توانم رفت —

Open— دهنه   There is some truth in that— سخن راست است

In the mud— در زير گل   That might do— بکارم خورده باشد

To feel safe— خود را مطمئن انگاشتن

To rout out— بيرون کشيدن

What to advise— چه مشورت بدهم

I shall be sorry— خیلي تأسف مي خورم

But what must be, must be &c.—

لاکن هرچه شدني است باید بشود که تماشاي نشدني نباید کرد —

Said angrily در آشفت که

A pretty friend you are !— چه دوست خوبي و ناصح عزیزي هستي

Is that all the help you can &c —

مگر همه اعانتهاي تو که میتواني در حالت گرفتاري با دوست خود بکني منحصر بهمین است —

For a moment— اندکي

To (=in order that he may) think تا تفکر بکند

After a pause— بعد از قدري توقف

In a more cheerful voice— با صداي خوشتر I have it— یافتم

You shall carry me out of danger —

تو باید مرا از این ورطه بسلامت ببرید —

To climb— سوار شدن To fall off برمین افتادن

Jaw— الوارہ - چانه Very strong— خیلي سخت

Two of you— دوتن از شما To take hold of— گرفتن (بر)

Stick— چوب . To the middle— در وسط آن

To hold on— در آویختن Feasible— ممکن الحصول

You must excuse my mentioning it &c —

باید مرا از ذکر کردن آن معذور داري که تو بیشتر شائق حرف زدن هستي —

If you should forget yourself and begin &c

اگر خود را فراموش کرده بگفتار بیآیي کار تو تمام خواهد شد —

Stuff and nonsense !— چنین هرزه و چرند مگو

Am I a fool to open my mouth !—

اما من اینقدر احمقم که دهانم را بگشایم —

Not I !— حاشا نیم To convey— برداشتن

To hold fast— محکم گرفتن To fly— پریدن

The country people— روستائیان

Observing this strange sight— این منظر غریب را دیده

To run after— دنبال کسی دویدن Ho ! ho !— ای ای

Flying tortoise— سنگ پشت پرواز Dinner— شام

To light— افروختن

At these unfeeling words— از شنیدن این سخنهای بیمهری

Was beside himself with rage— بقهر آمده از خود برفته

Eat me—eat ashes !— مرا بخورید یعنی خاکستر (زهرمار) بخورید

Down he fell directly &c.—

دهن کشادن همان و از بالا بزیر آمدن همان
و بدست روستائیان گرفتار شدن همان —

NOTES.

34. Further e amples to illustrate the uses of the word سر are (1) قبیلهٔ از ترکمانان یاغی سر راه مشهد را بریده بودند a tribe of rebellions Turcomans had infested the road to Meshed, در همان زمان روزها بر سر کاروانی ریخته[28] they did lately attack a caravan, زنان تا روز[22] دف و ترانهای گوناگون بسر بردند the women passed their time in beating the tambourine and singing various songs; بخدا که هرگز دست از سر تو بر نمی دارم by God, I would never let thee be ransomed away اگر سر ننهم فرو نیایم سر بسر میمون می رود if I do not submit, I may lose my head for the sake of the monkey;

اسپش را بکشت زار مردم سر داد he let loose his horse into the sown fields of the people, از سر نو جوان مي شوم I shall turn young again, هرکس که در سرِ کاري است باندازهٔ خود چاپلوس دارد everyman having an office in the court has a body of flatterers according to his position (ii) امورِ مخصوصِ خانم را سر و صورت مي دهد she manages the private affairs of my mistress, سرِ پا نشسته دهان که "بیا" she was on her legs, calling out to me 'come', اینطور سرش را بهم آریم I will finish the matter in this manner, در پشتِ دیوار چنان پنهانش کردم که بجز کسیکه سرش در جریان باشد نداند I hided it at the back of the wall in such a way that no one except whoever is in the know could find (it), ناگاه آوازِ "سرِ راه" بلند شد suddenly the cry of 'look out' was heard نماز را از سرِ صدق و خلوص کردم I said my prayers with all fervency, چون از پیش خبردار بودند سر زده داخل شدم as they had been apprised of me before-hand, I entered without giving any warning, در کمال ادب سري فرود آورده راهٔ افتادم having made my obeisance with extreme respect, I took to my road, بعد از هفتهٔ دوبارهٔ هواي تفلیس بسرم افتاد after a week the desire to see Tiflis again arose in my mind تو بودي که تمامي عمرِ خود را در سرِ زین بسر بردي it was thou who didst spend thy whole life on the saddle (iii) جامهاي سرشار از آبِ حوضِ کوثرِ غیرتش بتو پیمایند he would make you drink off cups brimful with the heavenly water of his zeal, در غیرت و تعصّبِ ملي سرآمدِ ایرانیان است with respect to national zeal and prejudice he is the foremost of the Persians, ما بقي سرگردان و محتاج قوت لایموت, the rest are confounded and distressed for want of a mere subsistence, سراپایش تفسیرِ اشعارِ شعراي ایران her whole frame was an elucidation of the

poems of the poets of Persia سر رشته بدست بدخواهان میدهی you
will, thus, give opportunity to your enemies سر کسی شدی
(now) thou hast become a some body خیر یک دانگ از او نه بینم اگر
نگفتم سرمایه اش است may I never see the profit of a single
gilder, if I have not asked you the stock price only این باد سراسر
تابستان در هرات میوزد this wind lasts the whole of summer
in Herat پوشیدن خرقهٔ درویشی کار هر بی سروپا نیست to wear the gar-
ments of a darvish is not the work of every good for nothing
fellow مرا بمحرم درویشان برد he brought me to the meeting
place of the darvishes بلقب ملک الشعرائی سرافراز شدم I was
dignified with the title of the chief royal poet از عمرش
سرحد انصرامش گذشته بود he has passed the meridian of his life
قاطرها با سوار آنها در عقب همه the mules with their riders were
behind all.

20 Books.

Books are the masters who instruct us without rod and ferules without hard words and anger without clothes or money If you approach them, they are not asleep; if investigating you interrogate them, they conceal nothing; if you mistake them, they never grumble If you are ignorant they cannot laugh at you. The library therefore, of wisdom is more precious than all riches, and nothing that can be wished for is worthy to be compared with it. Whosoever therefore, acknowledges himself to be a zealous follower of truth of happiness, of wisdom, or of science, must of necessity make himself a lover of books A book is a living voice It is a spirit walking on the face of the earth It continues to be the living thought of a person separated from us by space and time. Men pass away; monuments crumble into dust What remains and survives is human thought. What is Plato? He has long been resolved into dust but his thoughts and actions still survive. Books are a guide in youth and an enter

tainment for age They support us under solitude, and keep us from being a burthen to ourselves They help us to forget the crossness of men and things, compose our cares and our passions, and lay our disappointments asleep The importance of books has been appreciated in many quarters. Among the hardy Norse men runes were supposed to be endowed with miraculous power There is an Arabic proverb, that 'a wise man's day is worth a fool's life', and another, that 'the ink of science is more precious than the blood of the martyr' Confucius is said to have been a man, who 'in his eager pursuit of knowledge forgot his food, who in the joy of his attainments forgot his sorrows, and did not even perceive that old age was coming on'

Books (= book)— كتاب

Master— معلم (use in the singular)

Without rods and ferules— بيدون چوب و تركه زدن

Without hard words and anger—

بدون استعمال سخنهاي درشت و خشمناک —

Without clothes and money— بلا گرفتن پوشش و پول

To approach— پيش كسي رفتن

They are not asleep— همیشه بيدارش بيابي

Investigating— در راه تحقيق   To interrogate— استفسار نمودن

They (= it) conceal nothing— هيچ يک از تو پنهان ندارد

To mistake— بد فهميدن   To grumble— شكايت داشتن (از)

Ignorant (= foolish)— تهي دماغ   To laugh— خنديدن

Library— كتابخانه

Of wisdom   پُر از كلمات دانايان و اندرزهاي خردمندان

Precious— گرانمايه

Nothing that can be wished for &c —

هيچ يک مطلوب انساني هرچه گرانبها تر
که مي باشد بگرد آن نمي رسد —

Translate whosoever therefore acknowledges himself &c.[1] **thus** therefore (بنابرین) whoever (هركه) whether (خواه) in the acquisition of (علم آن) truth (حق) or happiness (سعادت) or (خواه) in the acquirement of (تحصيل) wisdom (دانش) or science (علم) himself (خود) wholly (همه تن) eager (سرگرم) he finds (یابد) of necessity (لزوم or لابد or ناچار) he must (باید) the book (را) he may love (دوست بدارد)

Voice—صدا Living—زنده

Combine it is a spirit &c. with the previous sentence (with گويا in the beginning)

Spirit (=angel)—فرشته

On the face of the earth—بروي زمين

Walking—گردش كنان

It continues to be the living thought &c —

—{ كتاب ..... زنده و پاينده از انديشه / بانيان ..... و ..... ما دون الفانيه

To pass away—فنا شدن Man—انسان

Monument—يادگار

To crumble into dust—ريزه ريزه شده خاك گشتن

What remains and survives—هر ... كه بجا ماند و پايدار باشد

Human thought—فكر انساني Plato—افلاطون

To resolve into dust—خاك شدن (use past tense).

His thoughts and his actions—افكار و افعال او

Survive (=durable is)—پايدار است

The book is a guide in youth—كتاب راهبر ..... است در خردسالي

And an entertainment for age— و مایهٔ فرحت و صفا در عهدِ پیری

And a sincere friend in solitude— و رفیقِ صادق در تنهائی

And a remover of distress and for the passing away of time a good surety— و دافعِ دلتنگی و گذرانِ وقت را دستاویزِ خوبی

To help— کمک دادن

Crossness of men and things— کج خلقیِ اهلِ دنیا و لگد کوبِ زمانه

Care— اندوه

Passions— هوسها

To compose— فرونشانیدن

Disappointment— ناکامی و مایوسی

To lay asleep— خوابانیدن

Importance— قدر و اهمیت

In many quarters— در نواحیِ مختلفه

To appreciate— مغتنم داشتن (use 3 pl pr per tense act voice)

Among the hardy Norsemen runes &c —

ملت شجاعِ اهلِ نروج (اسکندناویا) اشعارِ گوژی (منظوماتِ رونی) را معجزه می پنداشتند —

There is an Arabic proverb— عرب گویند

A wise man's day— یک روز از ایّامِ حیاتِ خردمندی

A fool's life— عمرِ ابلهی را

Is worth— می ارزد

Ink— مرکب

Martyr— شهید

Confucius is said to have been a man &c —

کنگ فوتزی را می گویند که مردی بود علم جو که در تحصیلِ علم غذا را فراموش کردی —

And in the joy of his attainment forget his sorrows &c —

و آتشِ غمهای خود را بآبِ شادمانیِ حصول و کمالِ خود فرو نشاندی —

And did not even perceive that old age is coming on—

و نیز ملتفت نشدی که پیری در می آید —

36 Some examples of the word 'تن' are (i) بار دہ نفر را یک تن بدوش نمی تواند برد one person cannot bear on his shoulder the load of ten persons, فی الفور سر و تنی آراستم at once I adorned my head and body, تن و جان من قربانِ خدامِ درگاه my body and soul be the sacrifice for the servants of thy threshold (ii) بچوب خوردن تن در نخواهم داد I will not submit myself to be flogged, تن بدین کارها در نمی دهد she will not yield herself to such affairs, ناچار بدندان قضا و تن برضا دادم helplessly I resigned myself to fate (iii) زندگیِ درویشان تنبلی و تن آسانی است the life of darvishes consists in idleness and ease, باغبانش کاهل و تن آسانی باشد its gardener seems to be lazy and fond of ease

37 Examples illustrating the uses of the word 'آتش' are (i) نخست آتشِ عشقم فرو نشست (i) at first the fire of my love subsided, آتشِ دل را بدین فرو نشانم I will quench the fire of my heart with this, برای اطفای آتشِ غضبِ شاهزاده for cooling down the fire of the Prince's wrath, دودِ آتشِ دلِ من اندکی فرونشست کرد the smoke of the fire of my heart some-what subsided (ii) شاه آتش گرفته است the king has flown into a rage, مالِ پادشاه را آتش زده اند they have cousumed the king's property, جگرم آتش گرفت my liver has caught fire

SECTION III

Idioms & Proverbs

Aback—The boy was taken aback (کودک دست و پا را گم کرد)

Abandon—He abandoned this business (دست از این کار را کشید)

The man abandoned himself to his fate (آن مرد تن بقضا داد)

He abandoned himself to pleasure (مستغرق لذات شد)

He is an abandoned wretch (ملحدی بی‌شرم و ـــ)

Abide—You must abide by the rules (باید التزام قواعد بنمائی)

He abided by his word (بر قول خود ثابت بود) Abide your time (فرصت نگاهدار) They abided by their promise (وعدهٔ خود را وفا کردند) Whatever may happen, we will abide by thee (هرچه باداباد ما با تو هستیم)

About—Come to-morrow about this time (فردا قریب بهمین وقت بیا)

He was about to weep (در صدد گریه کردن شد). You are about to retire (می‌خواهی بر گردی)

Account—If it is lost, you must account for it (اگر گم شود تو باید بپرسش جوابده باشی) They did not hold him of any account (از او حسابی نه بردند) It is a thing of no account (ناچیز است) Can you account for it (می‌توانی سببش را بیان کنی) ? He gave her an account of his adventures (سرگذشتهای خود را برای او نقل کرد) I will not go to him on any account (مطلقاً پیش وی نمی‌روم)

Acquainted—You must immediately become acquainted with him (باید بی‌درنگ یک دقیقه با او طرح آشنائی اندازی) He

became acquainted with the state of things (از چگونگي حال مطلع شد) Art thou well-acquainted with the roads (ایا از راهها بخوبي خبردار هستي) ?

Acknowledge—We acknowledge your superiority (پیش ... ایراله داریم) They acknowledged him as their rightful lord (تسلیم نمودند که آقاي حقیقي خود شان است) He acknowledged all the benefits received from my father (مرحمتهاي پدرم را بجا آورد)

Act—Is this young man acting a part (مگر این جوان دو رويي میکند) ? How many times have your bowels acted (چند بار اطلاق شده است) ? He was caught in the very act of stealing (در عینِ حالتِ دزدیدن گرفتارش کردند) They acted up to their profession (قولِ خود را وفا نمودند)

Affair—Your affair is settled (امرِ ترا صورتِ انجام داده اند) This is my affair (پاي من ...) Affairs are prospering (کار و بار رونق دارد)

After—After all he was a mere mortal (باوجودِ آن بیش از انساني نبود) The people came one after another (مردمان پشتِ سرِ یکدیگر آمدند) You are after my heart (ازروي دلم توئي) He takes after his father (شباهت بپدر دارد) After a storm comes a calm (در پي ... دارد - در پسِ هر گریه آخر خنده ...) The new city was named after him (شهرِ نو را بنامِ وي ... نمودند)

Air She gives herself airs (دماغش بالا ...) Such false notions are in the air all over Persia (در ایران هرجا که میروي بس چنین خیالاتِ باطله است) The air of this place agrees

with me (آب و هوای اینجا بمن سازگاری می کند). Building castles in the air (کوتاه دست بلند خیال)

All—It is all silk (ابریشم خالص است) He is all in all in his department (در ادارهٔ خود مردی همه کاره است) You are all in all to me (لطف و کرم هستی) He loves them with all his heart (با دل و جان از ایشان محبت دارد) Whether he comes or not, it is all one to me (خواه بیاید خواه نیاید بمن هیچ فرقی ندارد) It is all along of you that I am successful (کامرانیم بواسطهٔ تست) All is well that ends well (خیر آنست که نتیجه اش خیر است) All that glitters is not gold (مرغابی سی دیگر و آماس حجری دیگر)

Alone—He came all alone (تک و تنها بیامد) I let it alone (دست از وی برداشتم) Let me alone (از این امر دست کشیده کردم)

Amiss—He has done nothing amiss (هیچ غلط نکرده است) Do not take it amiss (در خاطر شما بد نگذرد)

Apple—As an only son he is the apple of my eye (فرزند یگانهٔ من مردمک دیدهٔ من است) He will upset the apple-cart (کاری که من شروع است)

Arm—They walked up to the house together arm in arm (دست بدست باهم گام زنان تا بخانه رفتند) She keeps me at arm's length (با من مواسیم زیاد ناگوار دارد) He received me with open arms (با روی گشاده مرا پذیرفت) In a moment the troops were under arms (سربازان فوراً صف جنگ بیاراستند)

Armour—There is no armour against fate (با تقدیر از سپر تدبیر رد نمی گردد).

Ass—Do not make an ass of thyself (خود را بجای خر مکن)

Avoid—He avoided by subterfuge (خود را بکوچهٔ علی چپ زد)
I avoid the society of women (من از طایفهٔ نسوان متوحشم)

Awkward—He is very awkward (شتر بر نردبان است)

Back—They backed him up in every thing (در هر کاری که بر آن دست گذاشت معاونتش نمودند) You won't back out (ایا زبانت را برگردانی) ? But here he is, on his back (اما اینک آنرا ببین پشت بر زمین افتاده) He has given us the back (مارا ول کرده است) He turned his back upon you (بتو پشت کرد)

Bad—One is as bad as the other (نصرهٔ کم از تعداد بیست - سگ زرد برادرِ شغال است) She has gone to the bad (بد در آمده است) There was much bad blood between them (مابینِ ایشان خیلی کینه ورزی و معاصبت بود)

Be—Be slow but sure (دیر گیر و سخت گیر) You are not up to this (مرغی که انجیر می خورد نوکش کج است) This is not for him (او مرغِ این انجیر نیست) What is that to you (بتوچه) ?

Bear—He sells the skin before the bear is killed (آهوی نا گرفته پوستش می فروشد) Every one present bore me out (همه حاضرین قولم را تقویت کردند) Bear this in mind (بخاطرت بیار)

Beat—I beat up his quarters (سرزده داخلِ خانه اش شدم) That beats the Dutch (جای حیرت است) He was beaten to death (کوتک زده بهلاکتش رسانیدند) He soon beat a retreat (بزودی واپس خزید) The enemy was beaten off (دشمن را برگردانیدند) I am beating my brains out to find out the cause (حیرانم که سببش چیست) This is literally beating the air (حرف بحرف حدّ و جهد عبث است)

Bed—He has been confined to his bed by illness (ناخوش

بستري است) As you make your bed so you must lie on it (هرچه ميكاري ميدروي) This life of ours is not a bed of roses [اين زندگي ما گل ه بهار (بي خار) نيست]

Bell—Who will bell the cat (كه زنگ بگردن گربه خواهد بست) ? The Italians have carried away the bell from all other nations (اهل ايطالي از سائر هم ملّتان گوي بربلند)

Belong—It formerly belonged to him (بيشتر از آن او بود) He does not belong to the army (داخل قشون نيست). This key belongs to that box (اين كليد مال آن صندوق است) He belongs to Persia (از ايرانست)

Best—I did my best to please him (هرچه ممكن بود كردم كه رضا ش بيايد) He thought it best to go away (صلاح خود دانست كه برود). You had the best of the argument yesterday (در مباحثة ديروز در غالب آمده بودي) He will make the best of the matter (باهوش براي ه غالب مي مرود) One must make the best of it one can (خير خود را بايد جائي كه خود بايد گرفت) The nurse made the best of her way to the adjoining room (دايه اتلكي و خيرايي داخل اطاق پهلوي گرديد). I put the best face I could upon it (تلخش را شيرين خوردم)

Better—He is getting better (روز بروز مزاجش بهتر مي شود) It is so much the better for you (بلكه بهتر شما ست) I know him better (حال او را من بهتر مي دانم) I got the better of my disease (مرض خودم را بزبر آوردم) He were better dead (مرگش بهتر بودي) !

Between—The poor man is between two fires (بيچاره از هر دو جانب در خطر عظم است) Between ourselves, he is a great fool

(حرفِ محرمانه نگویم خرِ بانگ دید است)

Bird—A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush (شش نقد به از صد نسیه - گنجشکِ پخته به از نقرهٔ خام) Birds of a feather flock together (دیوانه چو دیوانه ببیند خوشش آید) To kill two birds with one stone (چه خوش بود که برآید بیک کرشمه دو کار) Far birds have fine feathers (آوازِ دهل شنیدن از دور خوش است) As if you are a bird of passage (گویا که پرندِ جهان گرد هستی) It is a bird's-eye-view of his whole life (چشم اندازِ همه زندگیش اینست)

Bit—I shall have to tell her a bit of my mind (لازم است اورا او مطلقاً سرزنش خوبی بکنم) He is not a bit sorry (او مطلقاً افسوس نمیخورد)

Bitter—Bitter is patience, but its fruit is sweet (صبر تلخ است ولیکن برِ شیرین دارد) Truth is bitter (سخنِ راست تلخ می باشد)

Black—I am looked upon as a black sheep (مرا ننگِ خاندان می نگرند) The pot calling the kettle black (خود نصیحت دیگران را نصیحت - دیگ بدیگ میگوید که تهِ تو سیاه است) Here is his name in black and white (اینک اسم او است روی قرطاس رقم زده)

Blind—He is blind (دیدهٔ کاوور دارد) It is a mere blind (محض تزویر است) The blind leading the blind (خفته را خفته کی کند بیدار) How blind you are to your own interests (در خیرِ خودت چه بی بصیرت هستی)

Blood—His blood was up (بغیرت آمد) He is a prince of the blood (شهریاری در خونش است) Blood is thicker than water (نژاد قویتر است از آشنائي) They did it in cold blood (دیده و دانسته آنرا کردند) I made his blood creep (از ترس و بیم دلش درهم و برهم شد)

Bold—I make bold to warn you (جسارت میکنم که ترا ملتفت بسازم)
He came in as bold as brass (با چشم سفید داخل شد)

Bone—This town was the bone of contention between these two monarchs (این شهر مابین این دو شهریار استخوان منازع فیه بود)
I have got a bone to pick with you for this indifference (بسبب این غفلت از تو گله مي دارم) He makes no bones of his dislike of the natives (نفرتیکه نسبت به بومیان دارد آشکارا بروز مي دهد) It is nearly all bone (همه اش استخوان است)
What is bred in the bone will come out in the flesh (آنچه در استخوان پرورده است در گوشت سر خواهد زد)

Book—This does not suit my book (این کار توافقي چشم من نباشد) I was very much in his good books (خیلي منظور نظرش بودم) He is in your black books (از وي متنفر هستي)
The man was brought to book for it (بنابرین آنمرد را مقصر قلم دادند)

Bottom—He was a kind-hearted man at bottom (در اصل مردي بود نیک دل) He is at the bottom of this disturbance [او منشاي (محرک) این فساد است] I am pleased with him from the bottom of my heart (از صمیم قلبم از وي خرسند هستم) He got to the bottom of the matter (اصل حرف را دریافت و بر کار التفات)

Bound—He went beyond his bounds (از حد بیرون رفت تعدي نمود) Their joy knew no bounds (بهجت بر بهجت افزود)

Break—The party then broke up (پس حاضرین از هم پاشیدند)
She completely broke down at this news (از شنیدن این خبر دلش بس فرو شکست) Such unusual labour caused him to break down (از چالش مشقت فوق العادت تقصاي ... در ساخت

(پدید آمد) He has broken off with me (ار ددة رر گردان شدة است) I will not break the ice (من هرگز رشتهٔ سخن را نمي كنم) The robbers broke in upon the caravan (درداں در سرِ كارواں ريختند) The plague broke out all over the town (وبا در تمامي شهر سر رد)

Breath—I ran 'till I was out of breath (ايدقدر دويدم كه نفسم تنگ شد) He muttered something under the breath (او ريرِ لب چيزي بلدديد) This news completely took away her breath (ايں خبرِ وحشت آثر در ديرتش نيانداحت)

Bring—Bring me a revolver (براي بنده تپانچهٔ بياورد) These adverse circumstances brought into play all his genius (ايں همه حالاتِ ناموافق هوش و ركاوتش را كليةً بحركت آورد) I will bring him round (علاجش بدستِ من است) The merchant brought up the orphan child (تاجر بچهٔ يتيم را پرورش نمود) Bring the cattle together (گاو گل را جمع كن) They are willing to bring about this alliance (مي خواهدد ايں معاهدة را برپا نمايدد) Every sentence of his brought down the house (بر هر فقرهٔ كه برنان آورد صداي آفرين ار هر سو بلند شد)

Bull—They took the bull by the horns (با شاخِ گاو در افتادند) This is a cock and bull story (حكايتِ بي معني است)

Burn—He burned the candle at both ends (قوّتِ خودش را دوگانه تلف مي ساخت) A burned child dreads the fire (مار گزيدة ار ريسمان مي ترسد)

Bush—Good wine needs no bush (مئ پاك را حاجتِ تاك نيست) One beats the bush, and another catches the game (كوة را فرهاد كند و لعل را پرويز يافت)

Business—Business is business (حساب حساب است کاکا برادر) Go about your business (برو پی کار خودت) I see he means business (ميبينم مقصد واقعي دارد) He is a man of business (او شخصی است کارکن و کاردان) What business have I (چه حق دارم)? This is no business of his (باو دخل ندارد) His last illness has done the business for him (مرض آخرینش کار اورا تمام کرد)

By—By this he might have been dead (در این اثنا فوت شده باشد) I will be there by all means (بهر صورت باشد در آنجا می آیم) Let by-gones be by-gones (از دیگر کار خود گذشته را صلوات آنچه را احتیاط گذشت آنچه گذشت) His name has become a by word among the people for uprightness of conduct (بعلت پاک نفسی و راستی اسمش ورد زبانها گشته است)

Call—You shall call upon him without loss of time (هرچه زودتر اورا ببینید) Call a carriage for me (یک کالسکه برایم حاضر بکن) It is a long time since you called (مدتیست که جای شما خالی بود) I called him to account (مسئول کردم) The blind man called down a blessing upon her (نابینا دعای خیرش کرد) This letter does not call for an answer (این کاغذ حاجت جواب ندارد). His article called forth a host of rejoinders (مقاله اش جوابها بکثرت در آورد) He called his elder brother names (نسبت به برادر بزرگ خودش زبان درازی کرد) This sight called up the memory of that patriotic prince (این منظر یاد آن شاهزاده وطن پرست را بر خواطر ما تازه کرد)

Candle—The game is not worth the candle (حاصل بتحصیل نمی ارزد). He cannot hold a candle to me (نمی تواند بگرد من برسد)

Care—I do not care to do it (در بندش نیستم) Nobody cares him (کلاهش پشم ندارد) I do not care a pin for him (بچشم من بقدر پر کاه نمی آید) He is very careless as to dress (در باب لباس خودش هیچ فکری ندارد)

Carry—Money generally carries the day (زر بر سر فولاد نهی نرم شود) The change of air carried him off (تبدیل هوا [illegible] موت او گردید) The management of the firm was carried on by him (ادارهٔ آن شرکت را او کرد) He did not live to carry out the reform (در تکمیل اصلاح حیاتش وفا نکرد) They carried their point triumphantly (در حصول مقصد خویش فایز المرام شدند) I was carried away by my own feelings (جوش دلم بیخودم گردانید) To carry coals to Newcastle (زیره بکرمان بردن و فلفل بهندوستان آوردن) He will never carry this out (او هرگز پی اینکار نمی رود)

Cat—He very nearly let the cat out of the bag [نزدیک بود که سر پوش از روی کار بردارد (یا خشت از بام افتد)] The cat is out of the bag (مشتش وا شده است) When the cat is away, the mice are at play (جشن موش در نبودن گربه است) Yesterday it rained cats and dogs (دیروز باران شدید شد) She has made a cat's paw of you (او ترا گول زده است - ترا خرش کرد) One must see which way the cat jumps (مقصودش را باید داد) A cat always dreams of mice (شتر در خواب بیند پنبه دانه)

Catch—A drowning man will catch at a straw (غرق شده را پشتی کاه دست است) He was afraid of catching an infection (می ترسید ناخوشی بگیرد) I must catch the train (لابدم که بگاری راه آهن برسم) He has caught a Tartar (با حریف در جوال رفته)

Chance—Take your chance when you can (اين كن و اين
مسلي) Chances are against him (هرتب بر خلاف است)
He has not the ghost of a chance (هيچك اميد براي او نيست)

Character—Write it in characters of gold (آنرا باب زر بنويس)
It is not quite in character (معمي ناسبا است) He is
a man without force of character (او مرد سل است)

Chicken—He is no chicken (بچه شير خوار نيست) He counted
his chickens before they were hatched (جوجه بوست نشده
كبو تعاس را زد)

Chip—Chips of one block (اين خاله همه آفتابست)

Clean—The offender made a clean breast of every thing he
had done (مقصر بر كردا خود هرده تمام بر اقرار نمود) The slave
has shown a clean pair of heels to his master (غلام از آقاي
خود فرار كرد) I am clean out (لغت ماهر رادم هيچ پول برسلم
كلاغلاد) A new broom sweeps clean (غلام نو تيز دو)

Clear—Every body is cleaning out (هركس كنار مي كشد) He
cleared an immense profit (منافع بي اندازه بدست آورد) It
is as clear as noon-day sun (اظهر من الشمس است) The
coast is clear (هيچ جاي خطر نيست)

Cloud—Now-a-days he is in the clouds [امروز ها برج در هوا
مي سازد (ملتبل خيال مي باشد)] His name was under a
cloud (بد نام و مورد ملامت بود) Every cloud has a silver
lining (سعادتي كه هرچه سخت تر باشد هر وسي برده اش ومعلي ندارد)
It is cloudy (هوا گرفته است)

Cock—That cock won't fight (سرمي ندارد) A cock is always
bold on its own dunghill (هر سگي كه بر در خود در كوچه خود شير

عزاں است) It is a sad house where the hen crows louder than the cock (حه میري نیاید ار آں حاندان که بانگِ حروس آید ار ماکیاں)

Come—How has it come about (چگونه روي داده است) ? How came she by that light (آن چراغرا بچه طور بد ... آورد) ? We came across a bear (با حرسي بر حوردیم) She soon came round (زود بحال آمد) Coming events cast their shadows beforehand (سالي که نکوست ار بهارش پیدا) When I came to myself, I saw nobody there (چوں بهوش آمدم هیچ کس را در آنجا ندیدم) His carriage came to grief in that lonely spot (در آنجاي دور ار آبادي کالسکه اش بهم حورد) Your letter came to hand yesterday morning (مرقومهٔ آنجناب دیرور صبح ریارت شد) This event never came to light (این واقعه هرگز مکشوف نگردید) More unlikely things have come to pass (واقعاتِ غیر محتمل تر بوقوع آمده است) After a good many apologies, he came to the point (بعد ار عذر حواهيِ بسیار مدّعاي حویش را اطهار نمود) They at last came to terms (آحرش باهم ساختند)

Command—You may command my purse (هرچه پول دارم بکارِ شما حاضر است) You have only to command, I obey (فرمان ار شما و اطاعت ار بنده) He was placed in command of the whole army (همه عساکر را ریرِ فرمانش کردند)

Commit—He committed to memory the whole of the Shahnama (تمام شاهنامه را بحفظ در آورد) . He commits unseemly actions (... مي زند) Do not oblige me to commit such a vile act (مرا بدیں مدار که چنین فعلِ قبیح ار من صادر شود)

Common—It is a thing in common between him and me

(وجود مسلوك في الحق او زمن انلست) This event is quite out of the common (اين واقعه سراسر غير معمول است) They all made common cause against him (همگي اتفاق برخلاف وسعه بعکی کردند)

Cook—If you should happen to be wrong my goose is cooked (اگر اتفاقا شما سهو كني ملكي مرده ام بيانكار) Too many cooks spoil the broth (خاله كه دو كدبانو باشد خاك تا زانو باشد)

Count—To count chickens before they are hatched (جوجه در شکم ناهس مطقر آب ندیده موزه ! پا کنده) You may count upon me for pecuniary help (براي امداد مالي بمن نظر داريد)

Countenance—He was out of countenance (لبيس آبخشاه بود لتكسي و رانتاده بود) He must be kept in countenance or he will fail (با د او را ياري بكنند ورنه بر نمي آيد) I kept my countenance the whole time (سراسر از خنده خود داري كردم) Never did I countenance his conduct (رفتارش را هرگز لپسنديدم) You put him out of countenance by your question (از ... او را شرمسارش كرد)

Credit—He gives credit where credit is due (تصديق بجا مي كند) The remainder is on credit (باقي نسيه است) He has lost credit (از درجهٔ اعتبار ساقط شد) You give him more credit than he claims (خود از آنش كرمتر است)

Cry—There is no use crying over spilt milk (آب رفته بجوي باز نيايد هرچه از دست رفت) Much cry but little wool (بوقلمون برده عرض ولگرد) She is a girl much cried up (دختري بسيار ستوده است) He was cried down wherever he went (هر جا كه مي رفت استخفافش كردند)

Cup His cup is full (طرفش لبریز شده). He is always in his cups (همواره در پیمودن ساغر است) It filled up the cup of his misery (جام مصیبت وي را لبریز ساخت) .

Cure—Prevention is better than cure (علاج واقعه پیش از وقوع باید کرد) What cannot be cured must be endured (از تقدیرات قضائي نمي توان گریخت) His wounds were cured very soon (خیلي زود زخمهایش درمان پذیرفت)

Cut—My uncle cut me off with a shilling (عموم مرا بي میراث ساخت) I cut him short at the very beginning of his harangue (در عین آغاز زهر حرافي از قطع سخنش نمودم) He would cut his best friend, if misfortune befell him (اگر دوست یکرنگش در حالت گرفتاري بیفتد اورا بیز محل خرد نمي گذارد) Cut your coat according to your cloth (جامه به اندازهٔ تن باید دوخت - پا را باندازهٔ گلیم دراز کن) Diamond cuts diamond (سنگ - سنگ را میشکند) I was awfully cut up (دلم یکبارگي شکست)

Daggers—He looked daggers at me (از چشم سفیدي و تندي بمن تیر تیز نگاه کرد) I am at daggers drawn with them (بایشان مخاصمت شدید مي دارم)

Dark—The darkest hour is before the dawn (امید ها در ناامیدي ست) He did not keep me in the dark for long (تادیر مرا از این خبر بي اطلاع نگذاشت) I will keep dark about it (اینرا هرگز بروز نمي دهم) It got dark (هوا تاریک شد) He looks only at the dark side of things (امور را صرف از جاي بدي ملاحظه مي کند)

Day What sort of a day is it (هوا چه طور است) ? It is a fine day (هوا خوب است) Every dog has his day (آخر گذر پوست

(بدباطلی است) His days are numbered (از ایام حیاتش بس) A penny laid for a rainy day (روز سفید از برای (معدومی باقیست) The cry of "free education" carried the day (روز سیاه) (صدای " تعلیم بی اجرت " بر همه غالب آمد)

Dead—This rule is a dead letter (این قانون باطل است) Yesterday we found him dead drunk (دیروز اورا سیاه مست یافتیم) Dead men tell no tales (سر بریده صدا در نمی آید !) Is she dead or not? Yes, as a nail in the door (مُرد یا نه ؟ آری مثل سنگ). It was done in the dead of night (وسط شب کشتکه این کار را کردند).

Death—Death is the brother of sleep (خواب برادر مرگ است) Every parting is an image of death (هر مفارقتی را سیاهی به مرگ است) He was done to death by the robbers (دزدان خلاص رسانیدند) We were weary to death with waiting (چشم برا ه انتظار خیلی خسته و کوفته بودیم) You have been at death's door I hear (شنیدم که نزدیک بود ناخوشی ترا تا بدر مرگ رساند).

Devil—He is a perfect little devil (شیطانی تمامیست) Go to the devil (جهنم برو) ! The Devil is not so black as he is painted (شیطان بآن زشتی که تصویرش میکنند نیست) Needs must when the devil drives (لزوم ملزوم رکاب ابلیس است) I am between the Devil and the deep sea (میانهٔ شیطان و جهنم گرفتارم) He even gave the devil his due (هنر هر بی هنر را) Speak of the Devil and he will appear (نام سگ (لیر بیفرا) He is well known as the Devil himself (گدری چوب در دست بگیر (از کفر ابلیس مشهور تر است)

Die—The die is cast (ما کشتی در آب انداختیم) He is dying by inches (آهسته آهسته راهی عدم است).

Difference—A difference of opinion occurred (اختلاف آرا شد) No one could tell the difference (هیچ فرق نتوان داد) There is a wide difference between this and that (بین تفاوت راه از کجاست تا به کجا) What difference does it make (چه توفیر میکند) ? There is no difference (تفاوت ندارد)

Do—Who is to do up your room every day (اطاقت را هر روز که باید پاک و نظیف بردارد) In Rome do as the Romans do (جاي گل گل باش و جاي خار خار) Do as you would be done by (آنچه بر خود نه پسندي در دیگران مپسند) This will never do (این هرگز بکار کسي نمي خورد) I could not do away with him (سرش را زیر آب نتوانستم کرد) Why did you do this (چرا باین کار اقدام کردي) ? What has it to do with me (بمن چه دخل دارد) ? He cannot do anything without me (دستش زیر سنگ من است) This will do for him (کارش را تباه خواهد کرد) Your brother is well-to-do (برادرت خوشگذران و فارغ البال است)

Dog A grateful dog is better than an ungrateful man (سگ حق شناس به از آدم ناسپاس) He is a dog in the manger (نه خود خورد نه بکس دهد - گنده کند بسگ دهد) Every dog has its day (هر کسي را پنج روز نوبت اوست) Give a dog a bad name and it accounts for everything (اسم سگ را بد نگذاري بد شود) It is going to the dogs (دراه بربادي افتاده است)

Draw—The time of departure drew on rapidly (وقت رحلت به سرعت نزدیک شد) He drew rein at the door (اسب خود را مقابل در را ایستاند) I should like to draw him out (مي خواهم در سر میلش بیارم که بي ناکاه خیال خودش را بروز بدهد) It was a drawn battle (جنگ مساوي بود) Do you mean to draw

back from your promise (آیا می خواهی از وعدهٔ خود متکلس می شوی)?

Drop—I shall drop in any day I can (روزیکه بتوانم می آیم) He dropped up very soon (بعد بر شما مشرک می شوم) Let the matter drop (پا پای مثر) It is merely a drop in the bucket of these misfortunes (در مقابل مصائب قطره است) He never took a drop too much (در خوردن شراب هرگز از حدِّ اعتدال تجاوز نمی کند)

Due—The mail is due (پست باید رسیده باشد) The money is due (پول ادا شدنی است). To what is it due (از چه رو است)? It is all due to this (همه از سبب این است) Pay him the honour due to him (احترامی که لایق اوست بجا آورید) He gave to every one his due (بهر کس حق او را داد)

Ear—Give ear unto my words (بسخنم گوش کن) He set us by the ears (ما را بجنگ انداخت) We must not always believe our ears (همه شنیده ها را نباید باور کرد) Walls have ears (دیوار هم گوش دارد) He has the ear of the king (شاه سخن او را می شنود)

Early—Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise (سحرخیزی باعث تندرستی) We started early in the morning (اول صبح براه افتادیم) He lost his mother early in life (در اوائل عمر مادرش را وداع کرد) These are the early fruits of the season (اینها نوبر فصل است)

Eat—He has eaten too much (لقمه کرده است) He will not eat his word (ز حرفش بر نمی گردد) Why are you eating out your own heart (خون جگر خود را چرا می خوری)?

Elbow—Success depends on elbow grease (ميرروي ناتيجۀ عرق ريعتش است) There is no elbow room (جاي ارنج نيست) Nobody will believe in a man out at elbows (هيچ كس مردي رو شكسته را باور نمي دارد)

End—What will be the end thereof (نتيجه اش چه خواهد بود) ? The end crowns the work (خاتمۀ اين كار نعوبي حواهد گدشت) My patience is at an end (صدرم تمام شد) I served him for years on end (پي در پي سالها حدمتش كردم) He struggled hard to make both ends meet (جد و جهد تمام مي كرد كه مداحل رسيدن به احراجاتش بقدر كفايت باشد)

Err—To err is human to forgive Divine (رحردان حطا و ار بزرگان عطا)

Evil—Evil got, evil spent (مالِ حرام بود بجاي حرام رفت) He thinks evil of me (ار نسبت به بد گمان است)

Eye—Keep an eye on him (نگاهش كن - مواظبش كن) What the eye does not see the heart does not grieve for (آنچه چشم نمي بيند دل غم آنرا نمي حورد) She has a good eye to the main chance (پولِ حودش را نعوبي نگاه مي دارد)

Face—There was not a long face to be seen (هيچ روي ناكدرت در آنجا ديده نمي شد) The old man set his face against this proposal (پيره مرد نحلافِ اين مسأله دهارِ حتّي تعرّض نمود) He made faces at me (روي حودش را برمن پيچانيد) I accused him face to face (روبرويش اورا متهم قلم دادم) He put on a good face on his loss (نقصانِ حود را آسان داشت) It faces the sea (رو بدريا بود)

Fair—Fair words cost nothing (اگر نانِ گندمي نيست آخر زبانِ مردمي)

از چه شد) He is fair game (سزاوار استهزا و تن داد است) You are on the fair way to make a fortune (لابد در روی اقبالت است) The horse bids fair to win the race (احتمالِ کلّی است که این اسب در برد) Fair and softly goes far in a day (شیرین زبانی و میانه روی موجبِ [illegible] است)

Fall He rapidly fell away (باسرعت رو بتباهی رو می‌آورد) You have fallen away from me (از من دست بردار شدۀ) His jokes fell flat on the assembly (شوخی‌های او بر حاضرین هیچ اثری نداشت) His estate then fell into the family of Mirzas (ملکش بعد از آن بدستِ میرزایان افتاد) Have you ever fallen in with any Yankee (آیا گاهی با یکی دنیائی هم خوردۀ)? He fell off in his thirst for knowledge (اشتیاقِ علمش کم شد). The leaves fell off (برگِ درختها بخاک افتاد) He fell at his feet (رو بپایش افتاد) He has fallen off in his studies (ترقّی معکوس کرده است در درس) He has fallen in love (بعشق مبتلا شد) He fell out with me for nothing (بی هیچ وجه با من بنزاع در آمد) All things fell out right (همه بکام من شد) This scheme would fall through (این تدبیر را ترک میکنند) The soldiers fell upon the carriage (سربازان بر سرِ کالسکه ریختند) She has fallen little short of a mother in affection towards me (بمن مهرِ مادری می دارد) The Jumna falls into the Ganges at Allahabad (رودِ جمنا در الهآباد برودِ گنگ یکی می شود)

Far—He is far from handsome (حاشا و کلا خوشگل نیست) How far is it from here to there (از اینجا تا آنجا چه قدر مسافت است)? I had no idea he was so far gone in love (هیچ گمانم نبود که کارش چنان کار آمده است) It is a far cry from Paris to

Kairwan (از پاریس تا قیروان خیلي مسافت دارد) He is by far the best friend I have (بدرجهٔ اولی بهترین دوستانم او ست)

Fast—He plays fast and loose (هم چست و هم سست است) My watch is fast (ساعتم تند است) This colour is fast (این رنگ ثابت است)

Favour—I ask a favour of you (طلب مرحمتی مي نمایم) They escaped by favour of darkness (تاریکيِ شب را غنیمت شمرده فرار کردند) He tried to curry favour with the minister (باتملق و چربزباني بکوشید که وزیر را مایلِ خود بکند) The new servant found favour with the master (چاکرِ نو مطبعِ آقاي خودش واقع شد) He is in favour of me (بطرفِ من است) I enjoyed great favour with the king (موردِ التفاتِ خاصِ شاه بودم)

Feather—You have feathered your nest (گلیم خود را از آب کشیدهٔ) This is a feather in my cap (باعثِ فخرِ من است) The prince appeared in full feathers (شاهزاده بالباسِ مکمّل آراسته و با تجمّلات شاهي بیرا‌سته نمودار شد) It was no use flying a white feather (خود را کم دل و کم زهرهٔ قلم دادن بکارِ من نمي خورد)

Field—You cannot gain the prize as long as your brother is in the field (مادامیکه برادرت در میدان باشد تو نمي تواني انعام را ببري) He held the field against all opposition (با همه مخالفت بر جاي خود برقرار ماند)

Fine—It is a fine sum (مالِ معقول است) The weather was very fine (هوا بسیار صاف بود) The pen is too fine (قلم پُر نازک است - قلم پر سمي است) This is a fine child (این طفل مثلِ پارهٔ ماه است) In fine the servant was sent for a carriage (آخر الامر ملازم را بفرستادند که کالسکهٔ بیارد)

Finger—He has the whole list of names at his finger s end (فهرست اسماء را بر زبان دارد) He loves to put his finger in every pie (خوش مي داشت كه پاي درميان هر كاري بگذارد) He has now arrived at his finger s end (الان خالي كاسه و لوله گرديده است)

Fish—No body cries stinking fish (كس نگويد كه دوغ من ترش است) *One fish spoils the whole tank* (چو از قومي يكي بي دانشي كرد نه كه را منزلت ماند نه مه را) All is fish that comes to his net (هرچه آيد پيش نگذارد درويش)

Fire—He fired up at this (پس از آن آتش گرفت) The fire is out (آتش خاموش شده است) He wont set the Thames on fire (دريا را نتواند آتش زد) There is no smoke without fire (تا نباشد چيزكي مردم نگويند چيزها) Out of the frying pan to the fire (از باران در ناودان گريخت از خاك برخاستن و بخاكستر نشستن)

Flesh—Flesh pots do not count with him (بچربي سيري را بخاطر نمي گرداند) They used to mortify the flesh (ضبط نفس مي كردند) It is more than flesh and blood can bear (از تحمل نفس گذشته است) Our flesh creeps with fear (از خوف و هراس موي ما راست ميشود)

Flint—He skins a flint (مگس را در هوا رگ مي زند) I will fix his flint for him (تازيانه اش مي زنم) He s skin flint (ناي گير است آب از دستش نمي چكد)

Follow—He follows the profession of a doctor (كار طبابت مي كند) The night follows the day (شب در پي روز مي آيد) I will follow out whatever you enjoin (هرچه بفرمائيد از آن مطلق رفتار مي كنم) They followed the bier to the grave (تا لب گور

(تشییع جنازه کردند) All these misfortunes followed in succession (این همه حوادث متواتر رو داد) It follows that he is cruel (نتیجه این است که ظالم است) He has no following (پیرو ندارد - کسی گوش بحرفش نمی کند) Luck follows luck (تا هرکه آید از چپ و راست آید)

Food—He became food for fishes (در ته آب غرق شد) We all shall be food for warms (ما همه باید قوت کرم بشویم) What is one man's food is another man's poison (آنچه یکیرا نوش است دیگریرا نیش است)

Fool—He is a fool (پالانش کج است) Fools step in where angels fear to tread (هرکه کشتیگر نیست کاش بیدار است) You are a fool for your pains (زحمت بیهوده می کشی) He used to live in a fool's paradise (خود را دهقانه خود در عالم بالا می پنداشت) She made an utter fool of you (سراسر گولت زد) He fools away his time (وقت خودش را ضائع می کند)

Foot—Now he has one foot in the grave (حالا پایش لب گور آمده) I have fallen on my feet (دولت غیر مترقبه قرین من شد)

Force—This law has no force (این قانون عمل ندارد) The new regulations will come into force from next year (از سال آینده قواعد نو ترویج خواهد یافت) They took the fort by force (آن قلعه را بزور گرفتند) We forced him to do it (در این مجبورش کردیم)

Fore-lock—Take time by the fore-lock (فرصت وقت را از دست مده)

Fortune—Fortune is against me (بخت من برگشته می شود) Fortune is fickle (دنیا همیشه یک قرار نمی ماند) Fortune was favourable to me (طالع من سازگار آمد)

Friend—Friends are plenty when the purse is full (هرکجا چسه (بود شیرین مردم و مرغ و مور گرد آیند) Prosperity makes friend and adversity tries them (در آب در زندان بکار آیند که به سفره) A friend in need is a friend indeed (دوست آن باشد که گیرد دست دوست در پریشان حالی و درماندگی) It is well to have friends (کسه همساره بابها دارد)

Full—The cup was full to the brim with milk (جام از شیر لبریز بود) He made payment in full of all his debts (قرض هاي خود را بالتمام ادا نمود) The new market is in full swing (بازار نو سر گرم و پر هنگامه است) He came along full swin (با آزادگي تام پیش بیامد)

Gain—He is gaining ground day by day (روز بروز رو به ترقي است) No gains without pains (تا برود رنج گنج میسر نمي شود نیس بي نفس حاصل نمي شود) What shall we gain thereby (ازین چه حاصل) ? I have gained him over to my opinion (اورا متّفق الراي ساخته ام). You have gained our good wishes (مطبوع خواطر ماں واقع شدة)

Game—I am not game for this (من اهل این کار نیستم) He followed the same game (با توي کلس کرد) She made a game of me (کلاهم را برداشت)

Get—The dust gets into my eyes (گرد بروي چشم داخل مي شود) How will you get along with this affair (تو کجا و این کار کجا) ? He could not get what he wished (دلدلس کار نکرد) They get on very well together (حالشان خیلي گرم است) He has got his punishment (بسزاش رسید) How is the patient been getting along (لحوال مریض چه طور است) ? Where can

I get at a doctor (حکیمی را کجا دستیاب کنم) ? Every man should try to get on in life (هر شخص باید بکوشد احوالِ خودش را ترقّی بدهد) I cannot get on with her (با من مناسبت ندارد) He get up this affair (او این امر را ترتیب داد) She never thoroughly got over that illness (از آن علالت هرگز شفای کلّی نیافت) He will get off (او خلاص خواهد شد) I can get on without this (احتیاج این ندارم)

Ghost He gave up the ghost this morning (امروز صبح جان بحق تسلیم نمود)

Gift—Do not look a gift horse in the mouth (مفت را چه گفت) She has the gift of music (طبیعةً مناسبت بموسیقی دارد)

Give—Give me justice (بدادم برس) He gave himself out for a merchant (خود را تاجر قلم داد) He had to give up his house to me (مجبور شد که خانهٔ خودش را بمن بسپارد) I have given up keeping late at night (شب بیداری را ترک کردم) He gave himself up for lost (خود را مرده انگاشت). His family has given him up (قوم و خویش از وی دست بردار شدند) The chair gave way under him (صندلی زیرِ بارش شکست)

Glass—He has taken a glass too much (جرعهٔ زیاد کشیده است) They that live in glass houses should not throw stones (خانهٔ پر شیشه را سنگی بس است)

Glut—There was a glut in the market (بازار از هر چیز زیاد پر بود)

Go—Day and night things go on in this way (روز و شب بدین آئین است و بدین کاسه) You may go (مرخصی) Let him go (ول کن) It will go hard with me (برای من خیلی دشوار خواهد گذشت) His words went home to my heart (سخنهایش

(در دل من جاي گرفته) It is easier to go with the stream than against it (ظللو به سیل آسانتراست ازحرکت بخلاف آن) It goes without saying (میلی ز چه بیان) He would not go out of his way to help me (براي امدادم برخود هیچ تکلف روا نمي دارد) I am ready to go all lengths in this good cause (در اس کارخیر هیچ ر آیرا دریغ ندارم) Otherwise I should have gone to the bad (وراله کار من تباه خواهد شد) They won t go back on their word (هرکز قول خود را فسخ نمي کنند) The wedding went off with great splendour (عروسي با خیلي تجمل و زوین انجام پذیرفت) It is gone out of late (درین زمانهاي نزدیک از رواج افتاده است)

Good—You can do as seems good to you (مختارید) It is very good on your part (این کرم است در آب است از شما) It is too good to last (بر نه - از اینکه بپاید) You must take the good with the bad (خوب و بد بالاي هم است) This is rather too much of a good thing (حلوا بسیار خوردن دلسیري مي آرد) She is as good as gold (همه تن نیک و باوفا است مثل زر خالص) He is going away for good (جهت همه وقت رخصت مي شود) He is as good as his word (قولش نقش بر سنگ است)

Goose—Every one thinks his own geese swans (هرکس را فرزند خویش بجمال نماید و عقل خود بکمال) To kill the poet is to kill the goose with the golden egg (شاعر کشتن در معني مرغ زرین تخم کشتن است)

Grace—Having said grace he paused for an instant (برکت خواسته مدتي توقف کرد) I have got into his good graces

(صورتِ التفات و عنایتِ مخصوصهٔ او گردیدم) Let it be done with a good grace (از روي صفا آنرا بکنند)

Grain—He does not like to work against the grain (خوشش نمي آيد که کاري بخلافِ طبیعتِ خود بکند) I took these stories with a grain of salt (این افسانه‌ها را با قید و شرط پذیرفتم)

Grass—The steed dies while the grass is growing (برگ صبر بهار مي آيد - تا تریاق از عراق برسد مارگزیده مي میرد) He allowed no grass to grow under his feet (في الفور دست بکار شد)

Greek—When Greek meets Greek then comes the tug of war (آهن به آهن کوفتن چه رنگ پیدا مي شود) It was Greek to me (ازش هیچ نفهمیدم)

Ground The soldiers have broken ground (سربازان بهم خود بطور نمایان تقدم قدم نهادند) I did visibly gain ground (نمودم) The enemy has lost ground (دشمن پس پا شدند) He held his ground amongst them (میانِ ایشان قدما خود را در قرار داشت) I stood my ground (دندان بقدما نگذاشتم)

Guard—We were always on our guard (همیشه تحرز نمودیم) I put him on guard against you (اورا متنبه ساختم که از تو دور کشي نماید) They were caught off their guard (دفعتاً پاچه شدند)

Habit—Habit is second nature (عادت طبیعت ثانویه است) He habited himself in costly dress (لباسِ قیمتي دربر کرد) I am in the habit of rising early in the morning (عادتم اینست که همیشه صبح زود برمي خیزم)

Hair—That's her head to a hair (صورت تمثیلِ سرش است) Don't let us be splitting hairs (درجزئیاتِ مختص در تیز نمائیم) The

propeller and the tank are both of a half (ه ده فيرس و مسكر
هر دو سگ رود برابر سدال اند)

Half—The first blow is half the battle (ليه لسلى برابرل) He
gave your signature to the bond when you were half asleep
or ? (در حالم نيم مستي ا سيل برسلي در حرب لود اس سلاطر ر
اصلي لريد ر ??) Well begun is half done (باصحاب رسانيد
صحت بسلي)

Hand—Hand and glove (كهاي دو ماس) He is a known
hand (لرگي بارلي سده ص) I will take the matter into my
own hand (حاله لر سر خودم را مكم) He has the work in hand
(اس ار دسلس ست) He kept the farm in hand for three
years (مدت سه سال اس جاره دسلس ماند) I heard this
at first hand (من بلا واسطه آنها رئلم) The books were sold
out of hand (كتابها دست بدست فروش رفت) Let the contract
be finished out of hand (فرودم السله را صريح تمام دهند) He
made money hand over hand (سريع و بسهولت پول پيدا
كرد) He is a great hand at small talk (بسيار كارها بيهوده گوي
است) We must carry things now with a much higher
hand (الان بايد بطور تسلط بيشتر كارها مي روم) He has
gained the upper hand in Persia (در ايران تسلط يافت) The
general mass of the inhabitants live from hand to mouth
(عموما سكنه آنها آنچه اكتساب مي كنند همه آنها را بمصرف
مي دهند) One must fight for his own hand (براي فايده خود
بايد جد و جهد بكند) He shouted to the neighbours to lend
him a hand (همسايگان را صدا مي كرد تا بد ؟ كمكش برسند) They
worked hand in hand with us (با ما دست يكي كرده مشغول كار

نبودند) No, sir, I can make no hand of it (خیر آقا نمی توانم) I give you my hand upon that (من برایش قول واثق می دهم) . He has some unsaleable articles on hand (نزدش چندی از اجناس باقیست که بفروش نمی رود) They held their hands from this matter (از مداخله این امر دست بردار شدند) Lay hands on the villain (دست بر آن فاسد شریر دراز کنید) It is admitted on all hands (همه جا مقرّر در آمده) My hands are full (من هزار تا کار دارم)

Handle—We give a handle to suspicion by keeping this horse (اگر این اسب را نداریم محلّ بدگمانی خواهیم گشت) Handle the matter with great care (با توجّه تام به آن امر بپردازید) He has got a handle to his name (دم گاو در دستش است)

Hard—He is as hard as a flint (دلش از سنگ ساخته شده) I got him hard and fast (اورا سخت و محکم بگرفتم) An elephant has killed several persons hard by (دم دست فیلی چندین اشخاص را کشت) During those days he was very hard up (در آن روزها در تنگی سختی بود)

Harm—It will be no harm (باکی نیست) There would be no harm (ضرر ندارد) Do what harm you can, I am not afraid of you (هرچه از دستت بر آید کوتاهی مکن) . Harm think, harm find (بدی بیند هرکه بدی جوید) Harm watch, harm catch (چاه کن را چاه در پیش)

Haste—The more haste, the less speed (هرچه تعجیل بیشتر تعطیل زیادتر - هرچه زودتر بخواهی دیرتر می شود) Haste is from Satan (تعجیل کار شیطان است) Haste is waste (مستعجل بسر در آید)

Have—Let us have at it (بیائید آنرا بیازمائیم) I had it out

with him for his negligence (ازری سهو این انگلیس را مطالبه نمودم) Have a care (زنهار ناموس باش) He had nothing for it but to disperse his army (بجز آنکه ساختن لشکرش هیچ چاره نداشت) He had like to have been killed more than once (بسیار از یک دفع بر آن بود که بهلاکت برسد)

Hawk—He does not know a hawk from a hand saw (هرزه را از هم فرق نمی گذارد)

Hay—Make hay while the sun shines (تا تنور گرم است نان توان بست) You are making hay of my things (اسبابم را تارمار می کنید)

Head—Under what head does this go (این از کدام منزل است) He has got an old head upon young shoulders (سر پیر بر دوش جوان دارد) His father had a head on his shoulder (پدرش سر پر هوش بر دوش داشت) Suddenly I took it into my head to travel to Persia (ناگاه هوای سیاحت ایران در سرم افتاد) I couldnt make head nor tail of what you said (آنچه گفتی هیچ فهم نشد) He is over head and ears in debt (از سر تا پا مقروض است) I gave my horse the head (من اسب خود را سر دادم) The plot came to a head (فتنه بکمال رسید) I kept my head above water (خود را از ورطه کلی محفوظ نگاهداشتم)

Heart—He has no heart to do it (دل آن کار را ندارد) Faint heart never won fair lady (هر که از مرغ می ترسد ارزن نمی کارد) What the heart thinks the tongue speaks (آنچه در دل است به کلمه می آید) They could not take heart again after such a signal defeat (بعد از چنین شکست فاش دل ایشان باز بر جا نیامد)

I did not take to heart what you said (آنچه گفتي در دلم جا ندادم) It broke his heart (از غم آن جان بحق تسليم نمود) In my heart of hearts I fear him (در پرده از وي مي ترسم) He went into this scheme heart and soul (از دل و جان پي اين تدبير شد) My heart sank into my boots (جگرم دهنم آمد - دلم از جا رفت) It is a work after my own heart (اين کاريست که دلم مي خواهد)

Heaven—He raised himself to the seventh heaven (بعرش بر مي کرد) Good heavens what a wonderful man he is (خدايا چه طور آدم و عريب مرد -)

Heel—The lad took to his heels (طفل فرار نمود). I am out at heels (در حالت تنگي و ناداريم) One woe doth tread upon another's heels (هر غم در عقبش ديگري دارد که برآن پا گذارده مي آيد) My patience has shown its heels to my politeness (صدرم مروتم را حيرباد گفته) He showed a light pair of heels (او سبک بگريخت)

Help—There is no help for it (چاره نيست - کار از دست رفته است). He helped him to succeed in his business (پهلو بدني داد بار) I could not help laughing (از خنده خود داري نتوانستم کرد) I can not help going (بايد بروم) God helps those who help themselves (همت مردان مدد خدا)

Hen—We will never see him sell his hens on a rainy day (هرگزش نيابيم که متاع خويش را بي منافع بفروش بدهد). The doctor was a hen-pecked husband (حکيم شوهري بود مذکر اعني)

High—It descends from on high (از طرف بالا بزير مي آيد) It is now high time (وقت آمده است - وقت خودي است). He has

such high notions (تکرهایش عالی بلند است) He works at high pressure (عملي تام تکرار ع ۶ است) From high words they passed into blows ? (از سخنهای درشت ۶ دست باد کرده و دست انجامید) She was quite on the high rope (اظهار خود فروشي مي کرد) He carried his mission with a high band (مامورية خویش را با کمال دستي تمام بپرداخت)

Hit—He has hit the right nail on the head (حرف خود را از بل کلرانید) What a happy hit (چه اتفاق خوشي) ! It was the great hit of the year (اتفاق بزرگ امسال این بود) He hit upon this expedient (خیالش باین تمهید بر خورد) He hit off the expression of his face (خوش باري آمد ۶ کارله نارم شد)

Hobby—It was his hobby (منظور دلش این بود) Every man has his hobby horse (هرکس بخیال خویش خوشي دارد)

Hold—Either dance, or hold the candle (اگر لرقصي تلمي مي بکاري) I held forth his cleverness before the public (پیش موسسة مردم در تعریف زرنگی خیلي حرف زدم) If you love me hold not off (اگر با من العلي داري دور کسي مکن) The trade held on for many years (آن تجارت ــ لهاي بسیار مداومت کرد) The rule holds good with respect to him (آن قاعده در بارة او سزاوار است)

Home—Make yourself at home (منزل خود بدانید غریبي مکن) I did not find you at home (محروم از درك برگشتم) On this road I am more at home than in the city (در این راه من آسوده خاطرترم تا در شهر) He brought home his arguments (برهان خود را دلنشین ساخت) He is at home to every one (هرکس را اجازة ملاقاتش است) Covetousness brings nothing

home (طمع را سه حرفست و هرسه تهي) Charity begins at home (اوّل حويش بعده درويش)

Honesty Honesty is the best policy (تا مار راست نشود بسوراخ نرود) Honesty is its own reward (نيكي كن و بدريا انداز)

Honour—Where is your honour (آبرويت كو) ? He had the honour of speaking to the Prince (با كمال احترام باشاهزاده حرف زد) I had the honour of an interview with the Prime-minister (بشرف ملاقات صدر اعظم مشرّف شدم) Do me the honour of dining with me (از تناول شام با بنده مشرّفم فرمائيد) That is a point of honour with me (من به آن دارم) The honours rested with him (تشريفات باو قرار گرفت)

Horn—He drew in his horns (جلوگيري نمود) On the horns of a dilemma (گويم مشكل نگويم مشكل) His horn is exalted (او باد كرده است) They pulled in their horns (تن در دادند)

Horse—He broke forth in a horse-laugh (قهقهٔ رشتي زد) He took horse to the lake of Geneva (سوي درياچهٔ ژنو سواره رفت) It is two-horse power (زور دو اسب بخار دارد) He seems to be on his high horse (چشمش جاى را نمي بيند) He rides the high horse (دماغ مي فروشد)

Host—He reckoned without his host (انجام كار علا نديده در مشكلات افتاد) He is a host in himself (بتنهائي خود فرزانهٔ روزگار است)

Hour—He came at the eleventh hour (در وقتِ آخرين بيامد) Even at the eleventh hour it is better to learn wisdom (هيچ وقت براي كسب آموختن دير نيست) I always keep good hours (هميشه سرِ روز بخانه مراجعت مي نمايم) In an evil hour he undertook the business (در ساعتِ نحس عزيمتِ آن كار نمود).

House—Have you ever been to his hou e (هيچ منزل او رفته ايد) We calle l at the house (سري بخانه زديم) Every man s house is his own ca tle (هر كس در منزل خودش سلطان است) My moth r no longer keeps hou e but live with h r widowed sister (مادرم ديگر دستگاه خانه داري ندارد حالا خانه خواهر بيوه اش مي باشد)

Humour—He is not in the humour (حالت ندارد) He i in a good humour (دماغش چاق است) He was a man of good humour (خوش خوي بود)

Hunger—He hungered after fam (آرزوي اشتهار داشت گرسنه نام بود) Hunger is the best sauce (گرسنگي بهترين چاشني است)

Hurry—You are in a great hurry (بسيار مستعجل هستي) Hurry no man s cattle (ديگري را عجله مكن)

Idea—He put false ideas in his head (خيالات باطل در سرش انداخت) It is a far fetched idea (خيال دور و دراز است) He has not two ideas in his head (فراز هر لمي داند) He abandoned the idea of travel (از خيال سفر بيفتاد) What an idea (عجب فكري است) ? What is your idea (فكرت چه چيز است)

Idle—It is an idle excuse (عذر بيجا است) He is as idle as a home soldier (تنبل سرباز خانه است) He is idling away his time (وقت را مفت مي گذراند) He talks idly (حرف مفت مي زند) An idle man is the devil s play fellow (بيكاري يار شيطان است)

Imagination—His work is full of imagination (در كارش افكاري هست) It passes imagination (بالاتر از تصور است) His imagination is fertile (خيالش وسعت دارد)

Important—The news was very important (خبر بسیار مهمی بود) It had an important bearing on his fate (عدم ایت عظیمی بعاقبت او داشت) He is a man of importance (خیلی آدم است)

Impudence—I like your impudence (خوب جرأت دارید) With the most brazen impudence (پوست را بروی خود کشیده)

In—Do you know the ins and outs of these business (مگر راه و چاه این کار را بدانی)? In for a penny, in for a pound (آب که از سر گذشت چه یک نیزه چه صد نیزه) I will deny your statement in toto (تمامی عرض حالت را تکذیب می کنم)

Incline—It was inclined to be fine (هوا رو بخوبی شد) It inclines towards red (بسرخی زند) He is inclined to be naughty (بنای نادرستی دارد)

Incognito—The king used to travel incognito (آن ملک عادت تبدیل گردی داشت)

Indebted—I am indebted to you (من زیر منت شما هستم) I am indebted to him for three rupees (من سه روپیه باو بده کارم)

Inflamed—He used inflamed language (حرف ملایم نزد) His throat is inflamed (گلوش باد کرده است) He inflamed his mind with evil passions (قلبش را باررزوهای بد ملایم ساخت)

Influence—He has no influence (حمایش رنگی ندارد) He had great influence at court (در دربار خانه تسلط تامی داشت)

Insult—It is adding insult to injury (عذر بیست بدتر از گناه) He was much insulted (خیلی خفیف شد)

Interest—He acted in the interests of the public (موافق منافع عمومیهٔ وطن حرکت کرد) I take no interest in this matter (از این کار خوشم نمی آید) This does not interest the public

Keep—Keep it there (گیرش کن) His name has been kept (ا ٭ ش ھ رر در افواہ مردم جاریست) He would keep abreast of the time (با زمانه پهلو بپهلو رفتار مي نمود) Keep an eye on that man (آنمرد را تحت نظر بدار) I would keep in with him, if I were you (اگر بجاي شما من مي بودم هرگز روابط دوستيش را قطع نمي کردم) To keep body and soul together we put a morsel into her mouth (تا جان در قالب باشد در دهانش لقمهٔ نگذاشتيم) Keep this affair dark (اين امر را مخفي بدار) I always kept this in view (ايدرا هميشه نه مد نظر مي داشتم). He kept on speaking (مسلسل سخن مي راند)

Keeping—It is in keeping with the scenery around (با فضا گاه پيرامنش هم‌آهنگ است) I left the shop in his keeping (دکان را بتحويل او نگذاشتم)

Key Patience and perseverance is the key to success (صبر و تحمل مفتاح کارهاست)

Kick—He kicked over the traces (بي پروائي نمود - اعتنا نکرد). They kicked up a dust (معرکه نمودند) Kicking against the pricks is mere foolishness (روي خار لکد زدن کار ابلهان است)

Kidney - They are all of a kidney (همهٔ ايشان يک طبيعت دارند - همه يکدل اند)

Kill—Kill or cure (با کش يا چارهٔ کن) One colour kills the other (يک رنگ ديگري را ميکشد).

Knock—He is not going to knock under (در صدد آن نيست که سر در زير اطاعت بيارد) I feel knocked up with my day's work (از مشقت روزانه ام خود را خسته و خراب مي يابم) He knocked me up out of my bed (بر در خانه‌ام دستک زده مرا از رخت خواب

بیدار کرد) I have knocked about the world a good deal (در اطرافِ جهان خیلی سرگردان بوده ام)

Know—He knows about the matter (مطلب مسلط است) I know his address (نشانی او را بلدم) He knows every thing (سررشتهٔ کاملی دارد) She knows what she is about (عاقبت بین و دور اندیش است)

Knowledge—Knowledge is power (توانا بود هرکه دانا بود) Knowledge is the treasure of the mind (دلِ انسان را علم ... بس بیبها)

Land—The troops landed near Port Said (عساکر مهیب به بندرِ سعید بکنار آمدند) Now I see how the land lies (حالا فهمیدم حالت چگونه است) He made the land the sixth day after leaving Melbourne (از ملبورن کشتی در روز ششم صورتِ زمین بنظرش افتاد)

Large—It was large enough to hold two or three persons (بقدرِ جای دو سه نفر بود) He was set at large (آزادش کردند). He is a gentleman at large (نه کاری دارد و نه شغلی روز همه روز تنبلی و تن آسانیست)

Lark—What larks we had when we were boys (در ایّامِ طفولیت چه ... کردیم و چه بازیها نمودیم) When the sky falls we shall catch larks (اگر آسمان بزیر افتد تذرو صید می کنم)

Last—Let the cobbler stick to his last (کارِ هر بز نیست خرمن کوفتن) The food will last a week (آن خوراک برای یک هفته کفایت خواهد کرد)

Late—Better late than never (دیر یابی از هرگز نیابی بهتر است دیر آید درست آید) It is too late to grieve when the chance is past (چون کار از دست رفت پشیمانی چه سود) It is never too

late to mend (صد بار اگر توبه شکستي باز آ) It is rather late in the day to object now (اولاً حالا فرصتِ اعتراض از دست رفته)

Laugh Let him laugh who wins (خنده کسي راست که مي برد), How they must have laughed at you in their sleeves (در زيرِ لب شان بتو چه خنده‌ها زده باشند) I laughed off my failure (قصورِ خودم را در خنده پوشيدم)

Law—He will have the law of you (دستِ ديوانت مي دهد) He took the law in his own hands (بدستِ خودش حدّ جاري کرد)

Lay—They laid the meal on the table (روي ميز سفره را پهن کردند) They laid their heads together (- سر بسر هم نهادند يکي ميخ مي زند ديگري پرچين مي کند - با يکديگر مشورت کردند) . He lustily laid about him (با جرات صندلي به پيرامنِ خود زد و کوب کردن گرفت) . I can not lay by anything from my income (نمي توانم از مداخلم هيچ پس انداز نکنم) It is easy to lay down the law to an ignorant neighbour (با همسايهٔ بي سواد با صلاح و تصرّف حرف زدن آسان است) Lay it to thy heart (در دلت آنرا صرارتهٔ سختي دکن) We laid her low in the grave (بخاکش سپرديم) They laid violent hands on him (خوس ريختند) He has been laid up with sickness since the first of this month (از غرّهٔ ماه ناخوش بستري است) You are laying it on (با کم و زيادش حرف مي زني)

Lead—You have led me a pretty dance all over the town (در تمامي شهر عبث مرا سرگردان نمودئي) It leads to ruin (بهلاکت مي برد) . This road leads to Shiráz (اين راه بشيراز مي رود) We lead a life of poverty (عمر بسر مي بريم در پريشاني و درماندگي), He led up to it in conversation (در صحبت بدان منجر کرد)

Leaf—I will take a leaf out of your book (آنچه از شما خورده ام بشما مي فروشم) He has turned over a new leaf (او [illegible] زندگي صفحهٔ نو را نموده)

Leak—The secret leaked out (راز بروز شد) The ship sprung a leak (کشتي آب تو مي داد)

Least—The least you can do (ادنی کاري که توانيد کرد) At the least there are twelve (اقلاً دوازده [illegible]) The least said the soonest mended (کم سخن گوي زود در اصلاح امر مي شود)

Leave—He left off drinking (او از خوردن شراب فراغت کرد) I leave that to you (من آنرا بشما وا مي گذارم) The fever left him (تبش [illegible] است) My son is left out in the cold (از پسرم غفلت کلي ورزيدند) He left me in the lurch (او مرا در ورطه بگذاشت)

Leg—He has not a leg to stand upon (اصلاً است [illegible] کافي ندارد) A lie has no legs (دروغ را فروغ نيست) He is always on his legs ([illegible] در سر پاست) He is on his last legs (کار و بارش لب است در حالت خطر است)

Let—The house lets cheap (خانه کم کرايه مي دهد) Do not let it fall (زنهار که نمي افتد) Let it alone (بگذار باشد) We can't let you off (نمي توانيم بگذاريم بروي) He let this secret out (اين راز را بروز داد) He is gentle as a lamb when he is let alone (هرگاه که کسي آزارش نرساند حلم بره دارد) He let go of the thief (از دزد دست برداشت)

Letter—He carried this out to the letter (حرف بحرف اين را مجرا داشت) It is against the letter of the law (خلاف لفظي شريعت است)

Liberal—He is a liberal man (چشم و دلش پر است) They studied the liberal arts (صنائع حرّیه و معارف ردیه را آموختند)

Liberty—He is at liberty to go (مختار است که برود) Liberty sometimes becomes license (حرّیت بعضي اوقات رخصت بدکاري مي شود). He is given full liberty (مطلق العنان کرده شد)

Lie—They forged lies against him (برایش بهتان کردند) As far as in me lies, I mean to support him (هرچه از دستم برآید مي خواهم دستگیریش بکنم) I gave him the lie direct (تک سر تکذیب قولش نمودم) These goods lay on my hands for months (این امتعه ماه ها بر دستم بود که فروخت نمي شود) Time lay heavy on my hands during your absence (در ایّامِ غیابت ... اوقات برمن تلخ و گران مي گذشت)

Life—That picture has no life in it (آن صورت گیرندگی ندارد) He is the life and soul of the party (حیات و جانِ آن طائفه اوست) The old man is wearied of life (پیره مرد از زندگي بیزار شده است) The picture is exact to the life (این تصویر شبیه کامل است - این نقش از حقیقت سرِ موي تفاوت ندارد) He bears a charmed life (روئین تن است که هیچ ضرري به او نمي رسد)

Lift—Thou shalt lift up thy face unto God (بر خدا توکّل بکنید) Lift up the light of thy countenance upon us (نورِ وجهِ خود را بر ما فروزان گردان) Saul lifted up his voice and wept (شاول بآوازِ بلند گریه مي کرد) The fog lifted (مه برطرف شد)

Light—They brought a light repast (طعام مختصر حاضر کردند) I saw the light in course of that journey (من درآن راه از تنگناي عدم بفراخناي هستي قدم زدم) He made light of the

old man's tongue (گفتار پیر مرد را صرفِ تفکر نمود) He sets light by his wife's notions (خیالاتِ زنش را اهانت می نماید) He would never bring it to light (آنرا هرگز بمیدان نمی آرد) He belongs to the light fingered gentry (از زمرهٔ کیسه برانِ زبردست است) Lightly come, lightly go (هرچه زود آید دیر نپاید)

Like—I do not like this (میل به این ندارم از این بدم می آید) He took what he liked best (آنچه دلش می خواست با خود گرفت) How do you like this country (این ولایت را چگونه دیدی) ? A lucky man may do as he likes (طالع اگر داری برو به پست بخواب)

Line—This is not in my line of business (من اهلِ این کار نیستم) It is hard lines (دیوار بلع کرده است) This is out of his lines (این از دائرهٔ عملِ وی بیرون است) The town has been lined with troops (لشکر در اطرافِ شهر نشانده اند)

Lion—He is the lion of the age (شیرِ زمان او ممتازِ درجهٔ خلق است) He got the lion's share (بقسمِ زیاده و نا مساوی بهم رسانید)

Listen—I am listening to you (گوشم با شما است) He does not listen to you (حرفِ شما را گوش نمی کند) Listen more and speak less (گوش در دو دارند و زبانِ در یکی)

Little—He is little more than a fool (همین احمق است) It is too little (کم می آید) Every little helps (هر کمی مددی می کند) Many a little makes a mickle (قطره قطره جمع گردد و آنگهی دریا شود) A little learning is a dangerous thing (نیم حکیم خطرِ جان نیم ملّا خطرِ ایمان) Who undertakes too much succeeds but little (دو هندوانه در یک بغل نگنجد)

Live—The ascetic lives on herbs (زاهد در سبزیجات زندگی می کند) He lived down the scandal (تهمت را گذراند) How many years have you lived here (چند سال است در اینجا هستی) ? If I live, I shall repay you in your own coin (اگر حیات باقی باشد ترا بسزاي خود مي رسانم)

Living—A living dog is better than a dead lion (سگ زنده بهتر از شیر مرده) Living is very dear now-a-days (در این روز ها اسباب معیشت خیلي گران است)

Load—He has a load of trouble (بار زحمتي بر خود دارد) His speech was loaded with metaphors (سخنش پر از استعارات بود) The tree was loaded with fruits (درخت زیر بار ثمر بود) He was loaded with honour by the Shah (منتهاي التفات از جانب شاه در حقّ او معمول و مبذول افتاد).

Lock—To lock the stable door after the steed is stolen (مشتي که بعد از جنگ یاد آید بر کلّهٔ خود باید زد)

Logger-heads—They fell to logger-heads with one another (بایکدیگر منازعت بر انداختند)

Long—The nights are long (شبها دراز است) It is not long since he went (خیلي وقت نیست که رفت). At the the long run these fellows never thrive (عاقبت چنین مردکه‌ها هرگز برخوردار نمي شوند) The long and the short of the matter is that I have lost this chance (خلاصهٔ کلام من این فرصت را از دست دادم).

Look—Look before you leap (اوّل اندیش و انگهي گفتار) His looks belie him (دروغ از چهرهٔ اش مي بارد) She looks forty (بنظر چهل ساله مي نماید) Which way a man goes the picture looks towards him (آدم هر طرف که مي رود چشم صورت

(پاس بست) We will go to look at it (برویم تماشاس بکنیم) He looks after the patient (مریض را خدمت میکند) I have to look sharp after her (باید از روی احتیاط او را تعیینِ نظر (بدارم) She can look a misfortune in the face (چنان پردل است که می تواند تکلیفی را بی هراس و اختلاس ذرحی نماید) She bade one of her servants look to the garden (یکی از نوکرانِ خود را فرمایش داد که گلشن را پرستاری نماید) That is your look-out (آن بر سر توست) Let every man look over his part (هر کس باید از تماشا حصهٔ مخصوصِ خود را بار دیگر بخواند) There is little use searching for him in this crowd it is like looking for a needle in a hay stack (در این ازدحام بزرگ او را جستن بی سود می نماید که تلاش سوزن در انبار کاه) He looks at things through coloured spectacles (بچشم تعصّب نگاه می کند) The children are all looking forward to your visit (بچّه ها همه با کمال آرزو مترصّدِ ملاقاتِ شما)

Lord—He lords it over the people (آنها با ترس حرکت می کند)

Lose—They lost the day (باختند) I have lost the key (کلید را گم کرده ام) The salt has lost its savour (نمک بی مزه گشته) He lost his temper (کج خلق گردید) He loses his time in foolery (اوقاتِ خود را در سفاهت برباد میدهد)

Loss—I was quite at a loss to see her there (او را در آنجا دیده حیران مانده بودم) He suffered a dead loss by this transaction (در این معامله خسارهٔ کلّی کشید)

Love—He loves fighting (از جنگ خوشش می آید) There is no love lost between them (از یکدیگر دوری می نمایند) Love a

labour's lost (کعچہ ردم کعچہ ردم ‌ارا کو) Love is blind (عاشق کور مي باشد).

Low—He is a low fellow (بي پير است). He has a low estimate of this man (این مرد را حقیر مي شمرد) The sun is low in the horizon (آفتاب کم ارتفاعات در افق) His pulse is low (نبض او ...) His health is low (صحتش بهم خوردة است)

Lump—There was a lump in my throat (گویا گلو گیرم کرده بود). He lumped in several things (... چیزها را یک کلعی کرد)

Mad—He is mad after that girl (دیوانة آن دختر است) The world is running mad after farce (همگي ساري میلِ عریدي پیدا نمودة اند)

Magnify He magnifies the difficulties of the enterprise (اشکالاتِ معامله را درزگ می سازد) Magnify thy lord (ربِّ خود را حمد و ثنا نگو)

Main—In the main he was right (رو هم رفته حق بدستش بود) He pulled with might and main (با قوّت و قدرت هرچه داشت کشید) He has an eye to the main chance only (نگاهش بس بترقّي دولت است)

Maintain—He maintains a large establishment (دستگاهِ بزرگي را میگرداند) He maintains that he is right (ادّعا مي نماید که حق با وي است) That argument cannot be maintained (اقامهٔ آن حرف محالست)

Make—This is not a good make (خوش ترکیب نیست) The make of that boat is bad (ساختِ آن کشتي بد است) The tide makes fast (مدّ بسرعت در کار است) He made him submit

(... آمد) He made him a judge (اورا حاکم گردانید) It makes for one's advantage (بکار آمد مي خيزد) Then make him take it (ويرا بستاند) One can't make war with rose water (در دعوي حلوا قسمت نمي کنند) One flower makes no garland (از يک گل بهار نمي شود) Poverty makes men poor spirited (افلاس عقلها را زائل ميکند) The master made at them (معلم بسوي ايشان دويد) I made as if I intended to linger (ظاهر ساختم گويا خواهش ماندن دارم) He made away with himself (خود کشي کرد) Make your bread by honest means (با تقوي و پرهيزگاري لقمهٔ نان بکف آر) He will soon make friends with you again (زود با تو دوست شود) All his old arrears were made good (همه بقاياي قديم خود را تمام ادا نمود) No one was powerful enough to make head against the free-booters (هيچ کس طاقت مقابل قزاقان نداشت) He always made much of me (هميشه با من رعايت تمام مي کرد) I began to feel a pain I know not what to make of (دردي محسوس شد که نمي دانم چيست) It is not every body who can make her out (هر کس و ناکس نمي تواند مراد او را بفهمد) Try to make up for your absence (بکوش تلافي غيبت خود بکني) Make the best of a bad bargain (سودائي که بد شده باشد هرچه بتواني از آن فائده بگير)

Man—He is not the man for me (او مرد من نيست) He is not much of a man at painting (در نقاشي مهارت ندارد) Man is mortal (انسان فاني است) Man proposes but God disposes (ما در چه خياليم و فلک در چه خيال کارها بدست خدا است) They were killed to a man (بي استثناي همه يک يک کشته شدند)

(ایشانرا کشتند) He was not a man of letters (صاحبِ تصانیف نبود) Your brother was a mere man of the world (برادرِ شما محض دنیا پرست بود) The new minister is a man of the world (وزیرِ نو مردي است کاردان و با تجربه)

Manage—I cannot manage without this (من بي این صورتِ کاري نمي توانم داد) How do they manage to live (چه طور گذران مي کنند) ? He can not manage his wife (زنِ خود را نمي تواند مطیع گرداند) This business is under new management (این عمل تحتِ ادارۀ نوین است) The management of the matter was foolish (رتق و فتقِ آن امر بوی حماقت مي داد) Economy is not possible without management (بي تدبیرِ امرِ خانه داري محال است)

Manner—This manner of life is wrong (این طور زندگي بد است) What manner of a man is he (چه طور آدمي است) ? Manners make the man (شرفِ انسان از ادب است)

Mare—Money makes the mare go (زر بر سرِ فولاد نهي نرم شود - واکس کیوبه در هریسه) They have found a mare's nest (دل به موهوم بسته اند) .

Mark—We have missed our mark (تیرِ ما بخطا خورد) He made his mark (علامتِ خود را یافت) That was quite out of the mark (آن نکاتِ دور از نشان بود) He is a man of mark (علامۀ عصر است) This paper seems to be beside the mark (این نوشته دور از نشان معلوم مي نماید) Your book is up to the mark (کتابِ شما در حدِ میعار است)

Marvel—He is a perfect marvel (حیاي کریر است - اعجوبۀ است) .
Your sagacity is marvellous (نظرِ شما عجیب است)

Master—He is a master of his subject (استاد است در کار خود) You are a master of the art of painting (در نقاشي مهارت کامل داري) He met his master (با استادش همسر شد با استاد خود) We mastered this book (در مطالب اين کتاب دست يافتم برآمد). It was a master stroke of policy of his (اين از مخصوصي هنر بود در سياست)

Matter—What is the matter (چه شده است)? It is a matter of doubt (در اين سخن مي رود) Matters are serious (کارها خيلي سخت شده است) It is a matter of consideration (مطلب قابل تفکر) This is a matter of course (در اين حرف نيست) It was no greater matter (مطلبي نبود)

Maxim—It is a maxim in politics (قاعده است در سياست) His maxim is always to tell the truth (بر اساس راست گفتن است)

Mean—He means business (مقصدش عمل است) I have no means of doing it (من استطاعت کردن آنرا ندارم) The means thereto are there (وسائل بسوي آن موجود است) Gentle means are the best (رفتار خوش کار را از سخت بهتر مي آرد) Come early by all means (بهر صورت زود بيا)

Measure—We measured sword with each other (با يکديگر شمشير زديم) He measured his length on the ground (بطوريکه بزمين خورد). I measured strength with him (بازي در زورآزمائي)

Meet—They went forth to meet the prince (به استقبال شاهزاده رفتند) I have met with adversity (مبتلا گشتم) Extremes meet (انهايات ملاقي مي شوند)

Mend—This will not mend matters (اين اصلاح امور نخواهد نمود)

The weather is mending (هوا رو به بهتر نهاده است). He mended his manners (اطوار خود را درست کرد)

Mention—There were ten persons there, not to mention the attendants (ده نفر در آنجا بودند بغیر از خدماً) It is not mentioned in the text (در متن مسطور نیست)

Mess—What a mess he made of this business (این کار را بکلی ضائع کرد) ! Affairs were in a great mess (کارها درهم برهم بود) He messed this matter (او این کار را خراب کرد)

Method—There is method in his madness (دیوانگیش نظم دارد)

Might Might is right (زور پدر حساب است - هر که بقدر جثه) He is a mighty fool (عجب احمق است) Do it with all thy might (باهمه دل و جان خودت اینرا انجام بده)

Mild—The weather is mild (هوا معتدل است) It got milder (ملائم ترشد) Draw it a little milder (افراط مکن)

Mill—Though the mills of God grind slowly, yet they grind exceedingly small (خدا دیرگیر و لیکن سخت گیر است)

Mince—He did not mince matter (مطلب را درهم نه گفت) This meat minces well (این گوشت خوب قیمه می شود) She minces very much (حرکات شیرین خرج می دهد) Don't mince your words (ململ زبانی مکن) The wolf made mince-meat of him (گرگ کوفته اش کرد)

Mind—He minds his own affairs (مشغول کار خود است) He does not mind (دل نمیدهد - گوشش پر است) Mind your P's and Q's (حرکات خود را بپا - متوجه خود باش) Never mind (عیب ندارد - چشم مپوش) Mind your eye (زنهار)

Mischief—The mischief of the matter is this (خرابی کار اینست).

He played the mischief with my plans (مزاحمتهاي مرا منقلب ساخت)

Misfortune—It was his fault rather than his misfortune (از تقصير بود نه از بدبختيش) Misfortune never comes single (آنچه از بدي ماند وبال بود يک لشد در شد)

Miss—We missed you (جاي شما خالي بود) I missed that observation (من آن مطلب را از دست دادم) I missed him on the road (در عرض راه او را گم کردم) He missed his aim (تيرش بهدف نرسيد)

Mite—A widow's mite (برگ سبز است تحفهٔ درويش)

Model—He is a model of virtue (او آيت تقوي است). He models his action according to the requirements of the case (اعمال خود را مراعي ضروريات حال ترتيب مي دهد)

Money—Money makes money (پول پول را پيدا مي کند) He is a money-making man (پول پيداکن است) He has no money (دستش خالي است) Money makes the man (هرکه را زر در ترازوست زور در بازو ست)

More—I have not a single word more to say (من يک کلمهٔ ديگر ندارم که بگويم) The more, the merrier (هرچه بيشتر باشد خوشتر مي گويد) He is no more (فوت شده است) His anger increased more and more (غضبش بيشتر از بيشتر گرديد)

Mortal—This disease is mortal (اين ناخوشي مهلک است). He is my mortal enemy (با من دشمن خونخوار است) It is a mortal affront (اين اهانتي ... است)

Moss—Rolling stones gather no moss (هيچ بر سنگ گردان لروئيد نبات زمين شور سنبل بر ندارد)

Mother—It is extempore, from my mother-wit (سخن مرتجل ا د ار هوش مادریم) You are still fresh from your mother's apron strings (هنوز بوي شیر از دهنت مي آید)

Motion—He did this of his own motion (این را از پیش خود کرد) He set the machine in motion (ماشین را در کار نهاد) The general put his army in motion (سرتیپ لشکر را رو براه کرد)

Mouth—With one mouth they spoke thus (متفقاً چنین گفتند - بیک زبان اظهار داشتند) The message was sent by word of mouth (پیغام را دربان قاصد فرستادند) Many have their mouths water at his gains (حاصلش را دیده آب از دهان بسیار کسان جاري مي شود) They spoke by the mouth of their leader (از زبانِ سردارِ خود سخن گفتند)

Much—Much ado about nothing (کوه کندن و موش در آوردن) Gentle or simple, they are much of a muchness (خواه مردمان نجیب، خواه عوام الناس هردو یکي اند) He is much given to drink (او بسیار شارب الخمر است) He is not so much wrong as you (او بقدر شما در باطل نیست) Get as much as you can from an adversary (موي از خرس کندن شغل است) He is too much for me (چارهٔ اورا نمي دارم) This is too much of a good thing (این پرخوب است که نپاید)

Name—He assumed the name of his grand-father (نام جدّ خودش را گرفت) It bears out its name (اسم با مسمّی است) Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord, thy God, in vain (بنامِ خداي ربِّ ایلِ خود سوگند لاف مخور).

Narrow—He narrowed the arguments to two points (بحث را بدو نقطهٔ محدود ساخت) He narrowly escaped death (چیزي

(باقي نمانده بود که بمیرد) Remember thy narrow home (منزل تنگ گور را یاد دار)

Nature—One touch of nature makes the whole world kin (دل بدل راه دارد) It became a second nature to him (عادت ثانوية او است) The man was found in a state of nature (آن مرد را لخت مادرزاد یافتند)

Near—The nearer to church, the farther from grace (چراغ نزدیک بردیکی) (پاي خود را روشن نمي سازد) It was a near shave (نزدیکي بود) It is near here (درین نزدیکیها ست) She was rather near (بیسلر خسیس و کم بود)

Neat—Everything was as neat as a pin in the house (در خانه همه چیزها مثل سنجاق نظیف و آراسته بود) He put it rather neatly (به توجیهی گفت)

Necessary—It is a necessary of life (لازمهٔ زندگانیست) It does not make it necessary for others to believe it (مستلزم اعتقاد دیگران نیست) These are the necessities of the time (اینها ضروریات زمان است) Necessity is the mother of invention (ضرورت اساس اختراع است)

Neck—He broke the neck of this affair (مشکل این کار را حل کرد) Neck or nothing (یا بس رسد باجالالی یا جان زتن برآید) Instantly on the neck of this disaster came the news of his sudden death (فوراً در عقب این حادثه خبر مرگ ناگهانیش رسید)

Never—Never put off till to-morrow what you can do to-day (کار امروز را بفردا مگذار) Never say die (تا جان در قالب است هرگز ناامید مشو)

New—It is nothing new (تازگي ندارد) He is a new-comer

(تازه رس است) It must be something new (باید که چیزکِ تازه باشد)

Next—He paid me next to nothing (بیش از ناچیزي بمن نداد) You are next door to a brute (شما کم از بهایم نیستید) These are the desires that lie next to my heart (اینست تمناهایم که نزدِ من عزیزتر از دل و جانم است)

Nick—You came in the very nick of time (تو بعا و در عینِ وقت آمدي) I have nicked this horse (دم این اسب را تیغچي کردم) Buy me some nick-nacks (براي من مزخرفاتِ چندي بخر) They nicknamed him (اورا نام زشت گذاشتند)

Nip—He nipped him on the row (نیشِ سختي به وي زد) This revolt should be nipped in the bud (لازم است که این فتنه را در عینِ آغازش فرو نشانند)

No—No rose without a thorn (هرجا که گل است خار است - کسي که گل مي خواهد باید منتِ خار بکشد) No pains, no gains (نابرده رنج گنج میسر نشود)

Nose—He leads him by the nose (بتصدیقش مي رقصد) Why do you speak through the nose (چرا از دماغ حرف مي زني) ? He pays for it through the nose (بدشواري از عهدهٔ آن بیرون خواهد آمد) The clerks are always with their noses at the grind-stone (میرزایان همیشه در کار سخت مشغول اند) He turns up his nose at every thing ancient (بر هر چیزي که قدیم باشد بچشم حقارت نگاه مي کند) He put his nose into my affairs (در معاملاتِ من دستِ مداخلت دراز کرد) He could not see what passed under his very nose (کاري که زیرِ چشمش کردند آنرا دیدن نتوانست)

Not—He is not at all bashful (او مطلقاً خجالت نمی فهمد) Not to say that he is a fool (قطع نظر از اینکه احمق است)

Note—He is a man of note (او مرد معروف) I noted him down a fool (اورا احمق ...)

Nothing—It is a mere nothing (قابل نیست) It is nothing to you (تو کار نداری) That is nothing (سهل است) It is nothing but sand (محض ریگ است) Nothing venture nothing have (رنج نکشی تا گنج نبری)

Notice—He took no notice of me (مرا محل نگذاشت) You have come into notice (روی کار آمدید) He is beneath my notice (مرا عار می آید از او)

Notion—I have no notion what happened (مرا اطلاعی از آنچه راجع شده است نیست) I had no notion of this matter (من از این امر ... خبر نداشتم) They gave him exalted notions of himself (باد زیر بغلش انداختند)

Novelty—This is no novelty (این فرقی ندارد) Novelty hath charms (تازگی دلکش است) These are the novelties of the season (اینها مراتب فصل است)

Oar—He put in his oar where he wasn't wanted (سر درمیانی سرها آورد) I put my oar in no man's boat (من دست ... در کار هیچ کسی نکنم)

Object—I have nothing to object to (حرفی در مقابل ندارم) Have you any objection to this (... هیچ ...) ? What objection have you to this speech (چه ایراد به این سخن دارید) ? There is no objection (عیب ندارد حرفی نیست) His conduct was very objectionable(سلوکش بسیار مورد گفتگو بود)

Oblige—I am much obliged to you (منت بر گردنِ بنده دارند). He was obliged (درمانده بود - گردنش بار شد) It will add to the obligation (مزیدِ منت خواهد بود)

Observe—He was the observed of all observers (همهٔ بینندگان چشم بر وی دوخته) He took an astronomical observation (رصد بندي كرد) The rules were fully observed (بطورِ كمال استنباطِ قواعد شد)

Occasion—On occasion he was to act for himself (لازم بود كه محلِّ ضرورت بمصيرتِ خود عمل نمايد) He took occasion to open the pocket-book (فرصت را غنيمت شمرده كتابچهٔ بغلي را بگشاد) Did you let the occasion slip (مگر فرصت را از دست دادي) ? There is no occasion for it (وجهي ندارد - راهي ندارد) They gave him occasion to speak vain things (تخمِ لق در دهانش انداختند)

Occupy—I occupied myself with the business (مشتغلِ كار شدم) He is occupied in the affairs of Government (متوجهٔ اموراتِ سركار است) It occupies all his time (تمام وقتش را مي گيرد)

Odds—He was at odds with all the festivity (با انبساط و شادماني تماماً در اختلاف بود) What are the odds as long as you are happy (چه باك از غم چو عيشت برقرار است) ? He is by long odds the ablest of the candidates (تماماً قابلترينِ اميدواران است)

Odour—He was in bad odour with the chief (سردار از وي بدگمان گرديد) He died in the odour of sanctity (در عين شهرتِ تقوى و تقدس جهان را پدرود كرد)

Off—Be off with you (گم شو - ده برو) He is very well off (خيلي فارغ البال و خوشحال است) He studies off and on (تك تك درس

(مي خواند). He had an off-hand manner of speaking (به آزادي و حاطرجمعي حرف مي زد) He got off the whole book by heart (تمامي كتاب را از بر كرد) He was off his head with excitement (از هيجان سر خود را گم كرده بود)

Offence—He is prone to take offence (او زود رنج است ، اميد آنكه ملطي سر نزده) I hope no offence (عذري جرمى آمد باشد) He was offended (زير بپرس خورده)

Offer—The opportunity offerred (فرصت دست داد) How much do you offer for this book (براي اين كتاب مي خواهي چند بدهي)

Office—The minister is now out of office (حالا وزير خارج از ماموريت است) He used his good offices for my sake (از برايم مساعي جميله مبذول داشت)

Old—He is ten years old (ده سال دارد) I am twice as old as you (سن من دو مقابل سن شما است) How old are you (شما چند سال داريد) ? It is the old, old story (همان نقل سابق است)

Once—My watch is lost once for all (ساعتم گم شد بي آنكه بار ديگر بخريد) Once in a way I use to visit them (بطور شاذ بخدمت ايشان مشرف مي شوم) He told me this once and again (بارها بمن اينرا بگفت)

One—There is but one God (خدا يكي است) I shall send you the paper one of these days (متقريب رساله را بشما بفرستم) One vacancy a hundred applicants (يك مرض و صد گرسنه يك انگور و صد زنبور يك انار و صد بيمار) We are one too many for him (اگر او روباه است ما پدر روباهيم) I am at one with you (باشما يكدل هستم) One tale is good till another is told (تنها بيش قاضي رفتي راضي آئي)

Open—This door opens into another (اس در به اوطاقِ دیگر را می شود) He opened his mind to me (نمس رازِ دل را بگفت) I received him with open arms (او روي مودت و دلخوشي پذيرآئيش نمودم) His life is open as the day (زندگیش مثلِ روز روشن هویدا و نمایانست) There was no opening for him in England (کشادگي براي وي در انگلستان نشد)

Opinion—I have a poor opinion of him (راي من در بارهٔ او ناقص است) They are unanimously of opinion (متفق الراي بودند) Opinions differ (در رايها فرق مي باشد) He is not a man of opinion (در راي ثابت نيست)

Opposition—These two things are in opposition (این دو چیز ضدِ یکدیگراند) He offered him opposition (اروي مخالفت ورزيد)

Oracle—He is a perfect oracle (داناي كاملِ عصر است)

Order—The order has been given (حکم داده شده است - فرمایش رفته است) It is the order of the day (دستورِ وقت این است) I did this in order to please you (براي خاطرِ شما این کار را کردم) I ordered three loaves (فرمایش براي سه نان دادم) Order him to come (تدعی بکن بیاید)

Otherwise—Enquire about the truth or otherwise of this state of affairs (صحت و عدمِ صحتِ این کیفیت را دریاب) It is otherwise (برخلافِ آن است)

Out—There you are out (در آنجا سهو کردهٔ) He is out of it (او خارج است از آن کار) She had it out with her brother (با برادرِ خود مجادله و مخاصمه نمود) It was much out of the way (خيلي دور از دستِ معمول بود) I am out of sorts (احوالم مشوش است) It is quite out of place (كلية نامناسب است) You are not

out of the wood yet (هنوز از بلا بسلامت نیستي) Out of sight, out of mind (از دل برود هرآنکه از دیده برفت از دیده دور از دل دور) He has no out let for his energies (مخرجي براي قواي خویش ندارد) The out-look was gloomy (مآل کار مم انگیزي نمود) It was an out rage against good manners (ظلمي بود بر اخلاق حسنه) This coat of his will out wear two of those (این قبا بیش از دو تاي آنها دوام مي کند)

Over—It is over (برفت). There were three rupees over (سه روپیه زیاد آمد) He is over head and ears in debt (زیر بار بدهي است) He over-acted his part (تکلیف خود را بیش از واجب بعمل آورد) The sky became overcast (ابرطلي سماء بالله شد) He over-did it (پُر شورش کرد) The money is over-due (موعد پول سر آمده است) Beware of being over-heard (بدیوار هم گوش دارد) Sleep over-powered me (خواب بر من مستولي شد) He over ruled the objection (اعتراض را رد کرد) He over shot the remark (تیرش از نشانه در گذشت) He over-stepped the mark (از حد تجاوز کرد) You over taxed your strength (توت خود را زیاده استعمال نمودید) He is over nice (مشکل پسندي مینماید)

Owe—It is all owing to this (همه از این است) He owes it to me that he got this (بواسطهٔ من است که اینرا یافت)

Own—I have no house of my own (منزل از خودم ندارم) He did own up to this (معترف این شد)

Pack—It is a pack of lies (مشتي دروغ است) They are a beggarly pack (گروه مساکیني) Now, be packing (حالا پاره را درست بکن)

Pain—He is painfully stupid (سخت احمق است) I took no pains for it (در صدد این نبودم)

Palate—He has no palate for fruit (ذوقِ میوه ندارد) Reproof does not suit his palate (عتاب موافقِ مذاقش نیست)

Pale—He is not within the pale of civilization (در دائرهٔ تمدّن داخل نیست) He turned pale (رنگش را باخت)

Palm—He palmed this off as genuine (این را چنان قلم داد که گویا صحیح است) This bears the palm of all his victories (این از همهٔ نصرتهای او سبقت برده است) It was in the palmy days of his victory (در ایّام ظفرانجام فتحش این بود)

Parade—He made a parade of his learning (بسیار اظهارِ فضیلت نمود) You make a great parade of yourself (خیلی اظهارِ تشخّص می نمائی)

Parallel—There is no parallel between this and that (حدّ مساوی میانِ این و آن نیست) This is without parallel (این بی مثل است).

Part—If there has been any negligence on my part, please, pardon it (اگر تقصیری از بنده سر زده باشد از روی نوازش آنرا معاف فرمائید) It was a part of the performance (جزِ آن کار بود). He played an important part of the matter (جزِ مهم این کار را وی صورت داد) He took that in good part (آنرا پذیرفت). I took his part (طرف داریش نمودم). He is a man of parts (مردی قابل است)

Partial—He is very partial to wine (خیلی شراب دوست است) This was partially true (این فی الجمله راست بود)

Particle—He has not a particle of sense in his head (یک ذرّه هوش در سرش نیست)

Particular—He is a very strict in this particular (درابن باب بوفور خیلی سخت گیر هست) He is particular as to his dress (ماه بگیر قید لباس خود است) He is a very particular person (حساش می گذارد)

Pass—Things have come to a pretty pass (کار و بار بد است) It passed off well (خوش گذشت) The opportunity passed (فرصت از دست رفت) We passed our days in making merry (در نشاط و سرور صرف اوقات شد) A cannon-ball passed through it (گلوله توپ بر آن گذشت کرد) It passed by ten votes to nine (در مقابل نه رای به ده رای پذیرفته شد) It is passed (سپری شد) I passed by many things (از دعاوی بسیار در گذشتم) He passed himself off as a sick merchant (خود را تاجر بیمار قلم داد) This passed off soon (این بزودی گذشت) I passed over his misconduct (بدرفتاریش را عفو کردم) We passed the night in fear (در خوف و هراس شب را بروز آوردیم)

Passing—It is passing strange (بغایت غریب است) It was a passing idea (فکری ناگهانی بود) He is a past master in the art of humbugging (در اول رتبه استاد کهن است)

Patch—He is not a patch on you for looks (در خوشگلی بگرد تو نمی رسد) He patched up a peace (صلحی فراهم آورد)

Pathetic—He apes the pathetic (در صدد جلب است ادعای دلربائی دارد)

Patience—I have lost all patience (طاقتم طاق شده است) He has not much patience (مرد کم حوصله) ۳۶

Patter—The rain went patter patter (باران بنای شراق شراق نهاد) He began to patter flash (به اصطلاح دزدان حرف زدن گرفت)

Pattern—This is a pretty pattern (این طرح قشنگی ...) He is a pattern of virtue (در تقوی محل تقلید هر کس است)

Pay—This plan does not pay (این تدبیر اکتفا نمی کند) Who pays the piper (مرد کار کیست که از عهده بر می آید) Nunky pays for all (بار همه را فلانی بر می دارد) I am going to pay you out (از همه مواخذه می گیرم) He paid the debt of nature a few days ago (چندی پیش از این لبیک اجابت گفت) He paid through the nose for this horse (این اسب را بقیمت بیرون از وهم و گمان بخرید)

Peace—I have no peace night or day (نه روز آرام دارم و نه شب خواب) He got peace of mind (دلش بجا آمد) They leave me no peace (آرامم نمی دهند) She held her peace (خاموش ماند)

Pearls—Casting pearls before the swine (هر چه داند بهای قدر آئینه داشتن در مجلس کوران - و بدات)

Peep—He came at peep of day (در طلوع بهار بیآمد) I peeped through the hole (از سوراخ دزدیده نگاه می کردم).

Penny—Penny wise and pound foolish (درمی نگاه داشتن و دینارها پول سیاه دان و اشرفی میدان - خرج کردن) Thus I am able to turn an honest penny (به این طور می توانم درمی حلال بدست آرم)

Perfect—He said this in a perfect rage (باکمال تغیر این حرف را زد) He is a perfect fool (سرتا پا احمق است) The road was a perfect picture (راه مثل تصویر معلوم می شد).

Pick—He had the pick of the apple (بهترینها را تصاحب نمود) He picked a quarrel with me (با من درپی جنگ شد) You are now trying to pick holes in him (حالا در کردارش نکته گیری می کنی) I picked bone with him (با او جنگ برپا

کرم) The syrup you gave me is a capital pick-me-up (شربتي كه عنايت فرموديد عجب اسقم كن خوبي است) The were picking their neighbours to pieces (مشغول همسايكان ها شدند مي كردند) These manners are the pick of the basket (اين ادبها از همه بهتر است)

Pillar—He was a pillar of strength for his friend (براي دوستش خود تكيه گاهي قوي بود) The pillars of state were assembled in the audience hall (اعيان دولت در ديوان خانه فراهم آمدند)

Pinch—He did it at a pinch (در وقت ضرورت بجا آورد) When the pinch came he failed (وقتيكه صدمه آمد سست شد) Times were hard and pinched him (ايام سخت بود و او را صدمه رسانيد) No one was pinched for room (جا بر كسي تنگ نشد) It is here that the shoe pinches (اينجاست كه موضع تنگ مي شود) The wearer knows where the shoe pinches (پاي آسوده نداند كه دل خسته چه باشد)

Pink—He is the pink of fashion (جسم سليقه است كمالش سرمشق است)

Place—He is too big for his place (علو او ارفع است از مقامش) It took its place (جايش را گرفت) He keeps everything in its place (هر چيزي را در جاي خود مي گذارد) I placed money at interest (پول به منفعت دادم) Anxiety gave place to hope of success (بجاي اضطراب اميد فتح پديدار شد)

Play—He did it in play (بطور لغو بجاي آورد) Give him play (بكارش دار فرصتش ده) You are playing me false in this business (در اين كار مرا گول مي خورانيد) Are you going to play truant (آيا مي خواهي از زير كار در روي) His memory played him tricks (حافظه اش گولش زد) You were playing

a part last evening (شام گذشته در رنگي مي كردي). It is mere child's play (مثلِ بازيِ كودكان آسان است) They played us fast and loose (با ما تلوّن بكار بردند)

Please—He is hard to please (او مشكل پسند است). Just as you please (اختيار با شما است). He is as pleased as Punch (خيلی خوشنود شد) I was very pleased to see him (از ديدنِ او بسيار خوشحال شدم). I could not have the pleasure of seeing you (نتوانستم خدمتِ شما برسم) He gave himself up to pleasure (بساطِ نشاط گسترد)

Plump—He spoke plump out (بی محابا سخن گفت - بی پرده بر زبان راند) He plumped for that candidate (صوتِ انتخابِ خودرا در بارهٔ آن طالب امتياز داد)

Pocket—He pocketed the affront (تحمّلِ اهانت نمود) He put his hand in his pocket (از جيبِ خود خرج كرد) Put your pride into your pocket for the time (حالا نخوتِ خويش را يكسو نهاں) He was not out of pocket (زيانِ پول نكشيده بود)

Point—He could not catch the point of this epigram (نكتهٔ اين كلام را فهميدن نتوانست) This affair presents itself from two points of view (اين كار دو شق دارد) He made a point of doing it (آنرا چيزِ عمده ساخت). He is always straight to the point (هرگز خروش دوتا نمي شود). My point is this (مقصدم اينست) He spoke out point blank in my face (رو بروي من آشكارهٔ گفت) She carried her point (به مطلبِ خويش برسيد) My answer is very much to the point (جواب من بسيار بامحل است). He quoted instances in point from the history of Persia (از تاريخِ ايران امثالِ اين واقعه را ايراد نمود)

Poor—This is a poor excuse (این عذر ضعیفي است) He is poor [است (تنگ) دستش حالي] This is poor pay (این مزد مثل موشهاي (کم است) They are as poor as church mice (کلیسا سخت بیندرا و تهي دست الد)

Position—The position is this (صورت حال اینست) I assumed a position of antagonism (وضع مخالفت پیش گرفتم) He is a man of position (مرد صاحب مرتبه است) He is in a position to know it (موقع دارد که این را بداند) You presume on your position (شما بر منصب خود تکیه مي کنید)

Possible— Is it possible (آیا ممکن است) ? If this be possible for him he will do it (اگر دستش بیاید آنرا بکند) It was not possible (امکان نداشت) He went away as quickly as possible (هرچه زود تر برفت)

Power—The violence of the heat deprived us of all power of doing any thing (شدّت گرما قدرت هیچ کار در ما نگذاشت) He is a power in the state (او رکني در دولت) He has no power over his tongue (دهنش لق است) The sun was powerful (آفتاب حدّت داشت). He was powerfully effected (بسدّت متأثّر گشت)

Practice—Practice makes perfect (تا کار نکني استاد نمي شوي) I am out of practice (مدتي دوري از کارم)

Praise—He gave him undue praise (بیزار بیجا لس چپاند) Praise is pleasing to fools (احمق را ستایش خود خوش مي آید) Self praise is no commendation (تعریف ز کردن بلند کنا را ک)

Presence—He was a man of good presence (مرد یک معتبري بود) He retained his presence of mind (عقل و هوش خود را برقرار داشت) Presentations were made (تعرّف بعمل آمد)

Press—He pressed him hard (هردو پایش را دریک کفش کردند) Do not press him [(پا پیش درو (مشو)]. For press of business I have no leisure (از کثرت مشغله هیچ فراغتی ندارم) They have sent a pressing invitation (دعوت با اصرار فرستاده اند)

Pretend—He pretended to be happy (سبیلش را چرب کرد) I made a pretence of piety (تقوی بعروحتم)

Price—Its selling price is one rupee (در قیمت یک روپیه فروخت می شود) They are all of one price (همهٔ اینها را قیمت یکی است) Every man has his price (هر مردیرا مقداریست)

Pride—Pride goes before destruction (تکبر عزازیل را خوار کرد)

Promise—It promises to be fine (آثار صاف شدن می نماید) The harvest promises well (حاصل خوب معلوم می شود) It is a promising day (روز خوبی خواهد بود). He is a promising youth (جوان امید بخشید)

Proof—It is put to the proof (در معرض امتحان در می آرند) His guilt is proved (تقصیر بر او ثابت است)

Pull—He had the pull of him (از وی غلبه کرد) The coach pulls up at a little inn (در کاروانسرای کوچکی کالسکه را مکث می کنند) He pulled through the punishment (زیر بار تادیب تن در نداد) I and your brother pulled to gether very well (من با برادرت بطریق یکرنگی بکار پرداختیم)

Purpose—He talks without purpose (بیخیال حرف می زند) For what purpose have you come here (اینجا از برای چه آمدهٔ)? He did it on purpose (به آهنگ خویش اینرا کرد)

Purse—They are very purse proud (ایشان مست دولتند) You

can t make a silk purse out of a sow s ear (روسای الرولی باشد
(حرص در کوه بوطی باشد)

Put—He was put about by this speech (این سخن بدش آمد)
I am very sore put to it (از این بغایت پریشان هستم) I was
never so put to it in my life (من هرگز در زندگیم با چنین مشکلی
برنخوردم) He felt exceedingly put out (بسیار ملول گشت)
I wish you would put in a word for him (میخواهم برای چنین
اسانرا کلامی چند بگوئی) He put them off with promises
با وعدهٔ اسنده طفره رد) She put on her new dress (لباس نوش را
پوشید) I put up with my uncle (با عمم منزل کرده ام)
This is a put up affair (این اختراع است). He could not put up
with such bad treatment (چنین سلوک بدی را تاب نتوانست آورد

Qualification—This description needs qualification (این بیان
اصلاح لازم دارد)

Quality—He has many good qualities صفات حسنهٔ بسیاری دارد
He is a person of quality (مرد عالی منشی است) The
quality never act like this (بزرگان هرگز چنین حرکت نکنند)

Quantity—These were brought in quantities (به بسیاری آورده
شد) The quantity is better than quality (کمیت بهتر از کیفیت
است)

Quarter—They came quarter of an hour before (ربع ساعت پیشتر
آمدند) The vanquished soldiers sought quarter (سربازان
مغلوب زنهار طلبیدند) I gave him quarter (او را زنهار دادم)

Queer—I feel very queer (حالم بسیار بد است) It looks like
queer street (کوچهٔ زشتی می نماید)

Question—He came in with the ring in question (با انگشتری که

(دگر شد داخل اطاق گشت) There are two sides to the question (مادہ شق دارد) This is out of the question (این خارج مسئلهٔ است) This is the burning question of the day (این مسئلهٔ وقتی است که باهر کس و ناکس تعلق دارد)

Quick—It cut him to the quick (به او تأثیر بسیار کرد)

Quit—Quit yourself like men (مردانگی نمائید) Now we are quits (حال حسابمان پاک است)

Race—The race is not always to the swift (سگ رو همیشه گوی ردریا می گشد مسابقه نبرد) Slow and steady wins the race (صیاد دام آهسته آهسته)

Rag—They are in rags and tatters (ژنده پوش اند) This is not worth a rag (این به پاره نمی ارزد) I am in rags (من پاره پوشم)

Rage—This is all the rage (این تکلی رواج دارد) The plague was raging in the town (وبا در شهر متزلی شد)

Range—This is not within my range (این در ادارهٔ من نیست) He took a wide range (مدرع بعیدی قصد کرد)

Rank—He rose from the ranks (از مرتبهٔ پست ترقی نمود) He has neither rank, knowledge, nor spirit (پشم در کلاه ندارد). This is rank nonsense (این سخن حماقتی که ما فوق ندارد)

Rap—He did not promise a rap (یک پوش وعده نکرده است) This is not worth a rap (این یک پشیز نمی ارزد) He rapped out a great oath at his foot-man (بر سر خدمتگارش تندی سوگند بزرگی تقریر نهاد)

Rare—This is a rare book (این کتاب نایاب است) He is a rare nuisance (خیلی عذاب می دهد)

Rattling—He made a rattling good speech (نطق خوبی کرد)

Read—I can read his character (من خلقش او را میفهمم) It reads thus (فارسی چنین است) He reads daily with a master (هر روز پیش استاد می خواند)

Ready—I have no ready money at present (حالا پول نقد ندارم) He made ready for battle (آماده جنگ کرد) He is ready with his pen (هنر است با قلم خوش) Breakfast is ready (ناهار حاضر است)

Reckon—He reckons without his host (تنها بدمی ی رود) I reckoned on him as a supporter (بی تکیه بر حمایتش داشتم) I cannot reckon on him (بی اوی مطمئن نیستم)

Recover—He recovered his senses (بعقلش باز آمد)

Refuse—He refuses to go (ابا از رفتن می کند) I will no refuse you (از شما مضایقه نمیکنم)

Rein—He gave the reins to his imagination (خیال را ول کرد)

Relation—Relations are strained (با هم میانه بد است) England has diplomatic relations with Persia (انگلستان با ایران معاملات دیپلماتیک دارد) They have suspended relation between them (از یکدیگر قطع مراوده کردند)

Request—He did this at my request (بخواهش من اینرا کرد) He is in great request (او خیلی طالب است)

Resort—The last resort is the sword (علاج آخری شمشیر است) He resorted to deceit (متمسک شد بفریب)

Respect—He is not respected (محترم نیست) He respects the Sabbath (روز سبت را نگاه می دارد) I paid my respects to the Prince (بحضور شاهزاده مشرف شدم) He has a respectable exterior (ظاهرش آراسته است) He is

no respecter of of persons (ملاحظهٔ اشخاص نمی کند - طاهر بین) Present my respects to him (دعائی دیدار نوی برسان) [illegible]

Responsible—He is responsible for damages (باید از عهدهٔ غرامت در آید) The responsibility rests on you (مسئولیت بر [illegible] واقع است)

Rest—We rested a while (قدری راحت کردیم) He cannot rest any where (هیچ جا قرار نمی تواند بگیرد) The matter rests with you (اختیارشرا دارید) He will never rest content (هرگز راضی نخواهد شد)

Return—His business gives a small return (شغلش کم فائده است) He made no return for this kindness (تشکر برای این التفات [illegible]) He returned a rude answer (جواب ناتراشیده بار داد)

Reverse What reverses I have experienced (چها بر سرمن گذشت) He reversed the decision (قضای خود را [illegible] کرد)

Rhyme—This is without rhyme or reason (این نه موزون است و نه معقول)

Rich—This is a rich joke (این شوخي خوش مزه است) Persian is a rich language (زبان فارسی خیلی وسیع است) That was very rich (آن خیلی مزه داشت) The kingdom was rich in statesmen (ملکی بود پر از ارباب سیاست) He is as rich as a Jew (دولت قارون دارد)

Rid—Get me rid of this man (شر این مرد را از سرمن دور کن) The king got rid of the minister (پادشاه وزیررا زیرآب کرد)

Right—Who will put that mystery to rights (که آن امر [illegible] را واضح گرداند) He is my right arm (یار شاطرم است) I sent him to the right about (با عدم رعایت رسومات اورا مرخص نمودم)

His heart is in the right place (مردیی با وفا و راست دل است) He gave up his rights in favour of his nephew (طرف پسر برادر خود را نگاه داشته از حقوق خویش دست بردار شد) They deemed it right (صوابش دانستند)

Risk—He ran a great risk (خود را در خطر عظیم انداخت) I spoke to him at the risk of my life (دست از جان شسته با او حرف زدم) Risk not, gain not (تا جان در مخاطره نهی بر دشمن ظفر نیابی)

Road—There is no royal road to learning (تحصیل علم بی زحمت نمی شود) Go back by the same road as you have come (از همین راه که آمدید پس برو) He is on the road to fortune (در طریق سعادت است)

Rob—This is robbing Peter to pay Paul (این از پس کلاس و بر سبیل پسکی است)

Rod—Spare the rod and spoil the child (جور استاد به از مهر پدر)

Room—There was no room (جا نبود) There is no room for doubt (محل شک نیست) This house is full of rooms (این خانه پرحجره است)

Root—Avarice is the root of all evil (در آرد طمع مرغ و ماهی به بند بدوزد طمع دیدهٔ هوشمند) He bears a rooted prejudice against every thing foreign (هرچه از ملت غیر باشد از آن تعصب مدام دارد)

Rough—He did the rough of the work (سختیهای کار را بجا آورد) I roughed it for years (سالها سال درشتیها می کشیدم) He is a rough diamond (در پوست درشت دل نیک دارد) He licked her with the rough side of his tongue (بدش گفت)

Round—Give me a round sum (مبلغ وافر بمن بده) They

stood all round the table (هرطرفِ میز ایستادند) This is a round about excuse (این عذرِ بی سبب است).

Row—What is the row (این چه معرکه است) He picked up a great row (هنگامهٔ عظیمی برپا کرد).

Rub There's the rub (مشکل اینجا است)

Ruin—The buildings have fallen in ruins (عمارتها منهدم شده است) They are going to ruin him (پا در کفشش کرده اند) They are ruined (اوجاق شان کور شد)

Run—My money has run short (پولم تمام شده است) I am run out of paper (کاغذ در دستم نیست) The deer has been run to earth (گورن را گرفتند) He is not superior to the common run of people (در مردمانِ عمومیه هیچ موقیت ندارد) He ran through his whole fortune (تمامی دولتِ خود را بذل کرد). In Persia every body's head runs on power (در ایران هرشخص در پیِ قدرت و جاه باشد) He ran the rig upon me (گولم زد). I ran through the book (کتابرا بسطر راندم) The lease has run out (مدتِ اجارهٔ تمام شده است)

Rush—His friendship is not worth a rush (دوستیش بقدرِ پیزر نمی ارزد)

Sacrifice—He sold this at a great sacrifice (با خسارتِ زیاد این را بفروخت). His life was a sacrifice for others (حیاتش در خدمتِ دیگران صرف شد)

Sad Why should I be sad (چه راه دارد که تأسف بخورم)? He looks sad (اندوهش آویخته است) This was a sad mistake (این غلطِ شدیدی بود) Your son is a sad dog (پسرت لوطیِ مجسم است)

Sands—His sands are just run out (عروس آفتاب سرکوهست)
This is a mere rope of sand (چیزي محض بی مادة است)

Scape-goat—He was the scape-goat in this matter (در این مادة سنگ رویخ بود)

Scorn—Scorn commonly comes with scathe (کی نقصانِ مایه و دیگر شماتتِ همسایه)

Scratch – He could not come to the scratch (طاقتِ معابله نداشت
I am the fellow to bring you up to the scratch (من آنم که ترا بعزیمتِ کار بردارم)

Screw—There is a screw loose in his intellect (عصالي در هوشش راه یافته است) He is an old screw (مردکهٔ بخیل است)
Screw your courage to sticking place (با پُر دلي آمادهٔ کار باش)
They screwed money from him (ازوي پول جلب نمودند)

Sea—I was at sea to see him there (بود در آنجا یافته در بحرِ حیرت غوطه زده بودم) My brother has gone beyond the sea (برادرم به آن طرفِ دریا رفته است)

Season—He made many enemies by his remarks in season and out of season (و بیگاه کلمه پردازي نموده بسیاري را دشمن خود گردانید) Orange is not in season now (ال نارنگي در رفت نیست) His words are out of season (هنهاس بیجا است) He seasons punishment with mercy (عقوبت را با رحمت مي آمیزد) He did not season him with these ideas (اورا به این افکار آمادهٔ کار نساخت)

Secret—There is some secret in the matter (کاسه زیر نیم کاسه است)

See—I see through it (بر من پوشیده نیست) He cannot see an inch before his face (بسیار بی بصیرت است) I hope w

shall see one another to morrow (فردا انشاء الله ملاقات خواهد شد) He has seen better days (حالتش بهتر بود). She saw to every thing (هر چیز را نگاه داشت) He went out to see his sister off (بیرون رفت تا همشیرهٔ خودش را بوقت روانگی خدا حافظ بگوید)

Send—He sent to enquire (فرستاد که معلوم نماید). He sent him off in order to get rid of him (دست بسرش کرد) I sent him about his own business (در پی کار خودش بفرستم)

Serve—I will serve him out (بسزاش برسانم) His connection with the press serves our turn (تعلقش با اصحاب قلم بکار ما می خورد) The guns were well served (توپها خوب بکار برده شدند)

Set—They made a set at him (حمله کردند به او) They set about their work in earnest (با عزم تمام بکار خود شان پرداختند) He set his face against the whole scheme (همه تدبیر را با ثبات رای مخالفت نمود) He set up for an honest man (خود را با دیانت قلم داد) Set a thief to catch a thief (شغال بیشهٔ مازندران را نگیرد جز سگ مازندرانی) His neighbours set little by him (همسایگانش اورا بچشم حقارت می دیدند) The fathers have eaten sour grapes and the children's teeth are set on edge (ظالم ظالم درسر اولاد ظالم می رود)

Shatter—He shattered their hopes (امید ایشان را برهم زد) I tore his arguments to shatters (حجتهای اورا ازهم دریدم)

Shoulder—I gave him the cold shoulder (با او تغافل ورزیدم) He put his shoulder to the wheel (بکارش چسپید). They took him by the shoulder (کولش گرفتند)

Show—He made a show of going (چنان نمود که گویا می رود)

He made a great show of learning (اظهار دانش زیادی نمود) I showed both of them the door (هر دو را بدر کردم) He showed me in (اندرون خانه را بم نمود) Be careful lest we show you up (اظهار بواء طشت از بام می افکند)

Shut—Shut up (حرفی نزن) ! I completely shut him up (شکست فاحش دادمش اورا مجاب کردم) To shut the stable door after the steed is stolen (بعد از مردن سهراب نوش دارو)

Side—The players form two sides (اشخاص بازی کن دو قسمت می شوند) It is a side issue (مطرح بحثالست طریق لهفله است) He did this by a side wind (این کار را درنباله کرد) You will put on all the side you please when outside the office (بیرون از اداره هرچه خواهی دماغت را بالا کن)

Sight—They fell in love at first sight (در بادی نظر عاشق یکدیگر شدند) It extends out of sight (تا چشم به انتهای آن نمی رسد) It is one of the sights of the world (از جاهای دیدنی دنیا است) This bill is payable at sight (این برات سریع الاداست) I bought a sight of furniture (مقداری اثاث خانه بکلی خریدم)

Silence—Silence gives consent (سکوت علامت رضا است) Silence is wisdom when speaking is folly (در جهر طبرا عقل است نه مرد بسلی برلتی کلکی و لفکی اوست خاموشی)

Sinecure—This task is no sinecure (این عمل کاری بی رنج نیست)

Sink—His spirit sank within him (روحش دردی فرو مرد) They sank their differences (اختلافات خود را دفع نمودند)

Sit—We sat down with a blank (ما با رقعهٔ ساده مقاومت کردیم) Her own maid should sit up for her (خادمهٔ او باید به انتظار او بیدار بماند) I was sitting on thorns (بر خارها می نشستم)

Six—There is six of one and half a dozen of the other (چه علی حواجه و چه حواجه علی) All went to sixes and sevens (همه چیزها تارمار افتاده بود).

Skin—The miser would skin a flint (سرداگرپنیر در قوطي شیشه می حورد) He escaped only by the skin of his teeth (چیزي نمانده بود که تصدق دشود) I saved both my skin and credit (پوست حودم و نیز اعتبارم را نگاه داشتم)

Slap—He received a slap (تراق حورد) I went slap-dash at it (یکباره بسویش روان شدم)

Sleep—Sleep overpowered him (حوابش برد) Do not awaken sleeping dogs (فتنه در حواب است بیدارش مکن) The sleeping fox catches no poultry (خرِ مرده حو نمی حورد) I am sleepy (حوابم گرفت)

Slight—We had a slight meal (حوراکِ مختصري حورديم) A slight loss is a great one to a poor man (در خانهٔ مور شبنمی طوفان)

Smack—Smack went the whip and the carriage rattled on (قمچی را تراق زدند و کالسکه را حلنگ راندند) This smacks of idleness (این بوي کسالت دارد)

Smell—It smells nice (حوب بوئي دارد). He smelt a rat (بد مظنه شد)

Snap—He snaps his fingers at me (انگشت بمن می رساند) The rope snapped in the middle (ریسمان در میانش بگسیخت) He is snappish (خشم آلود می شود)

Sore—Every sore has its salve (هر دردي را درمانیست) It is a sight for sore eyes (راحتِ چشم است)

Sort—He is out of sorts (در مزاجش تعاقلی عارض شده است) All sort and conditions of men were present (همهٔ اصناف ملل حاضر بیامدند) She is a good sort of woman (زنکِ خوبیست) He has a sort of house (قسم خانهٔ دارد)

Sound—This sounds dishonest (بوی ناراستی می دهد) He sleeps soundly (خوب خواب می رود) I thrashed him soundly (اورا تازیانهٔ معقولی زدم) The punishment was soundly awarded (تنبیه معقولی صورت گرفت) He breathes soundly (سالمانه نفس می کشد) He was fond of the sound of his own voice (صوت خودش بگوشش خوش صدا بود) Empty vessels sound much (طبل تهی بانگ بلند)

Sow—As you sow so shall you reap (کونی هرس آمدنی بدس)

Speak—Do not speak all at once (همه به یک حول حرف نزنید) Speak when you are spoken to (سخن تا نپرسند لب بسته دار) This speaks volumes in his favour (این برهانِ بزرگی است بمساعدت او) They have no institutions of their own to speak of (هیچ اطراقی ندارند که قابلِ ذکر باشد)

Spend—The time is far spent (وقت منقضی شده است) I will spend the evening with you (امشب در خدمتِ شما می باشم)

Sponge—He threw up the sponge (سپر انداخت)

Spur—He spoke on the spur of the moment (حسبِ اتقاقِ وقت و معارضِ حال بگفت) He has won his spurs (بر مقصد خود سوار است)

Spy—He has come as a spy (آمده است چشم و گوشی آب بدهد) You spied on us (بکمینِ ما بودید)

Stand—I take my stand upon this (من بر اساس ایستاده می شوم) How do matters stand (حال بر چه منوال است) ? Some are

standing, some fallen (بعضی برپا است و برخي افتاده) He has no standing in the matter (اورا در این فقره دخلي نیست) I am the man to stand by you in trouble (من آن مردم که در حالت گرفتاري یاور باشم) Don't stand in this poor man's light (مانع راه پیشرفت این بیچاره مباش) I stood in need of a comfortable dinner (حاجت خوراک شکم سیر داشتم) He always stands out (همیشه از هر کاري حرفي مي دارد) It may stand me in good stead some day (وقتي بکار من خواهد خورد)

Star—His star is in the ascendant (اخترش در برج سعادت است) He is an ill-starred fellow (مردکهٔ بدطالع است)

Stick—He is a regular old stick (آدمي بي کار و بیکاره است) Stick to your own work (مشغول کار خود باش) He stuck by his word (بوعدهٔ خویش قایم ماند)

Stone—He left no stone unturned (کاري نبود که نکرد) He is stone blind (کور مطلق است) You are now possessed of the stone-throwing spirit (اکنون دیوي عیب‌جوئي بر تو مستولي شده است)

Stool—To fall between two stools (دو هندوانه در یک بغل نگنجد)

Store—Store is no sore (کنج رنج نیست) She set store by that picture (آن صورت را خیلي عزیز مي داشت) Ills are in store for him (بلاها برایش ذخیره کرده)

Straw—A straw shows which way the wind blows (سالي که نکوست از بهارش پیداست)

Stretch—Stretch your legs according to your coverlet (پا به اندازهٔ گلیم دراز کن) He went ten yards at a stretch (ده دراع راه یک کشه مي رفت)

Strike—He was struck with lightning (برقش زد) I was

much struck with his arguments (از وي بسيار متأثر گشتم) It struck him in the eye (به او برخورد)

Study—He was in a deep study (فرق مطالعه بود) Where have you studied (شما كجا تحصيل كرديد). He is in a brown study (حالش مصروف بجاي ديگر است)

Swallow—One swallow does not make a summer (از يك پرستك بهار نمي شود)

Swim—My head swam (سرم مي گردد سرم بر مي خورد) The country swam with blood (ولايت مالامال خون گرديد)

Table—He keeps a good table (سفرهٔ خوبي مي چيند) He turned the tables on my brother (الزام خود را بگردن برادرم انداخت)

Take—I took the necessary measure (اقدامات لازمه بكار بردم) What sum will you take (چه مبلغ خواهيد گرفت) ? I took him for his brother (من او را برادرش فهميدم) He takes to this kindly (از اين خوشش مي آيد) He took up Mathematics (رياضيات بدست گرفت) Take your time (تأني كنيد) The ladies took the cue and went way (خانمها اشاره را فهميده برفتند) He took to the road (راه را پيش گرفت) The letter took hold of my imagination (كاغذ به خيالم مي گرديد) He took himself off (فرار كرد) I took him to task (مؤاخذه كردم) He took upon him the management of the affair (انتظام كار را بر خود لازم دانست)

Talk—There is a talk of this (سخن از اين است) He was much talked about (در بارهٔ او بسيار گفتگو شد) It was mere talk (محض حرف بود) He is in the habit of talking to himself (او خود بخود حرف مي زند)

Tar They are all tarred with the same brush or stick (همه را از یک مار گزیده اند)

Taste—He has tasted gain (دندانش خونی شده است) I have a nasty taste in my mouth (دهانم تلخ کرده است) He acts according to his taste (بذوق خود کار می کند)

Temper—He was put out of temper (کوک شد) You have lost your temper (خر آمده) Your brother said thus in a fit of temper (برادرت در عین حالت تند مزاجی چنین گفت) He tempers justice with mercy (بطور مرحمت عدالت می نماید)

Term—His terms are high (هواش بلند است) I am on good terms with him (از وی خوب اتفاق دارم) They are not on good terms with one another (باهم دگر خوب نی تند) He kept to his own terms (بر عهد خود ثابت بود)

Thick—He was in the thick of it (در جای عین خطر گیر آمده بود) The plot thickens (فتنه در ازدیاد است) We would stand by that boy through thick and thin (هرچه سرد و گرم برسر آن کودک بگذرد ما یاوری باشیم)

Thing—It is the same thing (یکی است) Don't talk big things (دم تعلیق حرج مده) Things are constantly changing (یکی همی رود و دیگری همی آید) Where energy was the thing he was energetic enough (جائی که جدوجهد لازم بود او نیز کوشش بلیغ می نمود) I see, you know a thing or two (می بینم که از چاه و راه خبردار هستید) He made a good thing of his profession as a tailor (از پیشهٔ خیاطی خیلی صرفه بهم رسانید)

Think—You think a great deal of yourself (تو بخاطرت که خیلی چیز

خلاصه سرپستگر [illegible] You have the pith of this in a nutshell (فصلي [illegible]) I think no end of him (مرتب و خیال ثاني نام) He thought better of his determination (مرجع خود و لسن [illegible] لسد)

Thread—He lost the thread of his matter ([illegible] رشته) Ruin hangs [illegible] over him ([illegible] فضلی رشته [illegible] می کرد)

Throw—We threw dust over the eyes of the people ([illegible]) I am not going to throw you over (نمی خواهم از سر [illegible]) He threw himself into the business ([illegible] مصروف کار شد)

Tide—We tided over the difficulty ([illegible]) Time and tide wait for no man ([illegible] نمی ماند)

Time—A stitch in time saves nine ([illegible]) Time is precious ([illegible]) The times are changed ([illegible]) He took time by the forelock (زمام وقت را بچنگ داشت) There is a time for all things (هر چیزی را وقتی است) This is a long time since I have seen you ([illegible]) The time is over ([illegible] و آن پیمانه رفت) The chief timed his movements (سردار حرکات خود را بر حسب وقت مرتب داد) He visits us from time to time (گاه‌بگاه بملاقات ما می آید) He did not play in time (بهنگام حرکت نکرد) I had been there some time before (چندی قبل آنجا بودم) The time passed very pleasantly (بسیار خوش گذشت)

Tit—Tit for tat (درکسي مزن ده انگشت تا نزند در تو مشت)

Tone—Exercise gives a tone to the body (حرکت بدن را قوت مي دهد) He spoke in a pleasing tone (کلامش دوائي تمرع داشت). The tone of society here is bad (طرزِ جمعيتِ اينجا بد است). The picture is wanting in tone (تصويربي حالتي است)

Tongue—Hold your tongue (خاموش) ! He cannot control his tongue (زبانِ او در حكمش نيست)

Too—He is too kind (التفاتِ زياد دارد). Too many cooks spoil the broth (قابله چون دو شود سرِ بچه کج شود)

Tool—He made a tool of him (او را مثلِ وسيلهٔ قرار داد) A bad workman quarrels with his tools (حيله جو را ترانه بسيار)

Touch—It was a touch and go (کار بدم رسيده بود) He touched lightly upon this (قدري اشاره بدين باب کرد) The argument touches upon this (بحثي در اين مي رود). It touched him to to the quick (زياد در وي اثر کرد) He is quite in touch with his subordinates (با زير دستانِ خود همراهي دارد)

Trade—Trade is bad (بازار کاسد است) Every trade has its tricks (نادرا از نادرا بايد خريد) Their trade was spoilt (عملِ آنها کساد شد) Two of a trade seldom agree (بود هم پيشه با هم پيشه دشمن)

Trap—He is caught in his own trap (چاه کن را چاه در پيش)
She understands trap (زن بيدار هوش است)

Tree—I am completely up a tree this time (اکنون گير آمده ام)
You can't see the wood for the trees (چندان سمن است که ياسمن پيدا نيست)

Trick—The children are tricked out in gay garments (بچه هارا

(با لبا الي زنگارنگ بيازسند) He has played me a trick (بازی در آورد از برای من) What new trick have you invented (حه کرک و کلک بازهم آوردید)

Trip—He was tripped up (پاهاش را لغسک زداد) I will trip you (زردهاي ترا بپاشت مي بیچم)

Trouble—It is not worth the trouble (برحملش نمي ارزد) Do not trouble yourself about these things (از این چیزها احتیاط مکنید) I will trouble you to do this (زحمت کشیده اینرا بکنید)

True—He has a true eye (نظرش خوب است) He is a friend as true as steel (دوستي است همه تن وفا)

Truth—Truth seeks no corner (آنرا که حساب پاک است از محاسبه چه باک) Truth may be blamed but it never shall be shamed (راستي را زوال کي باشد)

Turn—Turn and turn about turn about is fair play (آسا و بسا), Let us make another turn (یک چرخ دیگر هم بزنیم) Have a turn at this (زوري به این بنمائید) It is my turn (دور من است) My father turned me out of doors (پدرم از خانه بدرم کرد) Turn to the right (طرفِ دستِ راست برو) We must see how it will turn out (باید دید چه مي شود) All your arguments turn upon this (دلائلِ شما همه بر این برمي گردد) They turned him to his side (دمس را بدیدند) The tidings turned out to be correct (آوازها در آخر راست بیامد) He has turned up a trump (خود را مردِ معقولي ثابت کرد) He turned a deaf ear to our entreaties (التماس مارا بگوشِ خود جا نداد) This vast wealth has entirely turned my head (این دولتِ

(وریع مستم گردانید) He would turn them to good account (ار آنها افادهٔ حواهد نمود). He turned upon twenty friends (ار دوستان بسیار رخ حود را برگردانید) I tried to do him a good turn (کوشیدم تا نوعی حدمتِ حوبی بکنم)

Union—Union is strength (دو دل یک شود بشکند کوه را)

Untold—He has untold wealth (دولتِ بیشمار دارد)

Upset—He was upset (دلگیر شد) He upset their designs (حیالِ ایشان را برهم زد) He upset the apple-cart (کارِ حود را بهم زد)

Us—He is not one of us (او یکي ارماها نیست) If God be for us, who can be against us (اگر یار اهل است کار سهل است) ?

Use—It is of no use (لائقِ هیچ کار نیست) Of what use is all this (اینها چه لازم است) He makes the best use of his time (وقتِ حود را پاکیزه صرف مي کند) It is much used for this (حیلي بیش تر این کار بکار مي رود)

Veil—He drew a veil across the transaction (پرده بر روي کار افکند) This was merely a veil (این بس بهانهٔ بود) She took the veil (راهبه گشت)

Vent—He had no vent for his energies (مصرحي براي قواي حود نداشت) He gave vent to his feelings (افکارِ حود را روي دائره ریحت)

Vex—Do not vex me (کوششِ بدنم را بریز) I am very much vexed at this (ار این سبب اوقاتم تلخ شد)

Victim—He is the victim of delusion (او بیچارهٔ فریب است)

Virtue—Virtue is its own reward (ثواب راه بسانهٔ حود مي برد) She is a lady of easy virtue (پارچه اش حوب است)

Vivid—He depicted the subject in vivid colours (مطلب را بصورت حرفي در آورد) He has a vivid imagination (عكس روس است)

Voice—He has a good voice (حرس اواز است) It is again the public voice (بر خلاف افكار عمو مه است)

Vote—They voted him a nuisance (اظهار معرفه لسدلند در باره وي) They voted the estimate (اسباب مقيه را اجرا كرىلند) The meeting dispersed with a vote of thanks to the chair (مجلس از هم پاشيد بعد از تقديم سكر صدر مجلس)

Vox—Vox populi vox dei (زبان خلق نقارة خدا)

Wait—Wait till he comes up (صبر بكنيد تا بيايد) He waited for an opportunity (در صدد فرصت بود) He is waiting to g (معطل است مي خاهد برود) My brother waited upon the Prince (برادرم خدمت شاهزاده را نمود)

Wall—Walls have ears (ديوار هم گوش دارد)

Water—He threw cold water to this undertaking (بر اين عزم دست و پاي سرد را بطور اهانه حرف مي زد) He is in a deep water (ا كم كرد است) This is a gem of the first water (اين جوهر بسيار آبدار است) This won t hold water (اين اثبات بطير لست)

Way—I do not know the way (بلد نيستم) This is not the proper way of writing (اين قاعدة نوشتن نيست) My affairs are in a bad way (كار من بسيار اختلال دارد) He is established in a good way in London (در لندن كامياب و فرخنده حال شارك بطور است) Make way there for the Prince (شاهزاده را به آنجا راه بدهيد) He gave way to tears (از گريه خود داري نتوانست)

Welcome—He welcomed the proposal (افكار ايشان از سمع رضا

پدیرفت) Welcome the coming, speed the parting guest (هرکه آید گو بیا و هرکه رود گو برو)

What—What cannot be cured must be endured (عرق شده را بعریاد چه سود) What is that to you (ترا چه کار) ? What is all this (این دیگر چه اوصاع است)

Wheel—There are wheels within wheels (زیر کاسه نیم کاسه است)

Wide—There is a wide difference (اختلاف بزرگي است) He is wide awake (دسیار زرنگ و چالاک است)

Will—Where there's a will, there's a way (پرسان پرسان مي توان رفت تا چین) He must bear the consequences of his action, will he nill he (خواه حواسته خواه ناحواسته نتائج کار حود را باید بکشید)

Wind—He has no wind (نفس برده است) There is something in the wind (کاسه زیر نیم کاسه است) This shows which way the wind blows (ظاهر عنوان باطن است) He got wind of the amount given (از مقدار نقد داده شده اطلاع یافت)

Wisdom—Wisdom alone is age (بزرگي بعقل است نه بسال)

Wit—He was at his wit's end how to act (عقل حود را گم کرده بود که چه مي کند) He sharpened his wits on the school of experience (در مکتب تجربه فهم حود را تیز گردانید)

Word—A word to the wise (عاقل را اشاره بس است) Words once spoken cannot be recalled (تیري که از کمان بیرون جست در نمي گردد) His word is as good as his bond (وعدهٔ او مانند پیمان اوست) You and I never had a word (من و تو هرگز در نزاع نبودیم)

Worst—They did their worst against him (بدنش را از گور در آوردند) Do your worst, I care not (بعد از این سر دار بفرست).

SECTION IV

Specimen Letters.

CHAPTER I

Letters of Invitation.

(1)

رقعهٔ دعوت برای مهمانی

شنبه شهر صفر المظفر ۱۳۳

خدمت جناب مستطاب عمدة الاماثل والاعیان آقای آقا میرزا محمد تقی دام مجده عرض میشود   چون دوستی و محبت و التفات قلبی سرکار نسبت بمخلص بدرجهٔ کمال است در مقام جسارت برآمده زحمت میدهد   فردا که یوم ۲۲ ۱۲ است ساعت شش در بنده منزل با آقازادهٔ مکرم تشریف آورده مخلص را بصرف ناهار ممنون و متشکر سازید   امید است که فراموش نخواهند فرمود

دوست حقیقی شما محمد حسن

(2)

جواب رقعهٔ فوق بدین منوال است

هفتم شهر صفر ۱۳۳

خدمت جناب مستطاب عمدة التجار زبدة الاعیان والاشراف آقا میرزا محمد حسن دام مجده عرض میشود   مرحمت نامهٔ شریف که مشعر بر اظهار مرحمت و احضار دعوت خیر بجهت ناهار بود واصل گردید   از یاد آوری و التفات بی نهایت سرکار ممنون شدم   امید دارم که ساعت معین با نور چشمی بخدمت مشرف شویم از خداوند سلامتی وجود شریف را خواهانم   ایام عزت مستدام باد

دوست حقیقی شما محمد تقی

(3)

رقعهٔ معذرت

دوست عزیز مکرم   پس از اداء سلام و اظهار دعا گوئي معروض میدارد که محبت نامهٔ شریف در بهترین وقتي از اوقات رسید - از زیارتش قلبم مسرور و خورسند گردید - خیلي متأسفم که نمیتوانم دعوت جنابعالي را قبول کنم زیرا که جماعتي از دوستان را درهمان روز بباغ دلکشا وعدهٔ گرفته ام و ناچار باید در پذیرائي ایشان حاضر باشم و البته جنابعالي هم راضي نخواهند شد که خلاف عهد نمایم و عذر موجه بنده در درگاه پذیرفته و قبول خواهد شد - زیاده زحمتي ندارد -

مخلص شما محمد تقي

(4)

دعوتنامهٔ عقد نکاح

چون دوشنبه و میمنت فردا که پانزدهم شهر حال است مجلس عقد نورچشم عزیز آقا محمد علي در بندهٔ منزل منعقد میشود از مراتب الطاف سامي متوقعي است که روز مزبور ساعت ده تشریف ارزاني فرموده و بصرف شربت و شیریني بنده را قرین امتنان سازند - ایام عزت و سعادت مستدام باد -

(5)

دعوتنامهٔ عید مولود پیغمبر (صلعم)

پس فردا عید سعید میمنت نماید و میلاد شرافت بنیاد حضرت ختم انبیا و سید اصفیا علیه آلاف التحیة و الثناء میباشد که اعظم اعیاد مسلمین و مایهٔ افتخار قاطبهٔ مومنین است و مجلس تعظیم و تکریم آنروز شرافت اندوز در بندهٔ منزل مخلص تشکیل خواهد یافت - از مراحم کامله عالي استدعا دارد که از ساعت شش تشریف آورده و بقدوم مسرت لزوم خود ممنونم فرمائید -

زمان مسرت و خوشوقتي مستدام

(6)

دعوت شام

پس از عرض ارادت و خلوص و محبت الزا مصدع و خواهش میکند که فردا شب (لیلة الاحد سیم شهر حال) بقدوم میمنت لزوم خود بنده منزل را مزین و بصرف شام مزین امتثال فرمائید ایام مودت برقرار باد

(7)

جواب قبول

دعوتنامهٔ گرامی شرف وصول ٤ و باکمال میل مسرت و امتثال فردا شب بدرک حضور عالی کسب شرف و مسرت نموده و از حسن معاشرت سامی ١٢ ساعت خواهد شد ایام کامکاری ا

(8)

جواب اعتذار

خیلی متأسفم که دعوتنامهٔ سامی وقتی شرف وصول ارزانی نمود که یکی از دوستان بنده را در همانوقت دعوت کرده و قبول نموده ام از این جهت باوجودیکه کمال میل بمصاحبت عالی دارم نمیتوانم در این موقع کسب آن فیض بنمایم و امید دارم که عذر معقولانه ام را بشرف قبول تلقی خواهید نمود

زمان عزت مدام باد

(9)

دعوت ناهار

چون فردا که دوشنبه هفتم شهرحال است بعضی دوستان بمنزل بنده در خارج شهر تشریف می آورند و روز تعطیل را در آنجا میگذرانند از این جهت مناسب دیدم از جنابعالی نیز خواهش کنم که در صورت امکان فردا را آنجا تشریف آورده بملاقات جمعیت ملاقات و صرف ناهار مسرور و خوشوقتم فرمایند امید است که در صورتیکه بتوانند ما را از فیض خدمت خود محروم نسازند ایام عزت مدام باد

(10)

جواب قبول

مرقومهٔ محترمه الان زیارت شد و از اینکه باقتضای محبت و یگانگی بنده را بملاقات دوستان و صرف ناهار دعوت فرموده بودید نهایت امتنان دارم - فردا بخواست خدا شرفیاب گردیده از ملاقات جنابعالی و صحبت دیگر دوستان [illegible] و سرور خواهم نمود و امید دارم کاریکه باعث توقف حقیر در آنجا باشد رخ ندهد و بایفاء این وعده نایل شوم - زیاده تصدیع نمیدهد

(11)

جواب اعتذار

مراسلهٔ مودت و مواصلهٔ شریفه زینت ورود بخشید و دعوتی که برای صرف ناهار و دیدار احباء و دوستان فرموده بودید زائد الوصف مایهٔ تشکر خاطر گردید ولی باوجود کمال میل و شوقی که باستفاضه صحبت باسعادت و ادراک ملاقات رفقاً داشته و دارم بدبختانه کار مهمی در پیش آمده که فردا باید در شهر حاضر باشم و بانجام آن مشغول شوم - لهذا بانهایت تأسف امیدوارم که معذرت مرا قبول و بلطف عمیم خود عفو فرمائید - ایام یگانگی مستدام باد

(12)

جواب قبول دعوت نامهٔ اس..

جناب مستطاب اجل دوست مکرم مراسلهٔ گرامی بهجت وصول داد وعدهٔ [illegible] شبهٔ آتیه را خواسته بودید که صرف شام با جنابعالی بشود - باکمال مسرت وعده [illegible] خاطر دعوت جنابعالی پذیرفته و انشاء الله شب مزبور از درک مسرت صحبت جنابعالی محظوظ و مشعوف خواهم شد -

زیادة زحمت [illegible]

(13)

جواب اعتذار

قربانت شوم انشاء الله مزاج شریف جنابعالی قرین صحت و استقامت

است. دو سه روز قبل که حال جنابعالی پرسیدم و از آنجا خدمت جناب
قونسول صاحب رسیدم وعده دادم که امروز که عصر جمعه است خدمت ایشان برسم
حالیکه امروز روز تعطیل است و بنده اینجا بی شغلی کرده‌ام خیلی میل دارم
استدعا دارم که از طرف بنده جنابعالی عذر خواهی بفرمائید
باقی بزرگی حضرت است

(14)

دعوت نامه ۱ —

آقای محترم   با کمال احترام تصدیع اوقات عالی خاطر معرفت شعار عالی
میدارد که بتاریخ جمعه ۱ شهر محرم سنه ۳۲۹ چهار ساعت از دسته گذشته
در عمارت مدرسه سعادت صدوقلی رکن آقایان عارف ... و جوانان دانش پژوه
این شهر تشکیل خواهد شد که درباره ترویج که حیات ملک نفع عموم و انتشار معارف
و علوم مساعد ملاحظه گردد لهذا هیئت معارف از مقام منیع جنابعالی که
ملتمس است که در وقت معین بمحل مذکور تشریف آورده بر مسرت و بهجت
حضار بیفزایند و از حضور سعادت ... و آرا شرف ... آن محفل
فرخنده سبب شوند امید است که باجابت این دعوت ... سده ... را
قرین اعتنا فرمایند در این ضمن مراتب خلوص صمیمی خود را بجناب اطالب
عالی اعلام میکند

ایام سعادت ... و برقرار باد

CHAPTER II

Messages of Congratulation or Condolence.

(1)

تبریک نامهٔ امتیاز

اگرچه از طرف جنابعالي تا اکنون هیچ اظهاري نشده بود ولی جناب در
طي تحریرات خود اعلام فرموده‌اند که امتیاز معزز از طرف دیشرف اولیاي دولت
علیه بجنابعالي عطا گشته و این اوقات شرف وصول یافته است - اطلاع همچو
مژدهٔ بزرگي بي اندازه باعث مسرت در تدار و باعث اظهار این ارادت شعار
گردیده با نهایت سرور بجنابعالي تبریک و تهنیت میگویم و مسرت و ابتهاج خاطر
را از این مرحمت که بدست آن دوست توفیقي شده اشعار میدارم - امیدوار
چنانم که از حسن نیت و صدق عقیدتي که فطري جناب عظمتعالي است بمدارج
علیه ترقي فرموده و امتیازات رفیعه از دولت قویشوکت علیه حاصل نمائید
و نیز امید واثق دارم که این تبریکات خالصانهٔ ارادتمند را با نهایت مروت
بپذیرند - زیاده عرضي ندارم -

(2)

جواب رقعهٔ فوق

باوجودیکه خیلي شایق و راغب بودم که بعد از وصول امتیاز بهرچه زود تر
ممکن باشد خاطر مهر مظاهر عالي را در آن خصوص مستحضر و مسرور سازد
اما کثرت مشاغل مهمه طوري بود که موقع و مجال بدست نیامد - ولي حالاکه
رقیمهٔ مهر وثیقهٔ عالي رسیده با نهایت مسرت و خوشوقتي مراحم اوقات شریف
مي شوم و از آن همه اسباب صادقانه و تبریکات خالصانه که دلالت کامل در کمال
شفقت و نهایت مکرمت عالي داشته تشکر و امتنان مي نمایم و همان خیر خواهي
را که در رقیمهٔ گرامي نسبت بارادتمند اظهار فرموده بودند در حق ساعي ابراز
مي دارم - امیدوار چنانم که همواره وجود مسعود عالي بصحت و سلامت

مستدام از کسالت محفوظ بوده بکمال رفعت و جلال نائل باشد و بوسیله
باخبار سلامت حالت حضرت آنحضرت خاطر ارادتمند را قرین خوشوقتی و مسرت
فرمایند ایام مسرت و خوشوقتی مستدام باد

(3)

تبریک ورود بیکی از حکام

حضور جناب مستطاب اجل آقای   دامت شوکته

پس از عرض ارادت با کمال نهایت بورود مسعود سامی باصفهان را تبریک
و تهنیت می گویم و امیدوارم که از حسن توجهات عالی کلیه امور آن اطراف منظم
و اسباب رفاه عمومی بهترین وجهی فراهم شود در خدمات حاضرم

(4)

جواب تبریک نامه فوق

جناب فخامت نصاب عالی   دام اجلاله

ظاهراً لطف آمیز که دلالت بر محبت قلبی سامی می نمود رسید و خیلی
موجب امتنان گردید   امیدوارم همانطوریکه جنابعالی اظهار فرموده اید بخدمات
مفوضهٔ خود موفق شوم و آن مقصود عالی را بطوریکه آرزومند و شائق هستم
حاصل نمایم

(5)

تبریک ماموریت

خدمت ذیشوکت جناب مستطاب اجل آقای   دامت شوکته

از اینکه ر ۵ +ایالت حکومت بکفایت شخص شخیص سامی محول گشته نهایت
مسرت و خوشوقتی دارم و از صمیم قلب امیدوارم که این رتبهٔ جلیل و عهدهٔ ثقیل بر
جنابعالی مبارک باشد و آن اطراف از یمن حکومت ذات عالی بترقیات عالیه
و معموری نائل گردد

(6)

حواب تبریک نوروز

جناب مستطاب عالي آقاي دام اقباله -

مخابرهٔ عالي مشعر بر تبریک مأموریت مخلص واصل و از مراسم آداب داني و وفا و صفاي آن دوست معظم نهایت شعف حاصل گردید - من هم رجامندم چنانم که از توفیقات الهی بتوانم از انجام خدمات بر آمده کما ینبغي ذمه خود را از آن فریضه فارغ سازم -

(7)

تهنیت نامهٔ عید

خدمت جناب مستطاب اشرف اکرم سرکار مشیرالدوله وزیر امور خارجه دام اجلاله -

باقتضاي مراسم ارادت در ساعت تحویل عرض تهنیت شده بود - حالا با تشکر از ظهور التفات مبارک و سعادت این عید سعید و سال جدید را با مزید شوکت و اجلال حضرت عالي تجدید و تکرار مي نمایم - سعادت بزرگ بنده ، جناب ساعد الملک است که از نعمت حضور حضرت عالي بهره مند و مستفیض است - والسلام -

(8)

تعزیت فوت برادر

جناب مجدت و نجابت نصاب زید اقباله خبر وحشت اثر فوت مرحوم اخوي جناب ثروت مایه کمال اندوه و تأثر گردیده با نهایت افسوس و غم بجنابعالي تعزیت و تسلیت میگویم و از درگاه باري صبري جمیل در این مصیبت براي جنابعالي مسئلت میکنم -

(9)

جواب

جناب اجل عالي زید اجلاله تلگراف تعزیت سامي واصل گردیده و در این مصیبت عظمي که بي اندازه خاطرم را دوچار اندوه و ملال ساخته تسلي حاصل گشت با کمال امتنان از جنابعالي شکرگذارم و امیدوارم که خداوند عمري طویل بجنابعالي کرامت فرماید -

(10)

انشاء تعزیت نامه

وفات مرحوم اعلی الله مقامه خان موجب تأثر قلبی شده که با مناسبات قاصره و با نهایت تأسف خاطر در این مصیبت عظمی با جنابعالی مشارکت و همدردی دارم و چون در اینگونه دواهی فاجعه غیر از صبر و رضا چاره نیست لهذا جنابعالی را بصبر و شکیبائی توصیه نموده تعزیت و خالصانه را عرض میکند

(11)

جواب

در هنگامیکه خاطر مصیبت رسیده ام از حدوث این حادثه غم انگیز در نهایت سوگواری و تأثر بود تلگراف سامی واصل شده خیلی مایه تسلی قلب و تسکین خاطر گردیده از این همدردی عالی نهایت امتنان دارم و تشکرات صمیمی را تقدیم میکنم

(12)

تعزیت نامه

نمیدانم بچه زبان از حدوث این حادثهٔ غم انگیز اظهار تعزیت نمایم و احساسات مؤلمهٔ خودرا بچه نوع بحضور سامی ابلاغ کنم را در عرصه میخواهم که چون در همچو مصائب و رزایا غیر از صبر و رضا چاره نیست همین به که شکیبائی پیشه نموده از درگاه الهی اجر جزیل طلب فرمائید

(13)

جواب

باوجودیکه وقوع این واقعه مؤلمهٔ بی اندازه مایه دلتنگی شده اما اظهارات مؤثریکه دلالت بر کمال محبت سامی مینمود تا اندازهٔ بسیاری موجب تسکین قلب شده و رجامندم که تشکرات مرا که از یک قلب افسرده و خاطر پژمرده صادر شده بحسن قبول تلقی فرمائید

CHAPTER III.

Correspondence between Friends and Relatives

(1)

رقعه بجهة ملاقات دوستی نوشته میشود

غرهٔ شهر محرم الحرام سنه ۱۳۳۰

آقای عزیز من همیشه اوقات دوام سلامتی وجود مسعود را از خداوند عالم مسئلت و درخواست مینمایم - بواسطهٔ مشورت درکاری لازم و امری مهم میبایست که جنابعالی را ملاقات کنم - آیا در این کلبهٔ محقر بنده را سرفراز میفرمائید یا آنکه مقرر میدارید - که در دولت سرای شریف مشرف شوم - خواهشمندم که جواب فوری شاد و مسرورم فرمائید ایام عزت مستدام باد

مخلص شما عبد الرحیم

(2)

جواب رقعهٔ فوق بدینمنوال

غرهٔ محرم الحرام سنه ۱۳۳۰

دوست عزیز باوفای من آقا عبد الرحیم دام مجده

مرقومهٔ شریفه واصل و از زیارتش مطالب و مقصود حاصل گردید - بعینه حضور جنابعالی را از خدا میخواستم - حال بحمد الله که میسر گردید - چون بعضی از خویشان بنده دیدنی و ملاقات مخلص در منزل تشریف آورده اند خواهشمندم که بحضور خود بنده را سرفراز و مفتخر خواهید فرمود -

زیاده زحمت نمیدهد

مخلص شما عبدالکریم

(3)

رقعهٔ فرزند به پدر

۱۹ شهر رمضان المبارک ۳۳

خدمت دستوالی آقای حقیقی و مولای واقعی دام عزه العالی معروض میدارد   مراسلهٔ مبارک که مشعر بر سلامت وجود جنابعالی به بندر بمبئی بود زیارت شد   از صحت مزاج سرکار عالی خیلی مسرور و متشکر گردیدم   امیدوارم که بهمین زودی کارها بر وفق مقصود حاصل شده دعاگویان را از حضور مبارک خود شاد و مسرور فرمائید   مستدعیم که دو جلد کتاب سفینهٔ طالبی مشهور بکتاب احمدی برای بنده همراه خود تان بیاورید که بهترین سوغات میباشد

ایام عزت مستدام باد   جان نثار احمد

(4)

جواب از پدر بفرزند

رمضان المبارک سنه ۱۳۳

نور چشم عزیز مکرم آقا احمد   نوشتهٔ شما رسید   از مراتب ادب و حسن سلوک شما مسرور شدم   بیشتر چیزیکه مرا امیدوار نموده همان معارف خواهی شما است   انشاء الله کتابها را خریده بهمراه میآورم و علاوه لوازم مدرسه و اسباب تحریر و نقاشی و نقشه کشی از برای شما خواهم آورد   و البته شما هم زحمت بمدرسه و تحصیل نموده کوتاهی نخواهید کرد و مادرت را نهایت احترام خواهید نمود   دوستان را همگی سلام برسانید و السلام   میرزا محسن

(5)

رقعه بفرزند از پدر

فرزند   نوشتهٔ شما رسید و از مضمونات آن متحیر شدم و از حرکات و سکنات و رفتار در معاملات فرزندی بین الامثال و الاقران باعث خجلت و شکر آمد و بعد از این هم این همه مرضیه از آن فرزندی مطلوب است

(6)

بدوست ۱۰ خود نوشته

عرض میشود - چراغ التفاتي رسید - از محبت خداتعالي کمال امتنان دارم - برای شما در کتاب خانهٔ ما خیلي بکار میآید - الله خداتعالي زیاد باد - خیلي شرمنده شدم - از کسالت مزاج خداتعالي خیلي غصه خوردم - حیف ایکه مراهم نداشم عیادت نکردم -

(7)

رقعهٔ الیسب

قربانت شوم - رقیمهٔ کریمهٔ عالي زیارت شد - از استفسار مزاج مبارک مسرور شدم - از باب مواجب نصر الله بیگ معلوم شد آن کاغذ به بنده زاده میرزا حسن خان نرسیده است باز عاید نداشته و گرنه معارش مخصوص نوشته بودم - ایدک مخصص فرمائیش خداتعالي درات کردم - دریافت دارد - مرحمت فرمود باز برسانید - زیاده تصدیع است -

(8)

بیکی از رفقا نوشته

مخدوما مکرما بیکاري و بیشغلي شما از راه مضایقه نبوده - خود تان میدانند که من رعایت احترام و حفظ مقام شما را بر خود لازم میدانم و از هیچ نوع محبت و مهرباني مضایقه ندارم - از این هدیه که فرستاده اید نهایت امتنان حاصل شد - و چون هدایا و تشریفات مرحوم مغفور وقایع نگار براي دوستان و مخلصین خود شان منحصر بحلواي گز بود و بالک قرص آن کام چندین نفر را شیرین میکرد - نخواستم که شما از رسم مالوف و عادت معهود ایشان تجاوز نمائید - لهذا بآن جعبه هاي گز بیشتر کفایت کرده ممنون شدم و السلام خیرالختام -

(9)

بیکی از علما نوشته

عرض میشود چون هیچ وقت از ذکر خیر و یاد خداتعالي خارج نیستم چند روز قبل متذکر شدم که رقم مبارک در امضا و فرمان همایون ...

اما به جمله جناب عالی صادر شده بنا بر این دستخط ... قلم رقم اعمالی
مراتب را ابلاغ و ... و ... مبارک ... شرف ... چه را باعث ملاقات
... خدمت عالی ... را ... رقم را ... و ... الم ... ملکم
سلطنت

(10)

جواب ... است

عرض ... [illegible] ... عالی ... صدق مرحمت رقم
... و ... [illegible] ... و ... اعتماد قلبی
من با شما ... است ... رضا و ... و ... حسنات
... اما ... عالی ... و ... و از جناب آنها ... حقیقت
هم بسیار ... و ... آقای ... شما که ... حسب
مرحمت کرده ... و ... را قبول کردم و ... شدم

(11)

د ... [illegible]

عرض ... [illegible] ... رقیمه جناب عالی شرف وصول ارزانی داشت و
سلامتی احوال شریف کمال مسرت و خوشوقتی حاصل شد ... و ...
شما ... جناب عالی و اخلاص و اراده ...
... و ... وقت ... درباب ... له ... امکان
... شرحی ... ورود ... آنچه ... لقامت ...
... ارا ... که آنچه ... در ... تکلیف ...
... در ... مطلوب ... زیاده زحمت است والسلام

(12)

جواب رقعه است

عرض ... [illegible] ... رقیمه جناب عالی شرف وصول ارزانی داشت و از
... شریف کمال مسرت و خوشوقتی روی داد ... در ... حرکت از

تحرير جناب مستطاب آقا ميرزا علي رحمه الله تعالی زحمت کشيده و بجهة وداع
آمده بودند اما چون خود جناب عالي در شهر تشريف نداشتيد و شرط وداع بعمل
نيامد خيلي متأسف بودم و حقوق ملاطفت هاي جنابعالي ثابت است و در هرجا
باشم فراموش نخواهد شد - تفسير قرآن جناب عالي برسم امانت در نزد مخلص
بود - با همين اعاده دادم و همه اوقات منتظر وصول رقيمجات هستم -

(13)

بتاريخ ۱۹ شهر ذي الحجه ۱۳۲۱

جناب دوست مکرما - رقيمه رسيد - از تفصيلي که نوشته بوديد مستحضر
شدم - از باب ناخوشي سرکار حضور رود زيد عمره حقيقة در ندار هم خيلي ملول
و متأسف هستم در اينکه ايشان بکرمان که آمده اند و درين موقع نقاهت ايشان
بشود که در ندار هم خيلي شائق ملاقات ايشان هستم - زيادة زحمت است -

CHAPTER IV

Miscellaneous

(1)

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

(2)

[illegible]

[illegible]

(دعا گو علي)

(3)

[illegible]

[illegible]

دو روز دیگر امکان آمدن بمدرسه ندارم - از راه دوستی و محبتی که دارند خواهش
میکنم که مرحمت فرموده درسهای را که میخوانید از برای بنده صاف و پاک نوشته
و بفرستید تا در هنگام فرصت بخوانم و از این درسهای خود عقب نمانم - امیدوارم
که مسامحه نخواهند فرمود - ایام دوستی مستدام -

مخلص حقیقی شما ابو القاسم

(4)

بجهت خواستن کتابی از کتاب فروش

سنه ۱۳۳۰ ۱۴ شهر ربیع الاول طهران

جناب مستطاب آقا میرزا محمد صادق کتاب فروش شیرازی زید مجده عرض
میشود مرحمت فرموده بتوسط پست دو جلد کتاب خوش چاپ
یکی هدایة الحساب و دیگری مختصر هیئت بنام و عنوان من بفرستید که خیلی
ممنون و متشکر خواهم شد و باندازهٔ قیمت آنها دو تومان تمر پست در جوف خط
ارسال داشتم - خواهشمندم که مسامحه نفرموده زود زود بفرستید -

زیاده زحمت نمیدهد

دوست شما میرزا احمد بوشهری

(5)

رقعه است

آقا جان بار این چه درد کمر است که بتو عارض شده که کمر مارا
شکست و دل مارا خون کرد - اگرچه عمو قضیه آنرا تلگراف کرده بود اما باز
خیلی نگرانم و امیدوارم که تا رسیدن این نوشته بکلی رفع شده و تلگرافاً مرا از
اعادت صحت خود خوشوقت نمائی - چون دیروز هفته بود و از تو کاغذی نرسیده بود
میخواستم قلمی برداشته شرحی از تنبلی تو در نوشتن کاغذی بنویسم - معلوم
شد که درد کمر مانع بوده و حق داشته - امیر زاده نیز در این اثنا بنوبهٔ شدیدی
در چار شد و شش روز بستری بود - اطبا جمع شدند و خوب معالجه کردند -
دیروز تبش قطع شده و انشاء الله در هفته و یا بعد آنها را بکردستان خواهم
فرستاد - نمیدانم علت سینه ات چه طور است - البته خودت شرح احوالت

را ببوسید عمرا زندو و موافقت تو در حفظ احترام عروس خیلی اظهار رضامندی
کرده بود آفرین بر تو و خدا ترا بما زیاده بدارد و طول عمر و صحت مزاج عطا
فرماید کاغذ نویسی زیاده دارم و بیش ازین فرصت ندارم

(6)

شاهزاده عباس میرزای ملک آرا نوشته است

فدایت حضور مبارکت شوم مرقومهٔ مبارکه زیارت و از تفضلی که
بالتفصیلی مرحمت از تجدید مأموریت فدوی بآذربایجان فرموده بودند نهایت
سرافرازی حاصل شد و همه وقت التفات مخصوصی نسبت بفدوی دام ظله العالی
در ابقای ریاست تجارت جناب فخامت نصاب حاجی میرزا کاظم اعتماد الممالک
فرمایشات حضرت والا مطاع متبع است خود این بنده نیز با احسان سابقه
مودت را دارم و البته لازمهٔ تقویت از ایشان بعمل خواهد آمد مستدعیم که
همه وقت این بنده را بصدور ارقام مطاعه و رجوع فرمایشات سرافراز فرمائید
زیاده عرضی ندارد الامر الاشرف الوالا مطاع مطاع

(7)

معتمد السلطان من همیشه و هر ساعت با شما کار دارم و اگر
گاهی خود شما به استثنای مسائل شخصی خواسته باشید راحت شوید و اسباب
هم از الجمله است که با اینکه خیال داشتم بپرسم کتابچهٔ اختلاف دستور العلما
مشغول باشم و زحمتی بشما بدهم محض آسودگی شما امروز را موقوف کردم
و انشاء الله تعالی از فردا باید مشغول با فکر باشید زیاده و السلام

(8)

کاغذیست که از پاریس نوشته است

فدایت شوم مدتی است برادر [illegible] شرف معرف نشده و من
خود ا فرصت نگاری و عرض ارادت قصور نکرده‌ام وقایع و اخبار این ممالک را
خواسته باشید در سر یک مسئله که شرح و بسط آن زیاده از حد نادر نزدیک
است فیما بین دولت فرانسه و دولت پروس جنگ بزرگی واقع و اختلال و انقلاب

عظیمي در عاقبه فرنگستان ظاهر شود - اما توسط دوستانهٔ دول ثلاثه یعني .... و روس و انگلیس مانع شد و مقرر است که در لندن ... ي مرکب از مامورین بزرگ فرانسه و پروس و .... و انگلیس و روس منعقد شده مسئله متنازعه را مقرون باحترام طرفین اصلاح نمایند - از اوضاع (اکسپوزیسیون) که یکماه است دایر و مفتوح شده چه عرض کنم که در بیان نمیگنجد - مختصرش این است که از اول خلقت آدم تا امروز چنان اسبابي فراهم نیامده و چنین بساطي گسترده نشده - افسوس که باب علم در مردم ما مسدود و راه آمد و شد بر آنها دشوار گشته و از تحصیل منافع و ... فواید و اطلاع بر ترقي ملل خارجه محروم مانده اند - باري براي امتعه مخصوصهٔ خود مان جاي مناسبي بطرح و طرز عمارت ایران ساخته و آماده شده است - اسبابها هم از قرار اخباري که رسیده ... پنج شش روز دیگر خواهند رسید - هرچه باشد خوب است و باصطلاح فصلا وجود ناقص به از عدم صرف است - مخلص لا محاله دو روز یکدفعه با ... اکسپوزیسیون رفته و خدا گواه است که عالماً در تشریف نداشتن جناب عالي تأسف ... میخورم و باکمال حسرت بر میگردم که این مردم مراتب علوم و صنایع را بدرجه کمال رسانیده اند (و ما هنوز درخم یک کوچه ایم) - بنده زاده ... نوشته بود جناب عالي از روي کمال مرحمتي که دارید اورا برفتن طهران امر فرموده اید - جناب ناصرالملک همین طور فرمایش کرده است و ... را صحن همین به تحریر فرستاده اند - زیاده زحمتي ندارد -

(9)

بمیرزا.... مستشارالدوله نوشته

جناب جلالت نصابا ... نوشتجات میرزا محمد خان را دیدم واقعاً ... بسیار مرد قابل و آگاهیست - دریغ است که بایطورها افسرده و دماغ سوخته باشد - با همین ... مشروحه دایر باحضار او را بوزارت خارجه بفرستید و در ... بیان لیاقت او وزارت خارجه را با ... ماموریت او در بایزید و ضرورت معاش متذکر نماید - و در مسئله طاهر خان بجرم اینکه در وقوع منازعه فیمابین حیدرانلو و جلالیها رفتن خودش و فرستادن ... معاونت حیدرانلوهاي آنطرف و ...

امید که نسبت بمیرزا محمد خان بی احترامی کرده لازمهٔ مواخذه بعمل آورده و مقرر ا
[illegible] که از میرزا محمد خان عذر خواهی نماید و وعده بدهد والسلام

(10)

بمتولی باشی مشهد نوشته

مدالت شوم مقدر چنین شد آن یک پسری که سالها در تعلیم
و تربیت او خون جگرها خورده رنجها برده بودم بمرض کرمان مبتلا شده من بیچاره
در این آخر عمر بچنین [illegible] گرفتار آیم و بنیاد این خانواده بکلی خراب و بساط
مجلس نکاحش برچیده شود نه تنها بنده گرفتار [illegible] بلکه جمع کثیری از
[illegible] و سرباز با این قضای آسمانی در کشاکش اند و در همه [illegible] از
وقوع این حادثه بزرگ و تلف شدن این همه [illegible] و سرباز متألم و متأثر است
(که [illegible]) رضا بقضاء الله و [illegible] امره مقصود
از زحمت افزائی این است که بمقتضای وصیتی که آن ناکام کرده است جنازهٔ
او باید در آستانهٔ مقدسه حضرت رضا سلام الله علیه و روحی له الفداء دفن شود
استدعا دارم که هر وقت جنازهٔ او را وارد کردند مدفن بفرمایند که جای مناسبی
را که معلوم و نمودار باشد برای دفن او معین نمایند و بجهت تذکار خاطر شریف
عرض مینمایم که عموی مرحوم زین العابدین خان در [illegible] حاله چارکه مدفون
است چنانچه مقدور و ممکن باشد که او را هم در پهلوی عموی مرحوم دفن
نمایند از التفات مخصوص که نسبت [illegible] حقیقی خود دارند مزید امتنان خواهد
بود با این خاطر [illegible] و روزگار تباهی که دارم زیاده بر این حالت تحریر ندارم
و همه روزه متوجه انجام خدمات عالی و فرمایشات هستم

(11)

مدالت شوم زحمه مبنی بر تسلیت جناب عالی [illegible] بعد
هفدهم ماه گذشته شرف وصول ارزانی داشته بالمآل خاطر شریف را در وقوع این
مصیبت شرح و بیان کرد و موجب مزید امتنان شد نکته [illegible] و انعام جناب عالی
البته [illegible] آنست که خاطر شریف را ترحم و شادی شریک زحمت و رنج مخلص
دارد خداوند انشاء الله جناب عالی را در دوستی و دوستداری و غمگساری

و خدمتگزاري سالهاي سال پاينده و مستدام ندارد و مخلصرا نيز توفيقي كرامت فرمايد كه چنانكه بايد از تلافي مرحمتهاي سامي برآيد - زور بيش است چون مجال تازه ندارم بيش از ايراد جواب اين مختصر را نگاشته و بيش از اين زحمت عالي را روا نداشته - ولي از طرف جناب عالي همه روزه منترصد وصول رقيمه اتم - زياده زحمت است - - -

NOTES

Chap. I. *Let* (1) — مناطب — good, agreeable اعاظم — (pl of اعظم) the great اعيان—(pl of عين) grandees دام مجده — may his glory be perpetual ارب — boldness صرف — eating, passing *Let* (2)— مشعر بر اظهار—indicative of مودت— friendship احضار calling into one's presence نور چشمي — my beloved child مدام — perpetual *Let* (4)— مبارک — good fortune ميمنت —prosperity سامي —exalted, sublime (self) مدعي petitioner, wisher قرين—connected, joined امتنان—conferring a favour or obligation. *Let* (5)— آمايه adorned with. آلاف—(pl of الف) thousands تحيه — greeting, salutation اعياد —(pl of عيد) festivals قاطبه — all, every (one's) , the whole body تشكيل —forming, organising *Let* (6)— ليلة الاحد —Sunday night *Let* (7)— درک —reaching to بي معالات —incomparable conversation, or society *Let.* (8) اعتذر —excusing one's self , apologizing مصدقانه —truthful , well-founded تلقي —meeting encountering , access *Let* (10)— مودت —love, affection رخ دادن —to countenance ايفاء —observing, fulfilling an engagement نائل شدن —to accomplish one's wishes *Let* (11)— زايد الوصف —beyond description مشحون —full,

complete perfect. *Let.* (13)—[illegible] — [illegible] of [illegible]. *Let.* (14)—[illegible] — [illegible] in-accessible. [illegible] — [illegible] [illegible]—(pl. of [illegible]) [illegible] — (pl. of [illegible]) [illegible] [illegible] — [illegible] [illegible].

Chap. II. *Let.* (1)— [illegible] — [illegible] [illegible] اظهار — [illegible] [illegible] — [illegible] [illegible] — اظهار باطنی — devoted friend [illegible] — [illegible] to make known [illegible]. *Let.* (2)— مهر عامر — [illegible] represent [illegible] [illegible] — [illegible] notice to [illegible] — ([illegible]) [illegible] a letter news or message [illegible] —(pl. of [illegible]) [illegible]. *Let.* [illegible] اجل — [illegible] most glorious معظم — in excellent order [illegible] well arranged. *Let.* (4)— [illegible] — being great in rank and honour مظاهر — [illegible] one who directs [illegible], or seconds. *Let.* (5)— [illegible] — princely or chief like نبيل — excellent great. *Let.* (8)— [illegible] — [illegible] grandeur splendour [illegible] — [illegible] [illegible] — [illegible] grief. *Let.* (10)—تاثر—being marked or receiving an impression. دواهي —(pl. of داهية) sore calamities. [illegible] —disastrous calamitous [illegible] — to recommend to admonish charge. *Let.* (12)— [illegible] —feelings مولمة —painful afflicting [illegible] —(pl. of [illegible]) afflictions. جزل —much numerous, copious.

Chap. III. *Let.* (4)— معارف خواهي —desire for knowledge. *Let.* (5)— امثال و اقران —equals and compeers [illegible] —

agreeable, laudable *Let* (7)— دریافت دارد please find (it) *Let* (8) گز the manna of the tamarisk tree. *Let* (9)— متذکر شدن —to remember, or recollect رقم —a writing امضا —signature. ایام الم may the days of thy favour be prolonged! *Let* (10)— ارثاً —by inheritance. خلقاً —by temparament, or nature تسعیر fixing price upon provisions, or commodities of any kind, assizing مسٹر ود —Mr Wood

Chap. IV. *Let* (1)— مواظب —assiduously attending to. پرستار obediently looking after *Let* (2)— مدیر —the manager of an institution برا ردن —to open, discover, to go through از عهده بر آمدن —to prove successful. *Let* (3)— محبی love, affection مسامحه —negligence, coolness *Let* (4)— پست —post تمر پست —postage stamp در جوف under cover of the letter *Let* (5) — نگران —anxious —post نوبۂ شدیدی —a severe peroxysm of fever *Let* (6)— ابقاء —establishing, preserving, sparing ریاست headship. فرمایشات —commands, wishes مطاع —obeyed, one who is or ought to be obeyed متبع —imitative, being followed or acted upon *Let* (7) استناد —leaning against, or depending on راحت شدن—to be at rest from work *Let* (8)— احتلال —disorder, tumult. حاشیۂ —precincts the Austrian power *Let* (9)— حیدرانلو and حلالیها —two tribal names ترضیه —satisfaction *Let* (10)— در گذشتن —to die تذکار —a help to memory *Let* (11)— تالمات —pl of تألم grief, torment

SECTION V

Examination Papers

(Cal —1909)

The most famous of Mahmud's expeditions were the twelfth and the sixteenth. The twelfth expedition in A.D. 1018-19 was against Kanauj and the sacred city of Mathura or Muttra on the Jumna. Mahmud was now determined to penetrate into the heart of Hindustan. His army consisted of 100,000 horse and 20,000 foot; these were gathered from all parts of his dominions including the recent conquests which he had made in Bukhara and Samarkand. He marched from Peshawar along the foot of the mountains, crossing the Punjab rivers as near to their sources as possible and presented himself before Kanauj. This was a stately city full of incredible wealth and its kings, who often held the title of Maharaj Adhiraj kept a splendid court. The Raja threw himself on the generosity of Mahmud, who admitted him to his friendship and after three days left his city uninjured. From thence he advanced to Mathura, sacred as the birth place of Krishna, which was given up to the soldiers for twenty days. Its temples struck Mahmud with admiration and kindled in him the desire to cover the barren rocks of Ghazni with similar edifices. Hindu slaves after this were sold in the army of the conqueror at two rupees each.

Sacred— مقدس   Heart of Hindustan— ممالکِ اندرونی هند

To penetrate— داخل شدن   New conquests— متصرفاتِ تازه

Along— بموازی   Foot (of a mountain)— دامنه پائین

Source (of a river)— منبع مبدا

Full of incredible wealth— که اندازهٔ دولتش از حدِ اعتبار گذشته

Threw himself on the generosity of Mahmud—

سر بر خطِ فرمانِ محمود نهاده طالبِ مرحمتِ او گشت —

Uninjured— بآن هیچ ضرری نرسانیده

To be given up to— فروگذاشته شدن

To kindle (=give rise to)— پیدا کردن

Barren rocks— سنگهای ویرانه

(Cal.—1910).

The Czar often went out disguised in order to satisfy his own mind as to the condition of his subjects One day in a solitary walk near Moscow, he entered a small village, and pretending to be overcome by fatigue, implored relief from several of the inhabitants His dress was ragged, his appearance mean, but what ought to have excited the compassion of the villagers, and ensured a kind reception, produced a refusal Full of indignation at such inhuman treatment he was just going to leave the place, when he noticed another dwelling to which he had not yet applied for assistance It was the poorest cottage in the village The emperor hastened to this and knocked at the door A peasant opened it and asked him what he wanted "I am almost dying of fatigue and hunger," answered the Czar, "can you give me a night's lodging?" "Alas!" said the peasant, "you will have but poor fare, you have come at an unlucky time—for my wife is ill, but come in, you will at least be sheltered from cold, and you shall be welcome to what we have"

Czar— امپراطورِ روس

Went out disguised— عادتِ تبدیل گردی اختیار کرده بود

Subjects— رعایا   Moscow— مسکو

To pretend— تظاهر نمودن

To be overcome by fatigue— از رنج و کلفت دست بسته شدن

To implore relief— دستگیری خواستن

Ragged— دریده   Mean— پوچ - خوار

What— The condition which

Compasion — ترحّم - مروّت - شفقت

To excite— محرّکِ کاری بودن

To ensure kind reception (=treatment)— ملتزمِ سلوکِ نیک ، بودن

Refusal— انکار   Inhuman— بی مهرانه

To notice— نگاهی افتادن (به)   To knock— کوبیدن

I am almost dying— جان بلب آمده ام

To give a lodging— منزل دادن   Poor fare— محض طعامِ غریبانه

Unlucky time— نحس روزي بختِ ناموافق

You shall be welcome to what we have—

آنچه حاضر است از بر مضايقه ندارم —

(Cal —1911)

Okous Agha said his uncle to him, whilst everyone seemed to listen with great respect to what he would say Okous Agha, you are my brother's son; you are my child you are the head of our tribe and our best support and protection. If I were to advise you to give up the mare to the *pasha*, you would think me unworthy of being a Kurd and a Yezedi and even were he now to get possession of her we should not be spared; for such is the experience I have of Turkish Governors that when once they have a pretext in hand for oppression they never fail to make use of it. Therefore I am of your opinion—we cannot remain here. Old as I am and accustomed as I have been from my earliest infancy to graze our flocks and herds upon these mountains—to see the sun rise over yonder hill and sat in that distant plain—much as I love these spots upon which our ancestors have been bred and born yet it shall not be said that I have been the cause of the ruin of our tribe I am therefore for immediate departure delay now would be dangerous.

Okous Agha— اوكوز آقا

Head— سردار رئيس

Support and protection— تكيه و پناه حامي و محافظ

You would think me unworthy &c.—

مرا لائقِ قبيلهٔ كرد و يزيدي نمي پنداري —

We should not he spared— مارا هرگز نخواهند بخشيد

Such is the experience I have of Turkish Governors—

در بابِ بيگلر بيگيانِ ترك تجربهٔ ام چنين است —

To have a pretext in hand— بهانهٔ بدستِ كسي افتادن

They never fail to make use of it —

هرگز آنرا از دستِ خالي رايگان نمي دهند —

I am of your opinion— من باتو متفق الرأي هستم

From my earliest infancy— از آغاز طفولیتم

Flock— گله   Herd— رمه

To be accustomed— مأنوس شدن

To be bred and born— پیدا شدن و پرورش یافتن

I am for immediate departure

— من در آنم که بزودی (فی الفور) کوچ کنیم .

(Cal. 1912)

On July 20th the day after we came home from our tour among the hills, the cannon of the city announced at an early hour that His Highness Farman Farma was about to make his official entry into Kirman We were much pleased at his arrival, as he and my brother were friends of about 20 years' standing, and he was considered to be the most civilized and enligntened of Persian princes His home and property were at Tabriz where he had left his family and his wife who was the daughter of the Vali Ahd, the heir apparent to the throne, while he himself was cousin to the Shah The prince was a short, slight man about thirty five and wore spectacles, being very near sighted He could speak French fluently, the acquisition of that language being one of the chief accomplishments of the Military College at Teheran where he had been educated, and I found him most chatty and agreeable. Of all European languages French is undoubtedly the most in vogue among the educated Persians Its study was first encouraged by Fateh Ali Shah, who on the great occasion of his receiving a letter from the first Nepolean was mortified to find that he had not a subject in the whole of his kingdom capable of translating the Emperor's message To prevent the recurrence of a like catastrophe he sent a band of chosen youths to be educated in France, and French has ever since been spoken by a cultivated minority, the Shah himself being able to talk with tolerable proficiency

After we came home (=after our return)— بعد از مراجعت ما .

Tour among the hills— سیر کوهستان

(The sound of) the cannon— آواز توپ

Was about to make his official entry into Kirman—

عنقریب بمامورییت خود باددده و طنطنهٔ تمام داخل کرمان شود —

He and my brother were friends of about &c. —

زیب بیست سال است که با برادرم ساعة دوستی و الفت می دارد —

Civilized— متمدن Enlightened— صاحب کمال

Home— مسکن Property— ملک (u in the pl of املاک)

Family— عیال Cousin— عمو زاده

Short— کوتاه قد Slight— نازک

Of about thirty-five— که قریب به سی و پنج مرحلهٔ عمر پیموده

Spectacles— عینک Near sighted— نامرئی بین نزدیک بین

French— زبان فرانسه Fluently— با الفت و فصاحت

Chief— بهترین Accomplishment— کمال هنر

Military College— درسگاه نظامیه Chatter— همیشه پرگو

Agreeable— خوش طبع Is the most in vogue— بسیار رواج دارد

Educated— تربیت یافته To be mortified— آزرده شدن

The Emperor's message— پیغام امپراطور

To prevent the recurrence of a like catastrophe—

تا چنین مشکلی باز در پیش نیاید —

A band of chosen youths— گروهی از جوانان برگزیده

A cultivated minority— معدودی از تربیت یافتگان

With tolerable proficiency— با قدری مهارت

(Cal —1913)

We sent spies from time to time, continued the old man to bring intelligence of what was doing and took up our abode among the rocks and cliffs of the mountains About noon the next day the party appeared and when they discovered that we had fled their rage and disappointment were great The servants of the prince went from house to house and drove in the doors with violence The only object which at all restrained them was one of the old women who, having acquired sufficient strength to rise from her bed attacked them with such reproaches, that none was bold enough to face her The prince sent for

provisions from a neighbouring town, and took up his abode in my house. Wherever they found corn, they seized upon it they burnt our implements of husbandry for fire-wood, and, when they were expended, had recourse to doors and windows, and even to the beams and rafters of our houses Their horses were picketed in the new wheat, and they even cut down a great extent of it to carry away. In short, we are entirely ruined, we have neither money, clothes, cattle, houses nor provisions, and except in God and you,' addressing himself to Sher Ali and me, 'we have no other refuge'

From time to time—گاه گاه To send spy—جاسوس گماشتن .

To (=that they may) bring intelligence تا خبر آرند

Of what was doing از آنچه که می کنند .

Rocks and cliffs—کوه و دره ها

To take-up abode—نشستن - مقیم شدن

About noon—قریب بوقت ظهر

Their rage and disappointment were great—

غضب و حرمانشان پایان نداشت —

Drove in the doors with violence—

درهای خانه بزور شکسته داخل شدند

The only object which at all &c—

چیزی که قدری مانع ایشان گشت یکی از زبان پیر بود

To attack with reproaches—سرزنش و دشنام دادن

That no one was bold enough to face her—

که هیچ کس تاب مقابل شدنش نداشت —

Sent for provisions—امر فرمود تا آذوقه و علوفه آوردند

Neighbouring town—قصبهٔ متصل .

Implements of husbandry—آلات و ادوات کشت و زرع

For fire-wood—بجای هیزم و هیمه

Beams and rafters تیرهای خانها .

Their horses were picketed in the new wheat—

اسپان را پرکستِ زارِ سبز بستند —

Cut down to carry away— دند و بردند

In short we are entirely ruined—

خلاصه ما را بخاک سیاه نشاندند —

We have neither money clothes, cattle &c.—

الحق بی پول و بی لباس بی گاو و گوسپند
نه خانه و نه مانده بجز شما و خدا پناهی نداریم —

(Cal —1914.)

A caravan, consisting of fifty-six camels laden with rice and dried fruits and woollen goods, proceeding through one of the passes leading into India from Kabul was suddenly set upon by a band of marauders, who were lying in wait for it where the pass was narrowest. The men accompanying the caravan about forty in number made a determined resistance, and shot several of their assailants but having been taken by surprise they were eventually overpowered after losing ten of their number The rest helplessly submitted to the plunder of their goods and fled with their lives. The robbers drove away forty-three camels with their loads, the remainder having been either disabled during the assault or had cast their loads and escaped unpursued into the hills. After the robbers had disappeared with their spoils, the men whom they had plundered tracked them to a village about four miles from the pass, and when they had failed to sieze them, they came into our territory to apply for help to recover their property

Consisting of— مرکب از

Laden with rice and dried fruits and woollen goods—

که بار های از برنج و خشکبار و قماش برد —

Proceeding = was proceeding Pass— تنگ کوتل

Leading into India from Kabul— که از کابل بهندوستان می رود

Suddenly (= when suddenly)— که ناگاه

A band of marauders— طائفهٔ یغماچیان (غارتگران)

To set upon— برسر ریختن (use Act Voice Past Tense with 'a band of marauders' as subject).

To lie in wait— در کمینگاه نشستن

To make a determined resistance—

کمر دسته در مقاومت کی پاداری نمودن —

Assailant— حمله ور To shoot a person— گلوله بکسی زدن

To be taken by surprise— غافل گیر شدن - بیخبر یورش خوردن

Eventually— عاقبت - بالاخره Helplessly — ازروی لاچاري

To flee with one's life— جان بسلامت گریختن

To be disabled— بي کاره شدن

Unpursued (=and no one pursued them)— و کسي تعقیبشان نکرد

To track— در اثر رفتن - پي زدن

To fail to seize— از گرفتاري قاصر شدن (در نیافتن)

Territory— کشور - بلاد .

(Cal.—1915)

A

Kirman is a kingdom on the eastern confines of Persia, which was, formerly governed by its own monarchs, in hereditary succession, but since the Tartars have brought it under their dominion they appoint governors to it at their pleasure In the mountains of this country are found the precious stones that we call turquoises They manufacture here in great perfection all the articles necessary for warlike equipment Upon leaving Kirman, you travel for eight days along a plain, by a pleasant road, and rendered still more delightful by the abundance of partridges and other games You also frequently meet towns and castles, as well as scattered habitations.

To be governed by— زیر حکومت کسي بودن

In hereditary succession— بترتیب وراثت

To appoint— مأمور نمودن — مقرّر کردن

At their pleasure— بطور دلخواه خود

All the articles necessary for warlike equipment—

همهٔ آلات و یراقِ حرب را —

In great perfection— با کمال مهارت و خوبی

To manufacture— درست کردن   A pleasant road— راهِ قشنگی

Partridge— کبک   Game— شکار صید

B.

Changis Khan began his reign with so much justice and moderation that he was beloved and revered more as a deity than as a sovereign. The fame of his great and good qualities spreading over the countries of Jorza and Borgu, all the Tartars, however dispersed, placed themselves under his command. Finding himself thus at the head of so many brave men, he became ambitious of emerging from the deserts and wildernesses by which he was surrounded and gave them orders to equip themselves with bows and such other weapons as they were expert at using. He then proceeded to render himself master of cities and provinces; and such was the effect produced by his character for justice and other virtues that wherever he went he found the people disposed to submit to him.

Moderation— اعتدال میانه روی

That he was beloved and revered &c.—

که بار از عدل و تعظیمِ سلطانی گذشته
محبت و احترام ایزدی را مرعی داشتند —

Great and good qualities— شمائل گزیده و خصائل پاکیزه

Dispersed— پراکنده متفرّق

To become ambitious of— در دل حوصله را جا دادن

Deserts and wildernesses— بادیه و ویرانه ها

To equip oneself— برای خود کار سازی کردن

As they were expert at using—

که در استعمالِ آنها خیلی مهارت و سلیقه داشتند —

To render oneself master of— در تصرّف و تسلّطِ خود آوردن

Character— شهرت نیک نامی   Disposed— مایل

(Pat —1921)

Towards the end of September Syed Ahmed visited his home at Delhi, just after the taking of the city On reaching his house he heard that his mother had taken refuge in one of her *syce's* houses, and he followed her there On his calling out to her she opened the door, crying out, 'Why have you come here? We are being killed You will be killed also!' He told her not to be afraid, as he had a special pass He then found out that for five days she had been living on the horses' grain, and was very weak. For three days she had had no water He hurried off to the fort, and brought a jug of water

Taking of the city — فتح شہر To take refuge — پناہ گرفتن

Special pass — تذکرۂ مخصوص To live on — بسر بردن

To hurry off — دویدن

(Pat 1922)

One day as I was walking up and down my verandah I thought I perceived a white man floating down the Ganges, a very unusual sight, for no European thought of venturing into the river on account of the danger from crocodiles When the object came opposite my bungalow all doubt was removed, for it certainly was a European, his face just above the water He seemed to be swimming gently, without any effort to gain the shore Soon after he had passed, my surprise was converted into horror on observing an alligator following him He seemed to have his eyes fixed upon the man, but abstained from seizing him for the present, the distance between them remaining the same. Before I could take any steps to save the man both were out of sight

To walk up and down — مشي كردن در

Verandah — علام گردش - درآمده

I thought I perceived چنان به نظرم افتاد که

A whiteman — مرد فرنگي

Is floating down the Ganges —

— شناوري نموده پائينِ آبِ رودِ گنگ، مي رود

It was a very unusual &c — اين بود منظر عجيبي

To think of venturing into the river

— در رود حانه حرابِ شناوري كردن داشتن

Crocodile alligator— نهنگ Bungalow— منزل

His face &c.— چهره اش بر سطح آب بس نمودار بود

My surprise &c. horror— حیرتم بهول بدل گردید

On observing—as I observed that.

To abstain from seizing him— از گرفتنش اجتناب نمودن

To take step— تدبیر کردن

To be out of sight— از نظر غایب شدن

(Pat.—1926)

(A)

They allege that a certain fox came to a wood in which was a drum suspended on a tree and whenever the wind blew on the branches of this tree it stirred them so that they beat the drum and there became audible in it a loud and sonorous sound So the fox directed his steps towards it, because of what he heard of the loudness of its sound And when he came to it he found it bulky and made sure within himself of an abundance of fat and meat. Wherefore he struggled with it until he had split it asunder; but when he perceived it to be hollow containing naught within it, he said "I know not whether perchance the feeblest of things be not the loudest in outcry and the greatest in bulk.

To stir— حرکت دادن

There became audible &c.— از آن صدای بلند و رفیع خروج می کرد

Bulky— کلان ضخم

To make sure of within himself— به مظنهٔ خود یقین پنداشتن

That it had an abundance &c.—

که اندرونش از گوشت و شحم ملا مال است —

To struggle with it— به آن در افتادن

To split asunder— ترکیدن Hollow— تهي

Containing naught &c.— و هیچش درمیان نیست

I know not &c.— { حیرانم که شاید که هر چه صدایش بزرگترین
و جسم فراخترین دارد در مرتبه کمترین باشد

(B)

Hullaj was an Arabised Persion, born in Persia, but educated in Irak, where he enjoyed the privilege of being instructed by Junaid The story of his life as handed down by Shiah and Sunni writers has been much exaggerated It is clear, however, that he had a great number of disciples who revered him as their spiritual guide and ascribed to him almost supernatural powers

(Pat—1927)

(A)

One day a mother said to her son, who had returned from his school late, 'It is six o'clock and your school closes at four, where have you been all this time ?' 'O mother !' said the boy, 'when we play we forget everything else, and do not think of coming home early Is my tea ready ? Give me something to eat and drink, for I am very hungry' The boy's mother was deceived Her son's answer led her to think that he had been playing with his companions But such was not the case He had been detained by his teacher, because he had not learnt his lessons

(B)

Two goats that were brought up in the same glen, left it, and by chance met on a bridge, which was a mere plank, and would not hold them both side by side One of the fair ones set her foot on it, and her friend was not slow to do the same They came up step by step, till they met half-way, and as they could not pass, and were both too proud to give in, each did her best to push by with a skip and jump, till at last the plank broke and they both fell in and were borne off by the stream

(C)

Fortunately, however, the mass of the people remained loyal. The Mutiny indeed, was a mere military mutiny, though turned to political account here and there by certain disaffected chiefs, like Nana Saheb and others Even all the native soldiers did not join in the revolt The Bombay and the Madras Sepoys remained, on the whole, true to the British Raj The Punjab was kept loyal by the able measure of its Chief Commissioner, Sir John Lawrence, and the Sikh chiefs stood nobly by the Paramount Power None of the great chiefs joined the mutineers, while the common people, even in the affected districts, did not show any sympathy for the rebel Sepoys

joined, 'I am the monarch of this place' The man was terrified, and asked, 'Do you know who I am' The king said he did not He rejoined, 'I am the son of such a merchant, three days in every month I lose my senses, and this is one of those days' The king laughed, and ended the conversation

(B)

Now Sam, the chief of all the warriors of Shah Minuchahar, was a childless man, and this grieved him very deeply Years passed away and at length a son was born to him, beautifful of face and limb, but strange to say, with hair perfectly white like that of an old man Then Sam listened to the foolish talk of those around him who said that this betokened some great calamity to his house, and that it would be well to get rid of the child He even allowed himself to be persuaded that the babe was a demon child, and at length determined to take the boy up the steep sides of Mount Elburz, there to leave him to be devoured by wild beasts Now on the top of Mount Elburz, whose head touched the stars of heaven, dwelt a marvellous bird called the Simurgh, in a beautiful nest made of ebony and sandal wood twined with branches of aloe Flying about in search of food wherewith to feed his little ones, the great bird came upon the white headed baby, as he lay naked among the rocks, gnawing his fingers for hunger, and bore him off in his talons to his nest

(Dac —1924)

A man went for the purpose of seeing a certain person, to his house, at the time of mid-day That person, from his own house, saw the man coming, and said to his servants, "When he asks where the master of the house is, you will say that he is now gone to dine with some one" In the meanwhile, the man having arrived, asked, "Where is the master of the house?" They said, "Our master is gone out" The man said, "A great fool he is to have gone out of his house in the midst of such heat" The master of the house having put his head out of the window, said, "You are a very great fool to wander about at this time for I have been all day in my own house"

(Dac —1925)

A man, who lived in a king's court, was stung by a scorpion while he was in the very act of speaking to the king about certain affairs of the State The sting gave him great pain But he showed no sign of pain that he felt, nor did he stop to kill the scorpion, until he had left the king's presence When the king heard of this he was very much surprised, and having called the man to his presence, inquired why he had suffered so much pain in

silence. The man replied I did not wish to disturb Your Majesty with the pain that I felt. The king was so pleased with this reply and with the firmness which the man had shown that he raised him to a higher rank.

(Dac.—1926)

A little boy named Ram Charan used to go to school everyday He was eight years old and the only son of his parents who loved him very much. One day his teacher sent word to his father that he had behaved badly in school The next morning after he had eaten his breakfast and as he was just going to school, his father called out to him, Ram, wait a minute I have something to say to you. When his mother heard this she came and sat on a stool to listen to what was said Your teacher tells me said his father that you behaved badly yesterday I am very sorry to hear this What did you do ?

(Dac—1927)

God made me. He gave me all the good things that I have He gives me the air that I breathe the food that I eat the clothes I wear the home I dwell in, and the friends that are dear to me He gave me ears to hear eyes to see a nose to smell a mouth to taste and to speak hands to feel and to work and legs and fe t to walk; above all He has given me a mind to think and to know right from wrong

(Bom—1925)

Mohammadans dare not touch the Quran without being first washed and purified; and they read it with the greatest care and respect never holding it below their girdles. They swear by it, consult it on all occasions, carry it with them to war write sentences of it on their banners suspend it from the neck as a charm and always place it on a place of honour in their houses The Quran made Arabic a literary language, it has influeneed the belief and conduct of countless millions of men, and it is at this day revered and obèyed by an increasing number of persons.

(All—1904)

Alptegin had a slave named Sabuktegin whom he had pur chased from a merchant who brought him from Turkistan and whom by degrees he had raised to so much power and trust that at his death he was the effective head of his Government and in the end became his successor Most authorities assert that Alptegin gave Sabuktegin his daughter in marriage, and himself ap-

pointed him his heir, and others confirm the immediate succession, though not the previous marriage But Ferishta's account is, that Alptegin, dying in A D 975, A H 365, left a son named Is-hak, whom Sabuktegin accompanied to Bokhara Is hak was then appointed by Mansur Samani to be Governor of Ghazni, and Sabuktegin his deputy Is-hak died in A. D 977, A H 367, when Sabuktegin was acknowledged as his successor, and married Alptegin's daughter

(All —1905)

(A)

As soon as Yosuf Shah had taken possessin of the throne he established rules for the strict administration of justice throughout his dominion and having summoned the judges and municipal officers to attend him, he informed them that the laws were to be administered with impartiality to the poor and to the rich, to the weak and to the powerful, and if he discovered any of them swayed in their decisions either by interest or affection, he would punish them most severely He then ordered them to send him a weekly report of their proceedings, and being himself very learned and well informed in the law, he frequently decided on points which had perplexed the most ezperienced Qazies and Mufties

(B)

Mahmud's taste for architecture, whether engendered, or only developed, by what he witnessed at Muthra and Canouj, displayed itself in full perfection after his return from that expedition He then founded the mosque called "The Celestial Bride," which, in that age, was the wonder of the East It was built of marble and granite, of such beauty as to strike every beholder with astonishment, and was furnished with rich carpets and candelabras, and other ornaments of silver and gold It is probable, from the superiority long possessed by Indian arrhitects, that the novelty and elegance of the design had even a greater effect than the materials in commanding so much admiration

(All —1906)

Turandukht, the daughter of Khusro Perwiz She was elevated on the throne of Persia some time after the death of her brother Shiroya 631 A D We are told by Persian historians that this Queen restored the sacred cross, which had been borne away from Jerusalem by Khusro Perwiz and by that act acquired great power with the Roman emperor But this is evidently erroneous for there is no doubt that the emperor Heraclius, when he returned from Persia, carried that precious relic to Constantinople, which

was deemed a more splend d trophy of victory than all h s spoils and conquests. Turandukht ruled Persia only one y ar and four months She was succeeded by her cous n and lover Shah Shanarda. He had reigned only one month when he was d po d and Arz m dukht another daughter of Khusro P rwiz, was raised to the throne 632 A D Th s pr ncess who was al k d tinguish d by her sense and beauty r solved to tak the wl ole m nagement of the affa rs of the k gd m into her hands She would not even appo nt a wazir But th fatal pass on of a Per ian nobl defeated all her de ign Farrukh Hurmuz the G vernor of Khurasan, *fell* viol ntly in lov with he or perhaps w th her dominions He proceeded to court and mad his lo e known to h royal mist ss; sh refus d h r hand and he wa soon after murdered through h r in t gat on As soon as his melancholy fa e wa known to his son Ru tam he co lected a large army and marched from Khu asan to Madain Th queen wa u able to oppose him; and the young chi f revenged h s fath r by putting her to a cruel death. After her demise Farrukhz d the son of Khusro Perwiz by a femal singer of Isfahan wa ra sed to the throne, but before he had re gned a month his days w re t rm at ed by p ison Such were the events which immediately preceded the reign of Yazdijard III and the fall of the Pers an monarchy

(All —1907)

(A)

The character of Aurngzeb is one of the strangest in history and most d fficult to read That he was a s ncerely religious man there can be no doubt Islam I ss in h s private l fe and doing hi public dut es accordi g to h s lights con cientiou ly and unremittingly He was too a man of culture and r fin ment and strange as it may appear rather prone to mildn ss than everity I deed, much of th mi governm nt of his reign s attributable to the too great leniency with which he treated corrupt officials His personal courage is undeniable and h s whole life bears witness to hi cooln ss and readiness of resources in times o danger Such a man should have made a successful ruler of a great empire but against these h gh and kingly qu lities must be set off a suspicious ss p rversity and narrown s almost unex mpled in h story He n ver really trusted any man, and in return was never thoroughly tru ted by any man It was thi particular trait in his character more perhaps than his ob tinacy and bigotry which ali nated his subjects from him, and he was in consequence of it always badly served

(B)

Baber was a descendant of Timur and on the strength of this he laid claim to the throne of Delhi; but the immediate cause of

his coming was an invitation from Daulat Khan, the governor of the Punjab, to assist in dethroning the tryant Ibrahim Lodi He had long cherished the desire of conquering Hindustan, and he rightly judged the present to be the most propitious moment He lost no time therefore in marching upon Lahore, but before he reached the city, the treacherous gevernor was driven out by the troops of Ibrahim Lodi Baber quickly disposed of the enemy and chased them out with great slaughter The bazaar was burnt and the city plundered, and then he moved on again But he had not gone far before he met with a serious and unexpected check, for Daulat Khan, who had repented of his treachery, went into rebellion against him and took the field with forty thousand men He was forced, therefore, to turn back and confront the danger threatening him in the rear The insurrection proved less formidable than it looked, for at the approach of the Mughals, Daulat Khan's army vanished Having restored order and secured the country behind him, Baber resumed his march on Delhi

(All —1908)

(A)

The Czar Ivan, who reigned over Russia about the middle of the sixteenth century, often went out disguised, in order to satisfy his own mind as to the condition of his subjects One day, in a solitary walk near Mascow, he entered a small village, and, pretending to be overcome by fatigue, implored relief from several of the inhabitants His dress was ragged, his appearance mean, but what ought to have excited the compassion of the villagers, and ensured a kind reception, produced a refusal Full of indignation at such inhuman treatment, he was just going to leave the place, when he noticed another dwelling to which he had not yet applied for assistance It was the poorest cottage in the village The Emperor hastened to this, and knocked at the door A peasant opened it, and asked him what he wanted "I am almost dying with fatigue and hunger," answered the Czar, "can you give me a night's lodging ?" "Alas !" said the peasant, "you will have but poor fare, you have come at an unlucky time—for my wife is ill, but come in, you will at least be sheltered from the cold, and what we have you shall be welcomed to"

(B)

Of the provinces which had been subject to the house of Tamerlane, the wealthiest was Bengal No part of India possessed such natural advantages, both for agriculture and for commerce The Ganges, rushing through a hundred channels to the sea, has formed a vast plain of rich mould which, even under the tropical sky, rivals the verdure of an English April The rice fields yield an increase such as is elsewhere unknown Spices,

sugar, vegetable oils, are produced with marvellous exuberance. The rivers afford an inexhaustible supply of fish. The desolate islands along the sea coast overgrown by noxious vegetation and swarming with deers and tigers, supply the cultivated districts with abundance of salt.

(All—1910)

(A)

(a) Should any plunderer be robbing people on the high road, he ought to be seized.

(b) In ten days' time it will have been fifteen years since the lady came to India.

(c) We cannot submit to be treated with such contempt.

(d) He determined that he would certainly make a note of it.

(B)

Mahmud was the greatest prince of his time. He had all the *elements of* greatness, *exemplary prudence, boundless activity* and great courage. His success in war has given him the highest military reputation, while the perfect order which prevailed throughout his vast dominions notwithstanding his frequent absence in the field proves that he likewise possessed the greatest talent for civil affairs. His court was the most magnificent in Asia; his taste in architecture was more particularly developed[1] after his return from Cunnauj and Muttra when he determined to make his own capital worthy of his empire. He erected a mosque of granite and marble which filled every beholder with astonishment, and became the wonder of Central Asia. He founded a university at Ghazni, and furnished it with a large collection of valuable manuscripts and a museum of natural curiosities. He set aside a lac of rupees a year for pensions to learned men and his munificence brought together a larger assembly of literary genius than was to be found in any other Asiatic court.

(All—1911)

(A)

Of the various powers and faculties we possess there are some which nature seems both to have planted and reared so as to have left nothing to human industry. Such are the powers which we have in common with the brutes and which are necessary to the preservation of the individual or the continuance of the kind. There are other powers of which nature has only planted the seeds in our minds, but has left the rearing of them to human culture. It is by the proper culture of these that we are capable of all those improvement in intellectuals, in taste and in morals which exalt and dignify human nature; while on the other

hand, the neglect or perversion of them makes it degeneracy and corruption

(B)

If we consider the world in its subserviency to man, one would think it was made for our use, but if we consider it in its natural beauty and harmony, one would be apt to conclude it was made for our pleasure The sun, which is as the great soul of the universe, and produces all the necessaries of life, has a particular influence in cheering the mind of man, and making the heart glad Those several living creatures which are made for our service or sustenance, at the same time either fill the woods with their music, furnish us with game, or raise pleasing ideas in us by the delightfulness of their appearance Fountains, lakes, and rivers, are as refreshing to the imagination as to the soil through which they pass

(All.—1912)

(A)

Aurangzeb's last military operation was a retreat to Ahmednagar, the nature of which may be conceived from his exhausted cattle and dis-spirited troops All hurried on in disorder and dejection, deafened with the incessant firing kept up by the marksmen, alarmed by the shouts and charges of the lancers, and every moment expecting a general attack to complete their dispersion and destruction Such, indeed, was the sfate of a portion of the army, and it is a subject of pious exultation to the Musalman historians, that the emperor himself escaped falling into the hands of the enemies whom he had once so much despised Ahmednagar, from whence, twenty years before, he had marched in so much power and splendour, elated with conquest, received the remains of his ruined greatness, and was soon to witness the close of his earthly career

(B)

John Howard, an English gentleman of fortune, is famous for the exertions he made to lessen human suffering Being a man in easy circumstances, he might have spent his time, as most men have done under like conditions, in idleness and self indulgence But he preferred a life of self-sacrifice for the good of others, which has won for him the name of Philanthropist,—a name which stands or ought to stand higher in the annals of history than that of the greatest conquerors His career of beneficence is a remarkable illustration of the Power of Sympathy On a voyage to Lisbon, when he was quite a young man, he was taken by the French, and thrown into a wretched dungeon at Brest

(All.—1913)

Persian the French of the East has long been recognized as one of the most euphonious expressive and important of Oriental languages. Unfortunately however to most Englishmen who have spent any time in India Persian is known only in its antique form and pronunciation, which are still in large measure retained on the Afghan frontier and in other parts of India This prevents the student from being intelligible to the natives of Persia should he for any reason find it desirable to visit that country The writer's own experience enables him to speak with some little authority on this subject Having studied and learnt to speak Persian in the Punjab he found on endeavouring to enter into conversation with Shirazis in Bombay that he was almost if not quite unintelligible to them since many of the words, phrases and idioms he had learnt from the pages of Sadi and other classical Persian authors have become obsolete and have been superseded by others in the modern language as spoken in Persia itself It was as if a foreigner having discovered some corner of the world in which English was still spoken by the learned just as it occurs in the Elizabethan writers and with the pronunciation of that distant day had learnt the language from them and then tried to converse with the English people of to-day His conversation would seem at once stilted and vulgar and it would amuse every one with whom he came in contact.

(All —1914)

The body considered as the soul s instrument The soul in respect of the body may be compared to an excellent workman who cannot labour in his occupation without some necessary instru ments, and those well wrought and prepared to his hand The most skilful musician cannot raise any harmony from an instrument of music out of tune. We are therefore to be very careful of these external parts since the spirit which moves in them can naturally produce no action of worth if this instrumental frame be out of order Hence it is that those men who abuse their bodies by the violence of intemperate sins are somtimes over taken either with a sleepy dullness or a wild distraction. Their souls are not able to produce any worthy act after a defect contracted upon their organs or else are unwilling to be restrained and con fined to a bad lodging or a loathsome dungeon.

(All.—1924)

(A)

Whilst his disciples were seeking safety in other lands from the persecutions of their enemies, he himself stood bravely at his post,

and amidst every insult and outrage pursued his mission Again they came to him with promises of honour and riches, to seduce him from his duty, the reply was, as before, full of life, full of faith ' I am neither desirous of riches nor ambitious of dignity nor of dominion, I care for my duty only If you accept the message I bring you, the King will favour you if you reject I shall be patient and the King will judge everything rightly" They mocked him and persecuted him, but his simple trust and sublime faith rose superior to all their materialistic scepticism

(B)

They relate that a fox entered a thicket There he saw a drum cast down by the side of a tree, and whenever the wind stirred, the branches of the tree struck the drum and a terrific noise assailed the fox's ears When the fox saw the bulkiness of the drum and heard the majesty of its voice he greedily imagined that its flesh and skin would prove worthy of its voice He strove until he had rent it asunder In fact he found nothing more than skin Remorsefully he said, "I did not realize that wherever there is the great bulk and the more terrible noise, there is the less profit"

(All—1925)

(A)

The Egyptians are said to have been the first to recognise the doctrine of a future life and the principles of human conduct They believed in future recompense and punishment Man descended into the tomb only to rise again The soul of man was considered immortal like the sun and accomplishing the same pilgrimages All bodies descended into the lower world, but they were not all assured of resurrection Annihilation was the lot of the sinners the righteous entered into perfect happiness

(B)

It is related of a certain tormentor of men that he struck a certain pious man on the head with a stone The Dervish dared not avenge himself at the time, but kept the stone by him till the King imprisoned him in a dungeon Thereupon the Dervish came and smote him on the head with the stone. 'Who art thou,' cried the other, 'and why dost thou strike me with this stone?' 'I am that same man,' replied the Dervish, 'on whose head thou didst, on such-and-such a date, strike this same stone' 'Where wert thou all this time?' inquired the other 'I was afraid of thy position,' answered the Dervish, 'but now seeing thee in this plight, I seized my opportunity'

(Cal —1921)

(A)

Raziya was the daughter of Altamash one of the Moghul kings of Delhi, who lived in the thirteenth century She is the only woman besides our Queen Victoria who has ruled Delhi Altamsh had sons also but when he was dying he said: "You will find no one better fitted to rule the kingdom than my daughter Raziya." And after his nobles had suffered for some time the cruelty and injustice of Raziya's half brother they began to see that the king was right And Raziya herself helped them

(B)

Once at Carthage there was a slave name Androcles He was badly treated by his master and he resolved to run away from him. He therefore secretly left his master's house and hid himself in a forest some miles distant from the city He wandered about for sometimes and at last came to a large cave but being very hungry and fatigued he lay down in it and soon fell asleep. He was awakened by the roar of a wild beast and was frightened He ran to the mouth of the cave but was met by a great lion It was impossible for him to escape The slave thought that he would be very soon torn to pieces but to his great surprise the lion came gently towards him without showing any signs of enmity or rage

(Cal —1922)

(A)

A certain person used every day to buy six loaves of bread. One day one of his friends asked him, saying "What dost thou do with the six loaves every day?" That person replied to him thus "I keep a loaf of bread for myself and I throw away a loaf and I give back two loaves and the other two I lend" His friend said, "I don't understand at all what thou hast said; explain more clearly" That person said in reply "The loaf which I keep for myself I eat; and that which I throw away I give to my mother-in-law; and those two loaves which I give back I give to my father and mother in exchange for those which they gave me in my child-hood and those two loaves which I lend I give to my two sons in order that they may give me a return in my old age.

[See page 17 Anglo Persian Translation Series, No 2 for Matriculation Students.]

(B)

The first person who helped Ardashir was his father Babak. Having slain the governor who had been appointed by Artabunus,

he made himself master of Fars But Babak, having shown a preference for Sapor his eldest son, gave him the title of governor of Fars, and after a short time died Ardashir after his father's death, led an army against his brother, and Sapor's people, having seized him, delivered him up to Ardashir, and in Fars he abtained obsolute sway It is not known what he did with Sapor, but he executed the persons who had dealt treacherously with him

(Cal.—1923)

(A)

Then Zal fell in love with the maiden before ever he had seen her, and sat and pondered how he might make her his wife The hospitable Mihráb prayed him to become his guest, but Zal refused saying that the Shah and Sam, his father, would never forgive him, if he should draw breath beneath the roof of Zohak So Mihrab went sorrowfully away, and, entering the apartment of his wife, he began to describe the beauty and courage of the young man, and to praise him as though he were his own son Now it so happened, that Rudabih was sitting with her mother at that time, and when she heard this description of Zal, she fell in love with him in her turn, and could neither eat, nor sleep for thinking of him

(B)

Victoria was one of the greatest of the monarchs who have reigned over our country After a long and glorious reign she died in January 1901, and her place was at once taken by her son, the Prince of Wales He became king as Edward the Seventh. Edward the Seventh reigned gloriously for nine years All his subjects loved him, for he was not only a wise and powerful king, but a good man with a kind heart He was held in high esteem by all European nations They knew him well, for he used often to visit them, and he was related to many of their kings and queens He did all he could to preserve peace in Europe, and will be known in History as Edward, the Peace maker When he was buried, seven kings of Europe came to his funeral, to show their respect and love for him

(Cal —1924)

(A)

There lived in Bagdad a poor porter named Sindabad One day when the weather was very hot, he was carrying a heavy load on his head from one end of the city to the other Being very weary, and having still a great way to go, he came to a street which was sprinkled with rose-water, and a gentle breeze was blowing. Delighted with the cool and charming spot, he placed

his load on the ground and sat down to rest himself for a while near a large house He wished to know whose residence it was as he was unacquainted with the names of its inhab tants.

(B)

Saiyed Ahmed the uncle of Sirajud Dowla, died as we have said a month or two before Ali Vardi and bequeathed all his wealth, his troops, and his province of Purneah to his son Shaukat Jang who entered on the government a little before his cousin became Subadar Both of them were equally rash cruel and foolish, and it was clear they could not long remain at peace. Sirajud-Dowla, immediately on his accession dismissed all his grandfather's old servants and generals and took into favour young men of licentious habits, who encouraged him in every vice They urged him daily to acts of cruelty so that neither was any man's property nor honour safe Of all the Nawabs who governed Bengal under the Moghul Emperors there was none who made himself so unpopular as this prince.

(Cal.—1925)

(A)

The sons of Shah Faridun were three in number but they had no names until they were grown up for their father wished first to test their hearts and see what manner of men they might be And in due time he bade them go forth to the land of Yaman and win for themselves the three beautiful daughters of King Sarv So they set off to the land of Yaman, and the king came out to meet them with great pomp When he knew the object of their visit, he gladly accepted the suit of the sons of Faridun giving to them his daughters, and a great store of treasure besides.

(B)

A gentleman and his wife had one little child of about two years old and they had to make a very long journey with it through a wild part of India There were no houses there and they had to sleep in a tent. One night they came upon a very thick wood. The wife said I feel much frightened to-night I know there are many tigers and other wild animals in the wood, and what if they should come out upon us? The husband replied, "We will make the servants light a fire and keep watch and you need have no fear

(Cal—1926)

(A)

There was a king's son, and there was a minister's son They loved each other dearly They sat together they stood up together

they walked together, they ate together, they slept together, they got up together In this way they spent many years in each other's company, till they both felt a desire to see foreign lands. So one day they set out on their journey Though very rich, the one being the son of a king and the other the son of his chief minister, they did not take any servants with them , they went by themselves on horseback

(B)

The poor lady was in tears during the whole of this speech, which very much excited my compassion 'My good mother,' replied I, 'do not afflict yourself any more , I shall be very happy to oblige you in the way you wish Tell me whither I must come , I only wish for time sufficient to dress myself properly for such an occasion' The old lady was so overjoyed at this answer that she would have fallen at my feet and kissed them if I had not prevented her

(Cal. 1927)

(A)

One day a mother said to her son, who had returned from his school late, 'It is six o'clock, and your school closes at four where have you been all this time ?' 'O mother !' said the boy, 'when we play we forget everything else, and do not think of coming home early Is my tea ready? Give me something to eat and drink, for I am very hungry' The boy's mother was deceived Her son's answer led her to think that he had been playing with his companions But such was not the case He had been detained by his teacher, because he had not learnt his lessons

(B)

Alexander's liberality and love of making presents increased with his conquests , and his gifts were always bestowed in so gracious a manner as to double their value Ariston, having slain an enemy, brought his head and showed it to Alexander, saying, 'O king in my country such a present as this is rewarded with a gold cup' Alexander smiled, and said, 'Yes, with an empty cup but I will give you a gold cup full of precious stones One of the common soldiers was driving a mule laden with gold belonging to Alexander , but as the animal became too weary to carry it he unloaded it, and carried the gold himself When Alexander saw him toiling under his burden, and learnt his story, he said, 'Be not weary yet, but carry it a little way further, as far as your own tent , for I give it to you'

(Cal —1928)

(A)

When the king heard what the physician had to say he answered, If you perform what you promise I will enrich you and your family and besides this you shall be my grand vizier Do you assure me then that you will cure me of this disease by making me drink your medicine?" 'Yes, Sir', replied the physician "I promise to cure you and to-morrow I will make a trial of it. Thus saying the physician went to his house and on the next day presented himself before the king with his medicine

(B)

Sher Shah was a great king He was never idle but as busy as the poorest man who had to earn his living by the work of his own hands. He made those under him work as hard as he did He governed the country far better than any other Afghan king had done for he knew very well that it is the duty of a king to take care of his subjects. He did not oppress the Hindus and he employed many of them to help him to govern the country One of them named Todarmal had charge of the revenue or state money collected from land rent and taxes. He only reigned as emperor for four years. His son succeeded him, but he was not so able and so wise as his father

INDEX